

This owner’s manual should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle and should remain with the vehicle when it is sold.

This owner’s manual covers all models of your vehicle. You may find descriptions of equipment and features that are not on your particular model.

Images throughout this owner’s manual represent features and equipment that are available on some, but not all, models. Your particular model may not have some of these features.

The information and specifications included in this publication were in effect at the time of approval for printing. Honda Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right, however, to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.

Although this manual is applicable to both right-hand and left-hand drive models, the illustrations contained in this manual mainly refer to the right-hand drive models.

➤ Safe Driving P. 31		
For Safe Driving P. 32	Seat Belts P. 36	Airbags P. 47

➤ Instrument Panel P. 79	
Indicators P. 80	Gauges and Displays P. 110

➤ Controls P. 127	
Clock P. 128	Locking and Unlocking the Doors P. 130
Opening and Closing the Sunroof* P. 156	
Adjusting the Seats P. 184	
Climate Control System* P. 208	

➤ Features P. 213	
Audio System P. 214	Audio System Basic Operation P. 222, 240
Customized Features P. 308	Hands-Free Telephone System P. 343

➤ Driving P. 363		
Before Driving P. 364	Towing a Trailer P. 368	When Driving P. 374
Multi-View Rear Camera* P. 444		Refueling P. 445

➤ Maintenance P. 449	
Before Performing Maintenance P. 450	Maintenance Schedule* P. 453
Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades P. 482	
Heating and Cooling System*/Climate Control System* Maintenance P. 494	

➤ Handling the Unexpected P. 501	
Tools P. 502	If a Tyre Goes Flat P. 503
Overheating P. 517	Indicator, Coming On/Blinking P. 519

➤ Information P. 527	
Specifications P. 528	Identification Numbers P. 535

Contents

Child Safety P. 57

Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 76

Safety Labels P. 77

Opening and Closing the Boot P. 147

Security System P. 150

Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel P. 157

Interior Lights/Interior Convenience Items P. 193

Opening and Closing the Windows P. 153

Adjusting the Mirrors P. 181

Heating and Cooling System* P. 205

Audio Error Messages P. 297

General Information on the Audio System P. 301

Braking P. 426

Fuel Economy and CO₂ Emissions P. 447

Parking Your Vehicle P. 439

Accessories and Modifications P. 448

Maintenance Under the Bonnet P. 457

Checking and Maintaining Tyres P. 484

Cleaning P. 496

Replacing Light Bulbs P. 471

Battery P. 490

Remote Transmitter Care P. 492

Engine Does Not Start P. 510

Fuses P. 522

Jump Starting P. 513

Emergency Towing P. 525

Shift Lever Does Not Move P. 516

Devices that Emit Radio Waves* P. 536

Quick Reference Guide P. 2

Safe Driving P. 31

Instrument Panel P. 79

Controls P. 127

Features P. 213

Driving P. 363

Maintenance P. 449

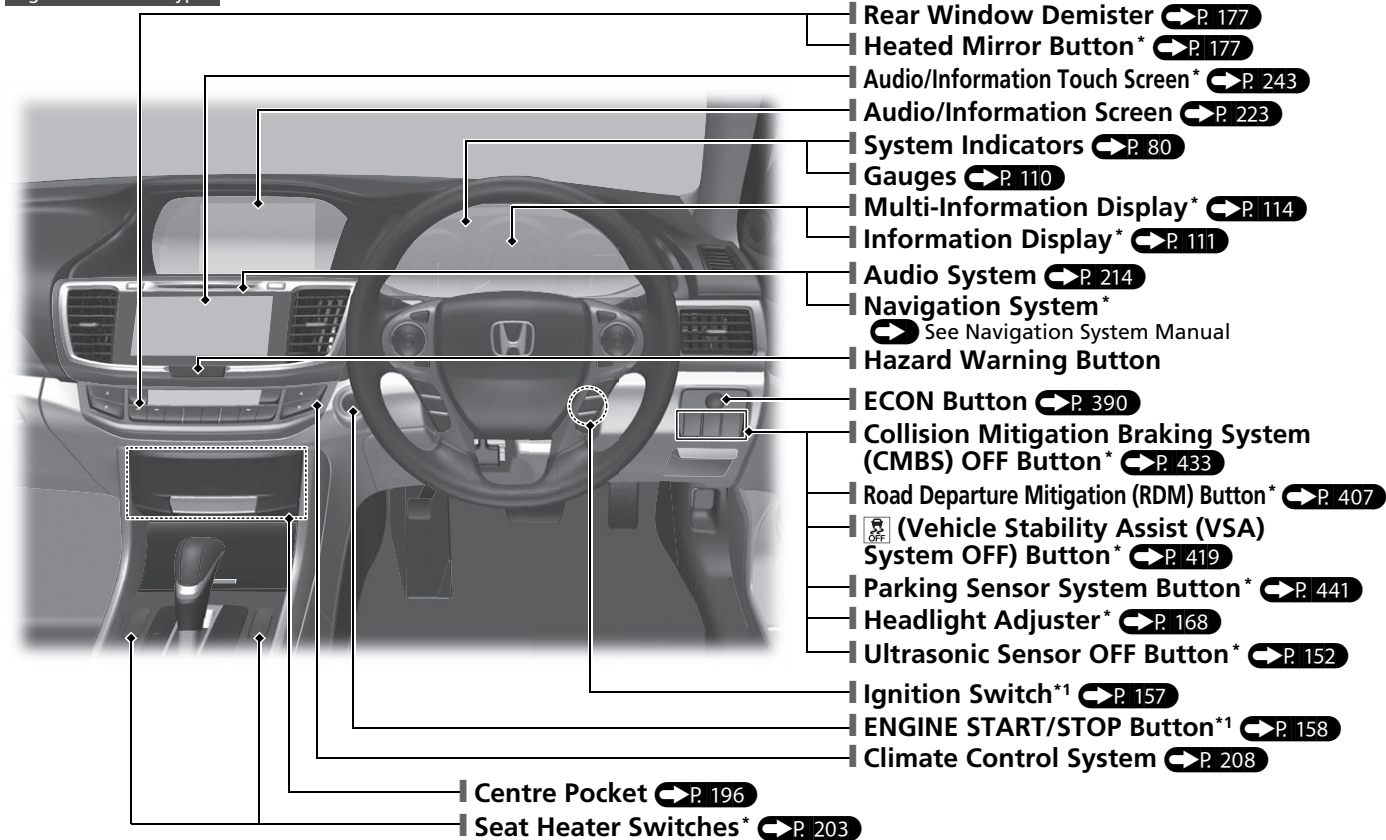
Handling the Unexpected P. 501

Information P. 527

Index P. 538

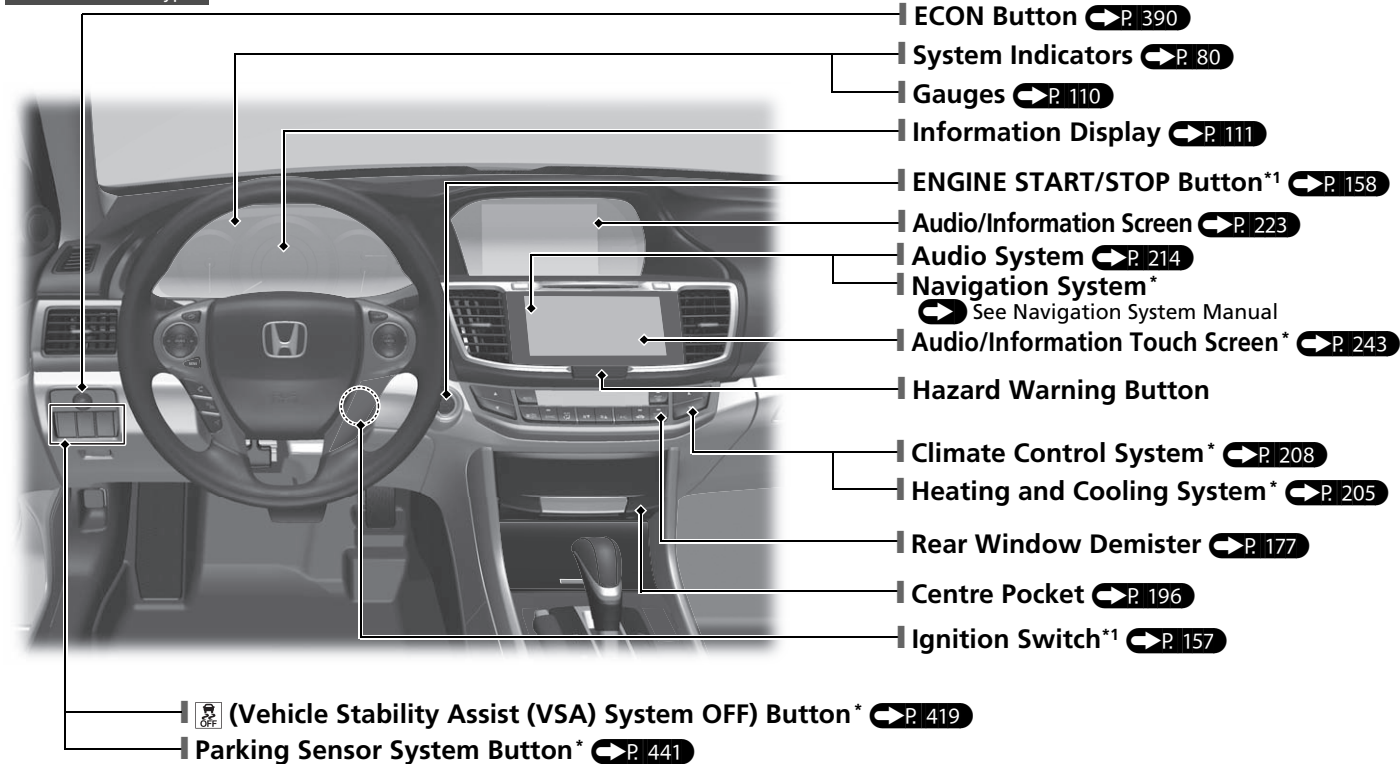
Visual Index

Right-hand Drive Type



*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Left-hand Drive Type

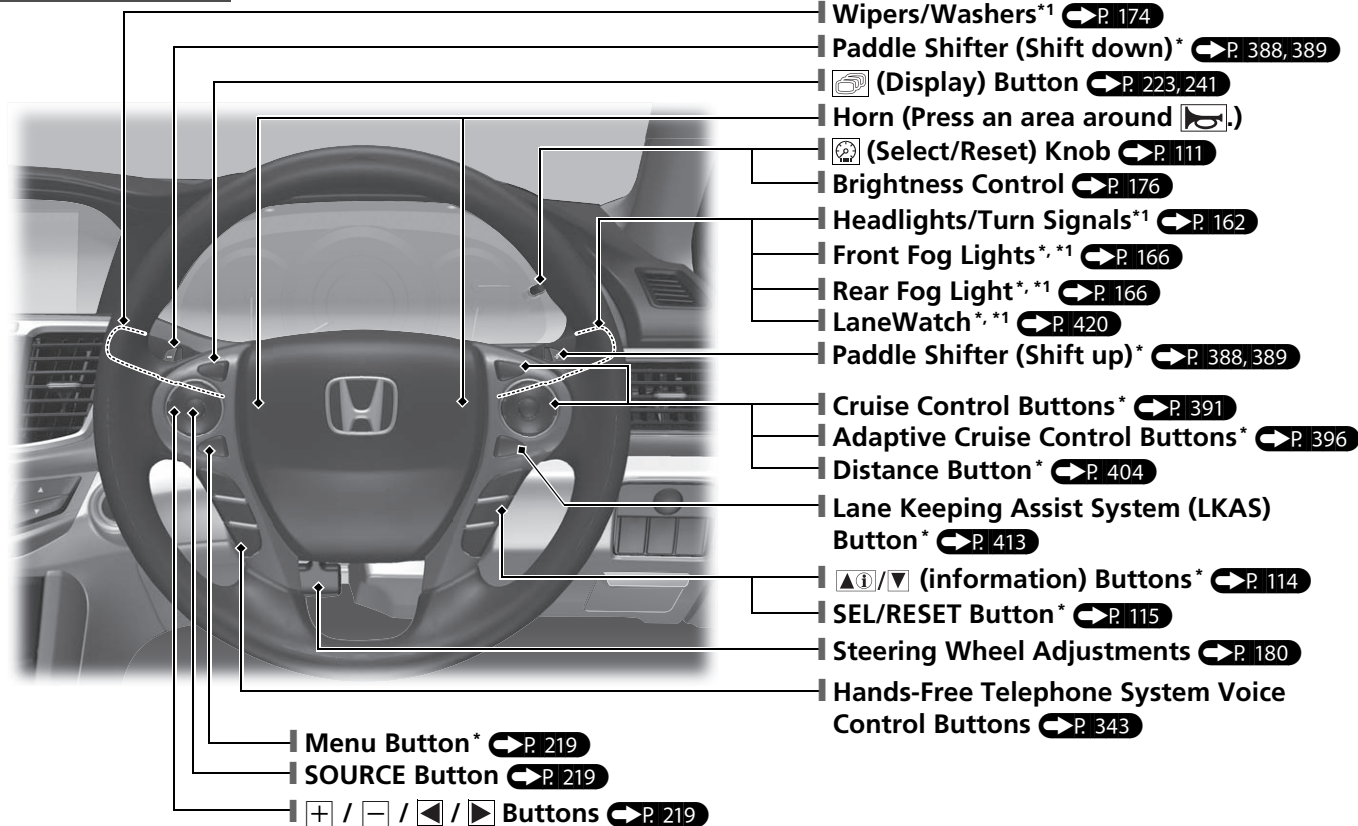


*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

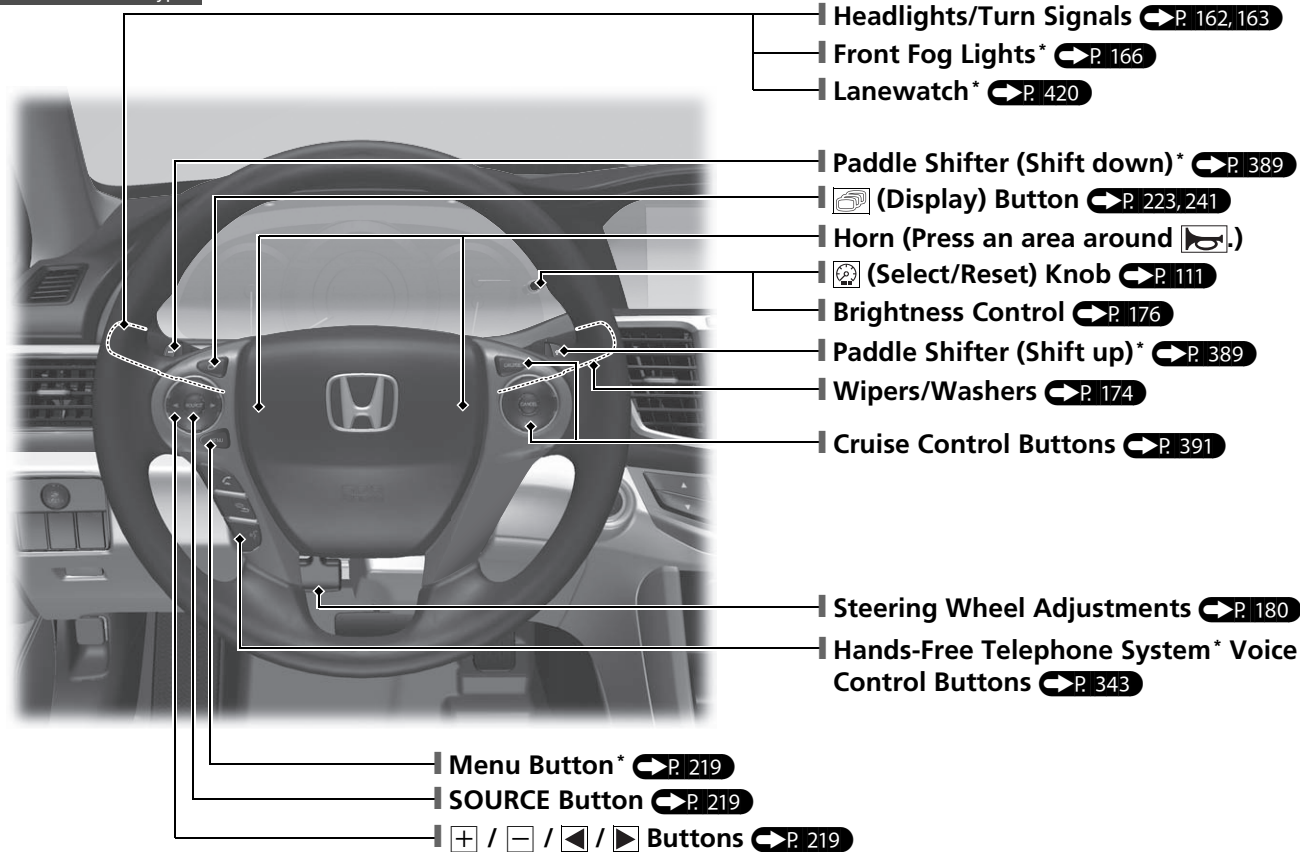
Visual Index

Right-hand Drive Type



*1: For South African models, these switches change locations with each other.

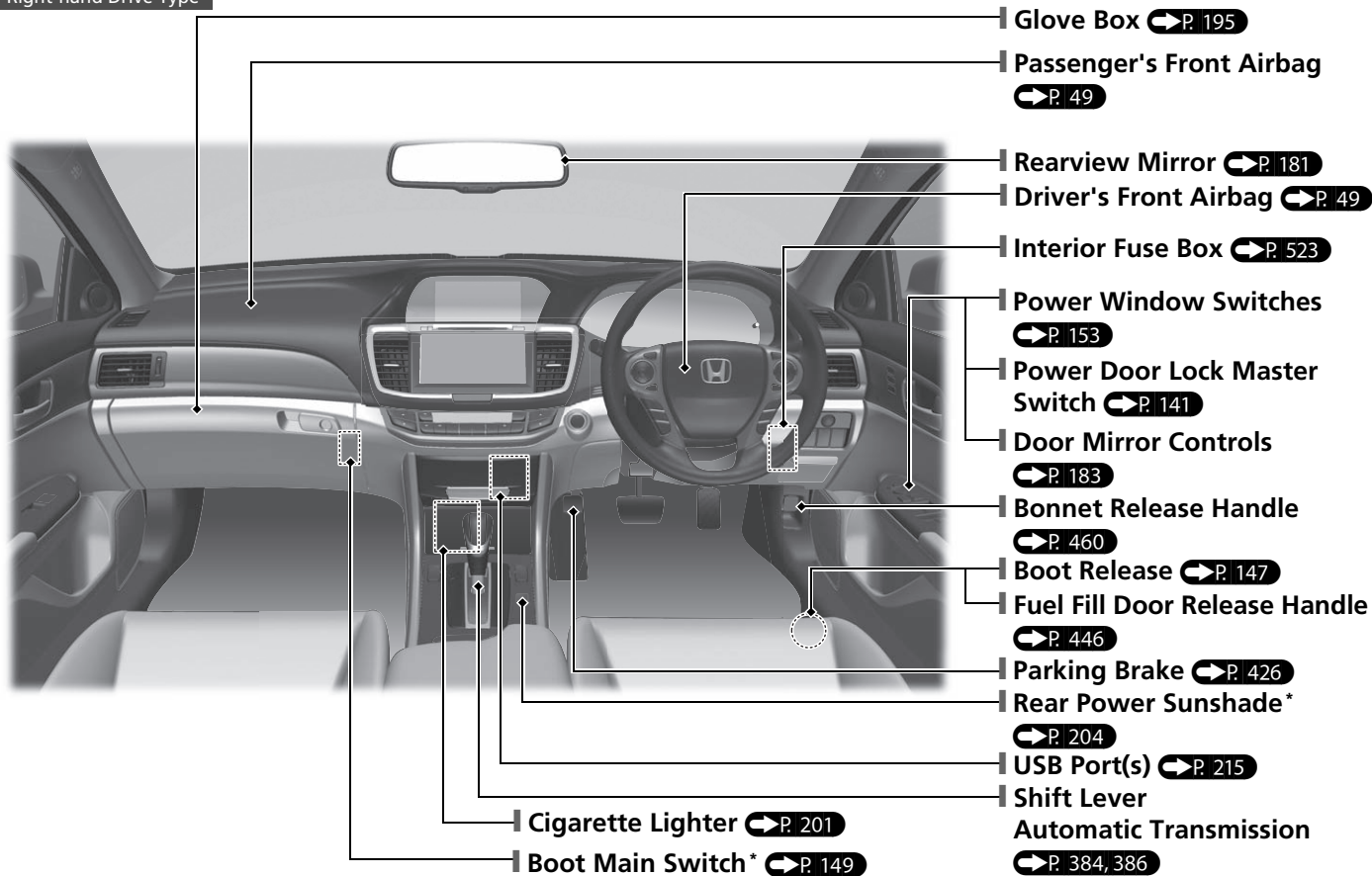
Left-hand Drive Type



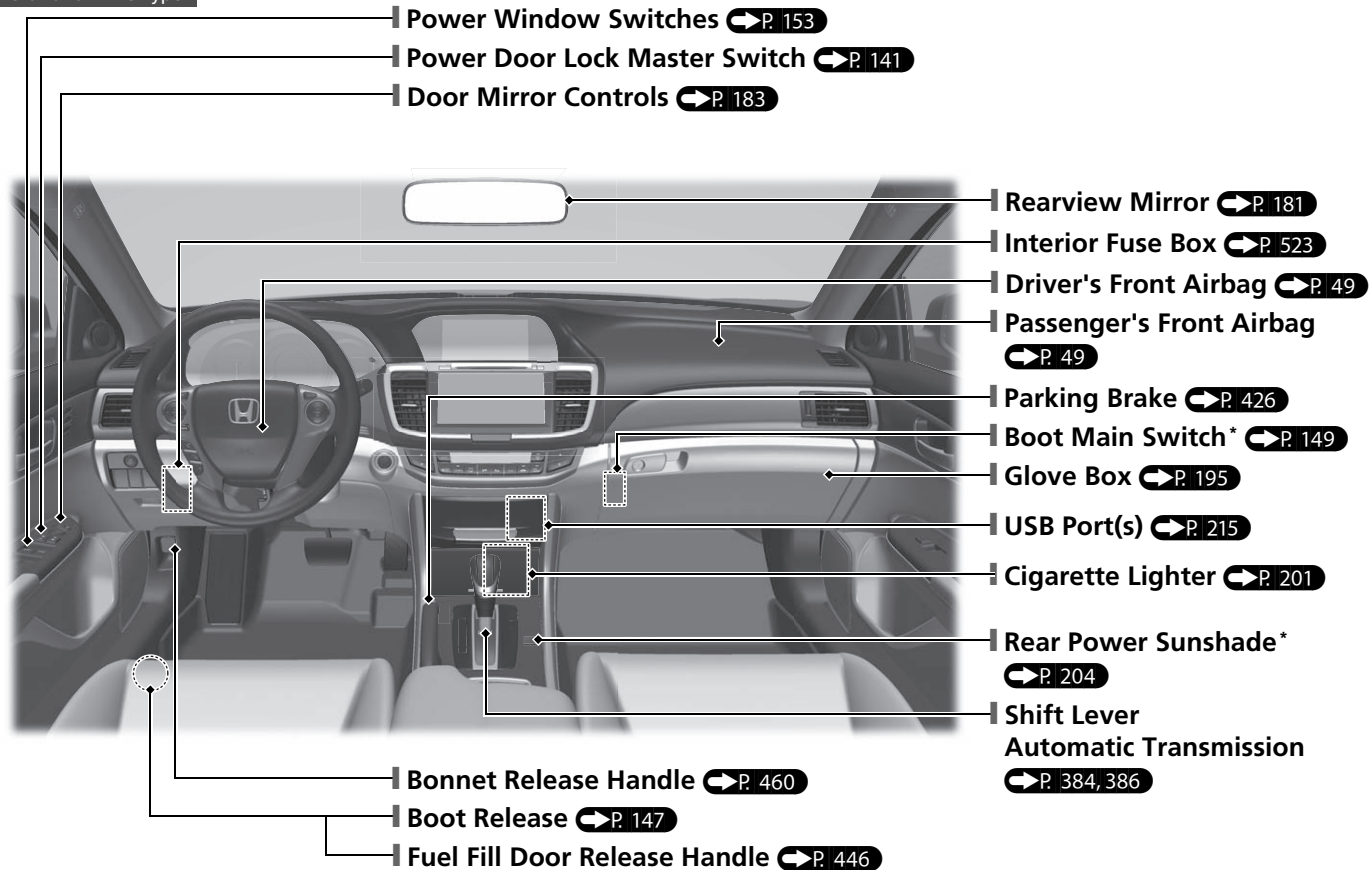
* Not available on all models

Visual Index

Right-hand Drive Type

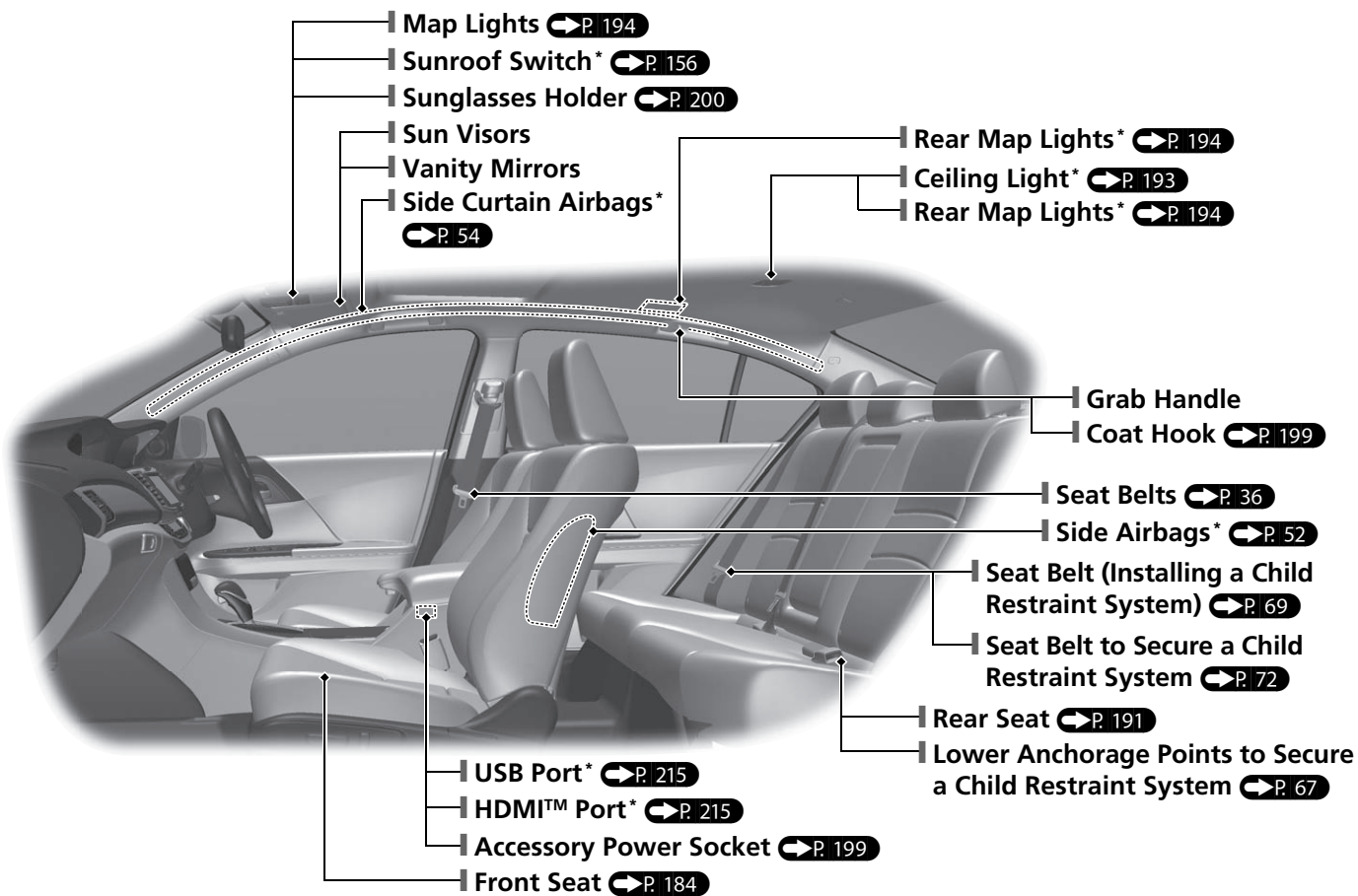


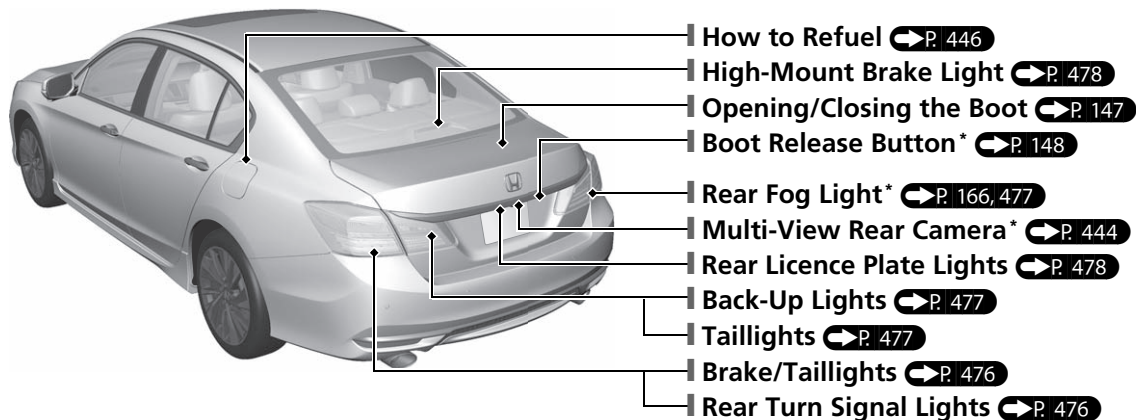
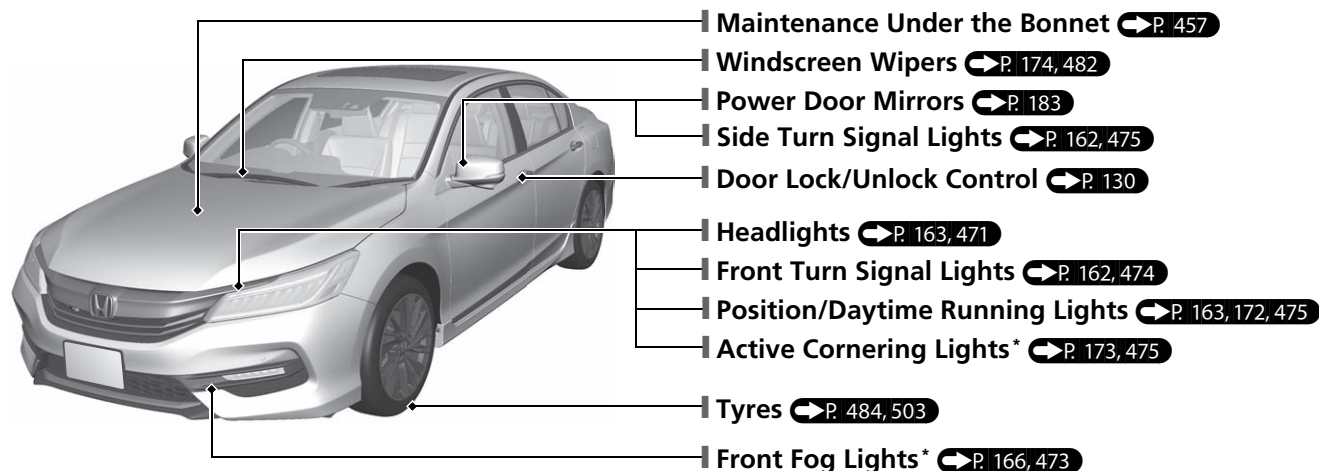
Left-hand Drive Type



* Not available on all models

Visual Index





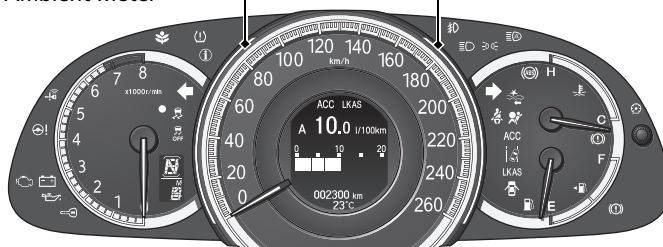
* Not available on all models

Eco Assist System ➡ P.390

Ambient Meter

- Changes colour to reflect your driving style.
Green: Fuel efficient driving
Light green: Moderate acceleration/ deceleration
White: Aggressive acceleration/ deceleration
- The ambient meter colour changes in accordance with your brake or accelerator pedal operation.

Ambient Meter

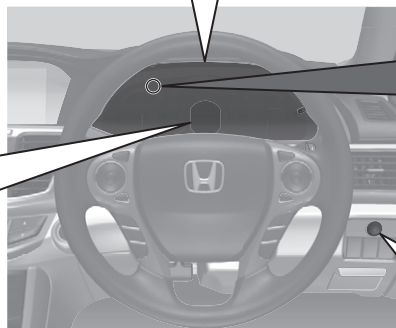


ECON On



Models with multi-information display

The message is displayed for a few seconds when the **ECON** button is pressed.



ECON Mode Indicator

➡ P. 90

Comes on when ECON mode is on.



ECON Button ➡ P. 390

Helps maximize fuel economy.

Safe Driving ➡ P.31

Before Driving Checklist ➡ P.35

- Before driving, check that the front seats, head restraints, steering wheel, and mirrors have been properly adjusted.

Seat Belts ➡ P.36

- Fasten your seat belt and sit upright well back in the seat.
- Check that your passengers are wearing their seat belts correctly.



Fasten your lap belt as low as possible.

Exhaust Gas Hazard ➡ P.76

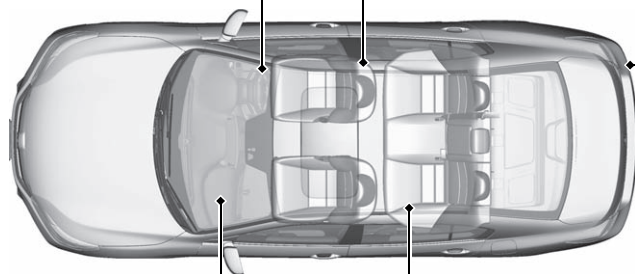
- Your vehicle emits dangerous exhaust gases that contain carbon monoxide. Do not run the engine in confined spaces where carbon monoxide gas can accumulate.

Child Safety ➡ P.57

- All children 12 and younger should be seated in the rear seat.
- Small children should be properly restrained in a front facing child restraint system.
- Infants must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child restraint system on a rear seat.

Airbags ➡ P.47
















- Your vehicle is fitted with airbags to help to protect you and your passengers during a moderate-to-severe collision.

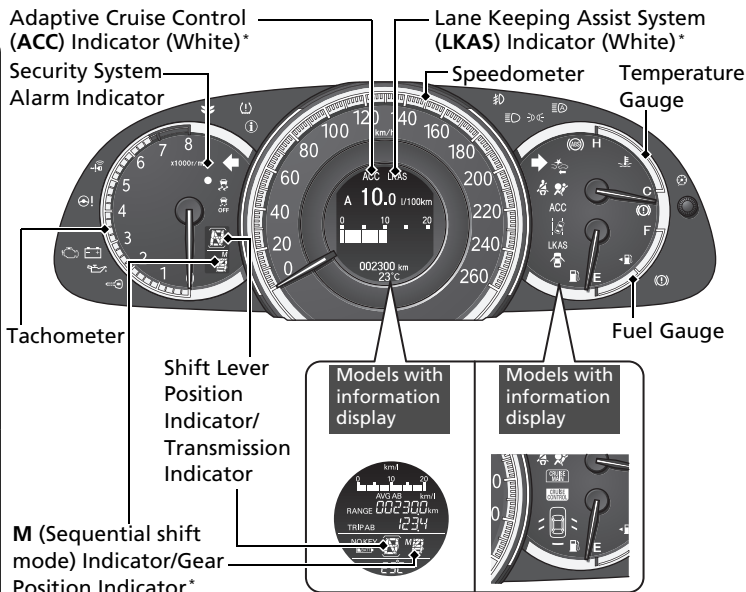


Instrument Panel P.79







Gauges P.110 / Information Display* P.111 / Multi-Information Display* P.114 / System Indicators P.80

System Indicators















-  Malfunction Indicator Lamp
-  Low Oil Pressure Indicator
-  Charging System Indicator
-  Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator*
-  VSA OFF Indicator*
-  Immobilizer System Indicator
-  Keyless Access System Indicator*
-  Starter System Indicator*
-  Shift to Park Indicator*
-  Rotate Wheel Indicator*
-  Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator
-  System Message Indicator*
-  Parking Sensor System Indicator*
-  Deflation Warning System Indicator*
-  Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators



Lights Indicators

-  Lights On Indicator
-  Rear Fog Light Indicator*
-  High Beam Indicator
-  Light Control Indicator*
-  Front Fog Light Indicator*
-  Auto High-Beam Indicator*

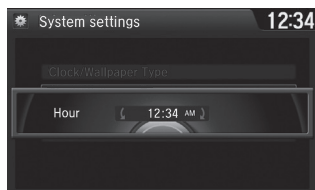
System Indicators

-  Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator
-  Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)
-  Brake System Indicator (Amber)
-  Door and Boot Open Indicator
-  Low Fuel Indicator
-  Seat Belt Reminder Indicator
-  Supplemental Restraint System Indicator
-  **CRUISE MAIN** Indicator*
-  **CRUISE CONTROL** Indicator*
-  **ACC** Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Indicator*
-  Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator*
-  **LKAS** Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator*
-  Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) Indicator*
-  ECON mode Indicator

Controls ➡ P.127

Clock ➡ P.128

Models with one display



- 1 Enter the **Clock Adjustment** screen.
➡ **Adjusting the Clock** ➡ P.128
- 2 Rotate to change hour, then press .
- 3 Rotate to change minute, then press .

Models with display audio system



- 1 Select the (HOME) icon, then select **Settings**.
- 2 Select **Clock/Info**, then **Clock Adjustment**.
- 3 Touch the to adjust the numbers up or down.
- 4 Select **OK**.

ENGINE START/STOP Button * ➡ P.158

Press the button to change the vehicle's power mode.



Turn Signals ➡ P.162

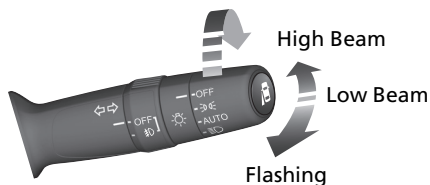
Turn Signal Control Lever



* Not available on all models

Lights ➡ P.163

Light Control Switches



Wipers and Washers ➡ P.174

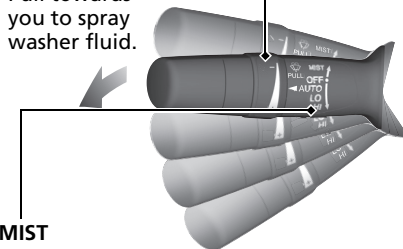
Wiper/Washer Control Lever

Adjustment Ring

- : Low Sensitivity^{*1}
- 4: Lower speed, fewer sweeps^{*2}

- +: High Sensitivity^{*1}
- + 4: Higher speed, more sweeps^{*2}

Pull towards you to spray washer fluid.



**MIST
OFF**

AUTO^{*1}: Wiper speed varies automatically

INT^{*2}: Low speed with intermittent

LO: Low speed wipe

HI: High speed wipe

^{*1}: Vehicle with auto wiper

^{*2}: Vehicle without auto wiper

Steering Wheel ➡ P.180

- To adjust, pull the adjustment lever towards you, adjust to the desired position, then lock the lever back in place.



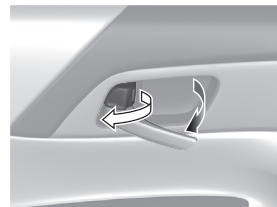
Unlocking the Front Doors from the Inside ➡ P.139

African left-hand drive models

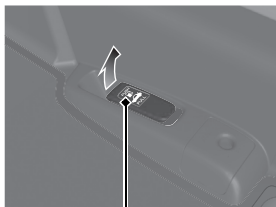
- Pull either front door inner handle to unlock and open it in one motion.

Except African left-hand drive models

- Pull driver's door inner handle to unlock and open it in one motion.



Boot ➔ P. 147



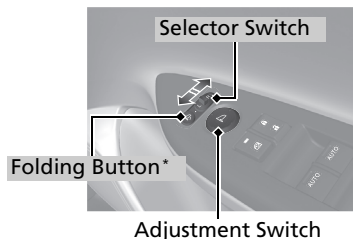
Boot Release

- To unlock and open the boot:
- Pull the boot release.
- Press the boot release button on the remote transmitter or the keyless remote.
- Press the boot release button* on the boot lid.

Power Door Mirrors

➔ P. 183

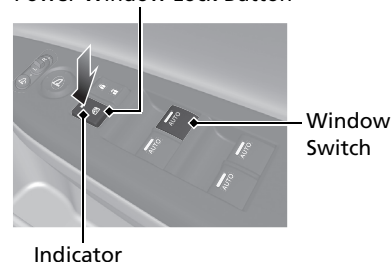
- With the ignition switch in ON *1, move the selector switch to L or R.
- Push the appropriate edge of the adjustment switch to adjust the mirror.
- Press the folding button* to fold in and out the door mirrors.



Power Windows ➔ P. 153

- With the ignition switch in ON *1, open and close the power windows.
- If the power window lock button is in the off position, each passenger's window can be opened and closed with its own switch.
- If the power window lock button is in the on position (indicator on), each passenger's window switch is disabled.

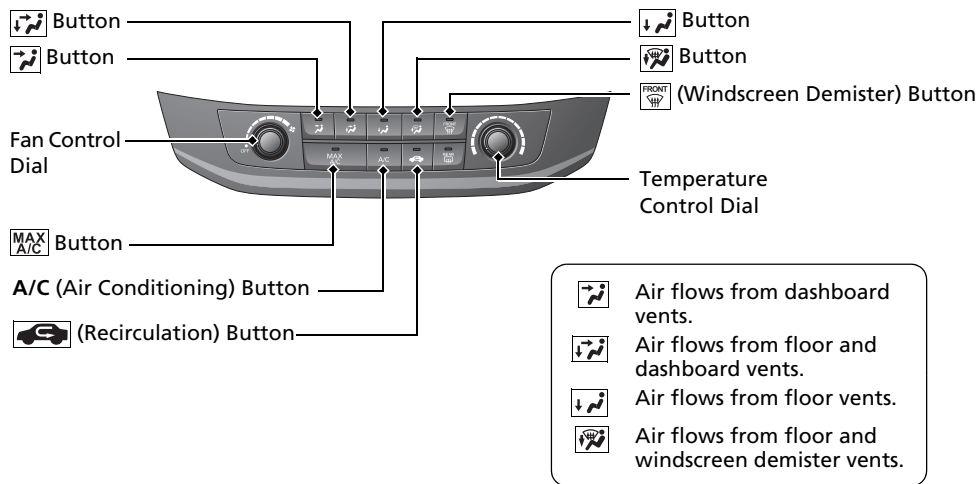
Power Window Lock Button





*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

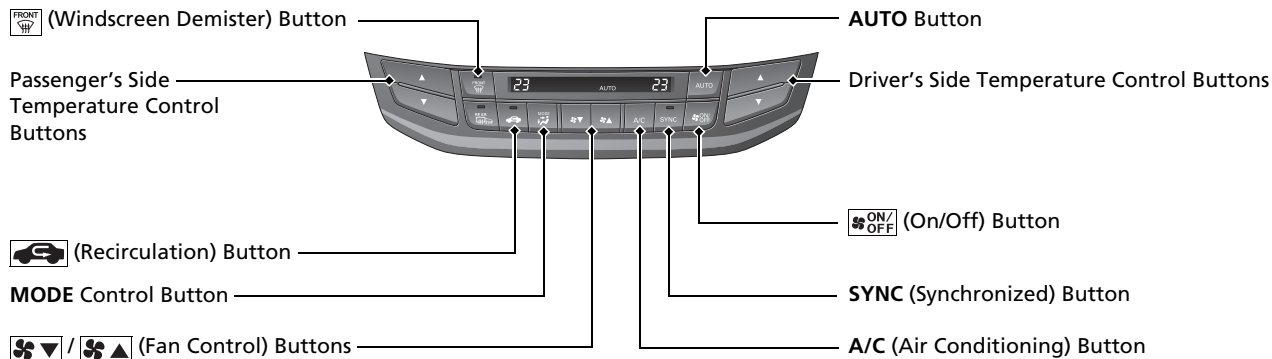
Heating and Cooling System* ➞ P. 205





- Rotate the fan control dial to adjust the fan speed and airflow.
- Press the mode buttons (↗↘) / (↖↗) / (↙↘) / (↗↘) to select the vents air flows from.
- Rotate the temperature control dial to adjust the temperature.
- Use the **MAX A/C** button for maximum cool setting.
- Rotate the fan control dial to **OFF** to turn the system off.
- Press the **FRONT WIP** button to defrost the windscreen.



Climate Control System * ➔ P. 208

- Press the **AUTO** button to activate the climate control system.
- Press the  button to turn the system on or off.
- Press the  button to defrost the windscreen.



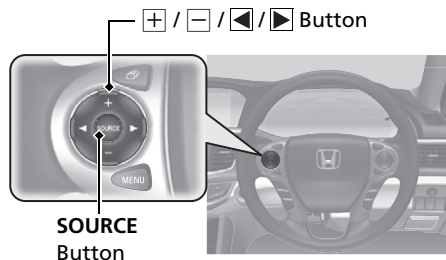
-  Air flows from dashboard vents and back of centre console.
-  Air flows from floor and dashboard vents and back of centre console.
-  Air flows from floor vents.
-  Air flows from floor and windscreen demister vents.

Features ➡ P.213

Audio Remote Controls

➡ P. 219

- Audio Remote Controls (Front) ➡ P. 219



- **+ / - Button**
Press to adjust the volume up/down.
- **SOURCE Button**
Press to change the audio mode:

Models with one display

FM/AM/CD/USB/iPod/AUX

Models with display audio system

FM/AM/CD(DVD^{*})/USB/iPod/Apps/
Bluetooth/AUX HDMI^{TM*}/Audio Apps

- **◀ / ▶ Button**

Radio: Press to change the preset station.

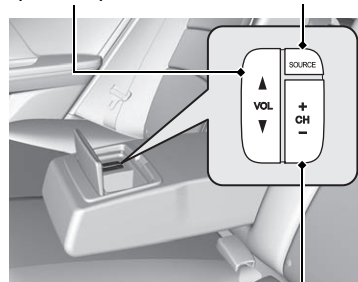
Press and hold to select the next or previous strong station.

CD/USB device:

Press to skip to the beginning of the next song or return to the beginning of the current song.
Press and hold to change a folder.

- Audio Remote Controls (Rear)^{*} ➡ P. 221

VOL (Volume) Button **SOURCE Button**



CH (Channel) Button

- **VOL (Volume) Button**
Press **▲** / **▼** to adjust the volume up/down.
- **SOURCE Button**
Press to change the audio mode:
FM/AM/CD(DVD^{*})/USB/iPod/Apps/
Bluetooth/AUX HDMI^{TM*}/Audio Apps

● CH (Channel) Button

Radio: Press to change the preset station.
Press and hold to select the next or previous strong station.

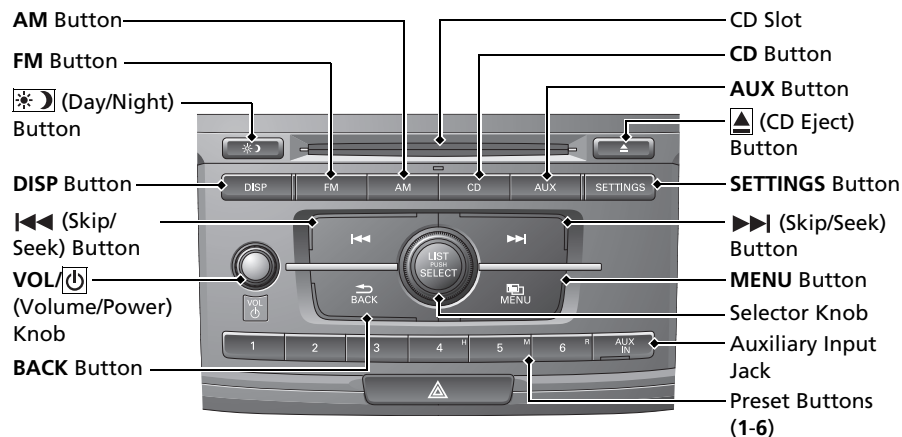
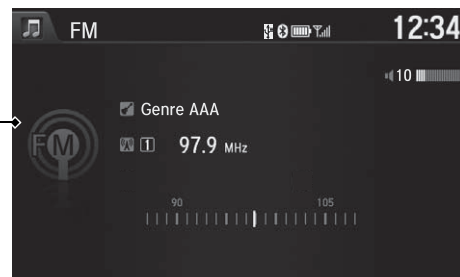
CD/USB device:

Press to skip to the beginning of the next song or return to the beginning of the current song.
Press and hold to change a folder.

Audio System ➡ P. 214

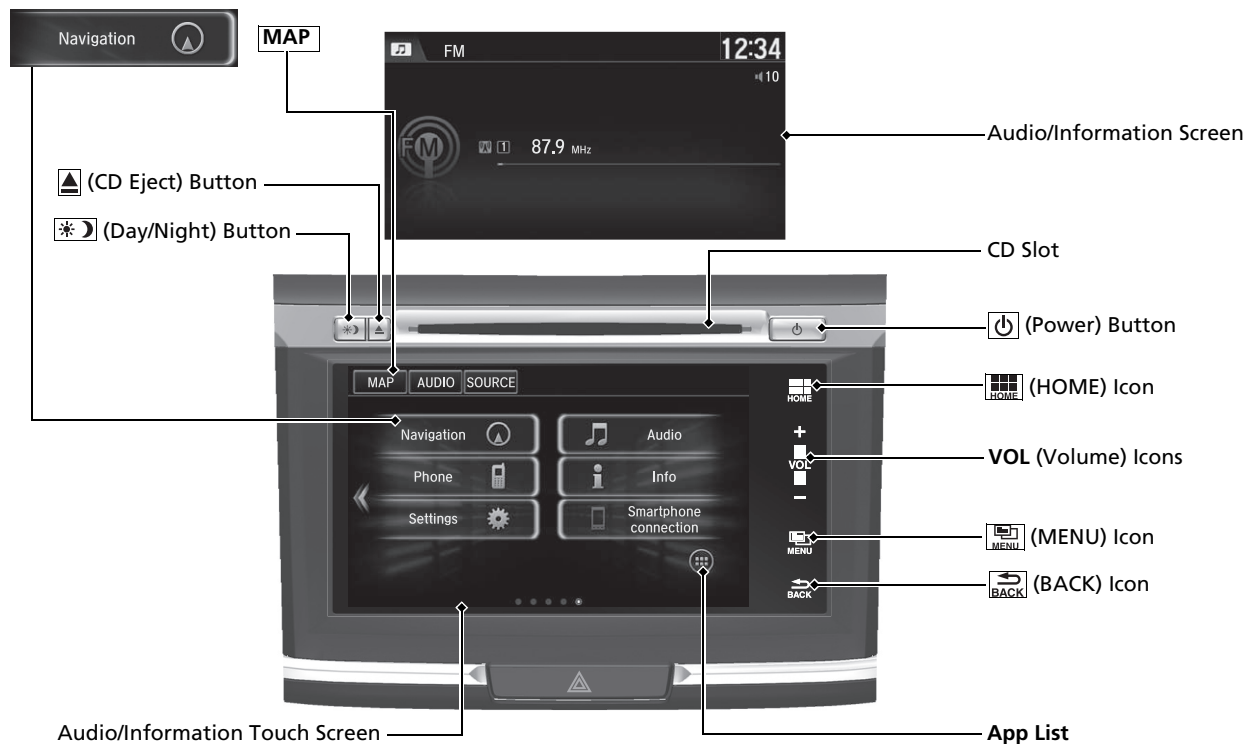
Models with one display ➡ P. 222

Audio/Information
Screen



Models with display audio system ➡ P. 240

For navigation system operation ➡ See the Navigation System Manual

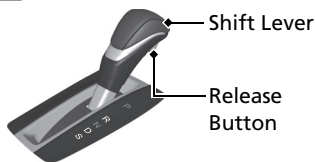
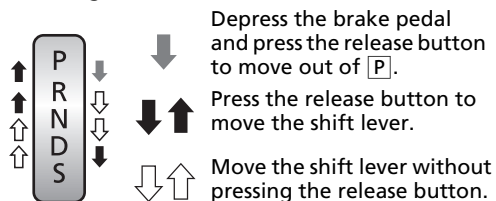


Driving P. 363

Automatic transmission with 5 positions

Automatic Transmission P. 386

- Shift to **P** and depress the brake pedal when starting the engine.
- **Shifting**



P Park
Turn off or start the engine.
Transmission is locked.

R Reverse
Used when reversing.

N Neutral
Transmission is not locked.

D Drive

- Normal driving.
- On models with paddle shifter, sequential shift mode can be used.

S Drive (S)

4-cylinder models

- Automatically changing gears between 1st and 4th (4th gear is used only in at high speed).

6-cylinder models



- Automatically changing gears between 1st and 5th (5th gear is used only in at high speed).

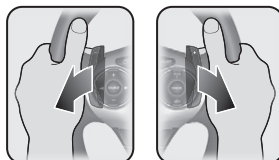
All models

- Used to increase engine braking.
- On models with paddle shifter, sequential shift mode can be used.

Paddle Shifters* P. 388

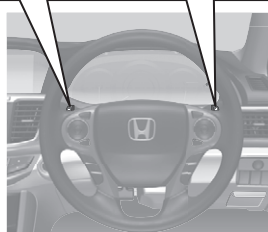
- Paddle shifters allow you to shift gears much like a manual transmission (1st through 5th or 1st through 6th). This is useful for engine braking.
- When the shift lever is in **D**: The transmission will shift back to automatic mode once the system detects that the vehicle is cruising.
- When the shift lever is in **S**: Holds the selected gear, and the **M** indicator comes on.
- The selected gear position is shown in the instrument panel.

Shift Down  Shift Up 
Paddle Shifter Paddle Shifter



M Indicator

Gear Position Indicator



Automatic transmission with 6 positions

Automatic Transmission ➡ P. 384

- Shift to **P** and depress the brake pedal when starting the engine.
- **Shifting**

P Park
Turn off or start the engine.
Transmission is locked.

R Reverse
Used when reversing.

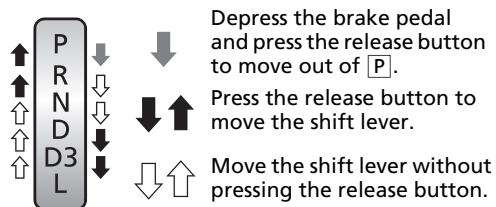
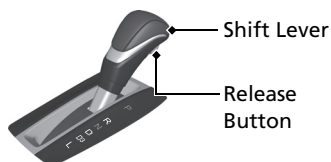
N Neutral
Transmission is not locked.

D Drive
Normal driving.

D3 Drive (D3)
Going up or down hills.

L Low

- Increased engine braking.
- Going up or down hills.



VSA OFF Button* ➡ P. 419

- The vehicle stability assist (VSA) system helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering, and helps to maintain traction while accelerating on loose or slippery road surfaces.
- VSA comes on automatically every time you start the engine.
- To turn VSA on or off, press and hold the button until you hear a beep.

Cruise Control* ➡ P. 391

- Cruise control allows you to maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal.
- To use cruise control, press the **CRUISE** button, then press the **-/SET** button once you have achieved the desired speed (above 40 km/h).

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) OFF Button* ➡ P. 433

- When a possible collision is likely unavoidable, the CMBS can help you to reduce the vehicle speed and the severity of the collision.
- To turn the CMBS on or off, press and hold the button until you hear a beep.

Deflation Warning System* ➡ P. 422

The deflation warning system detects a change in tyre revolutions as a decrease in tyre pressure.

Refueling ➡ P. 445

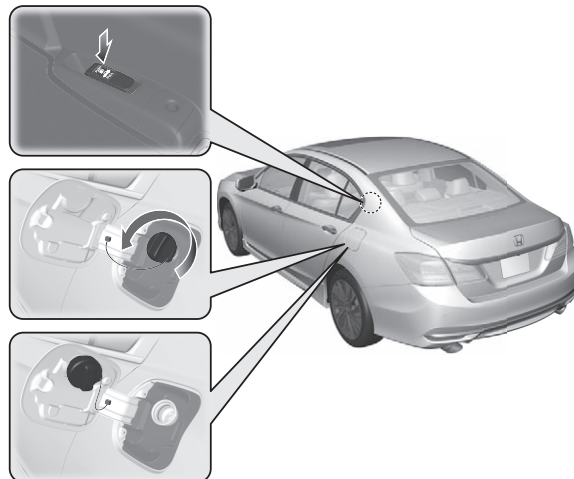
Fuel recommendation: Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher

Thai models

Unleaded petrol/gasohol up to E85 (15% petrol and 85% ethanol), research octane number 91 or higher

Fuel tank capacity: 65 L

- 1 Push the fuel fill door release handle.
- 2 Turn the fuel fill cap slowly to remove the cap.
- 3 Place the cap in the holder on the fuel fill door.
- 4 After refueling, screw the cap back on until it clicks at least once.

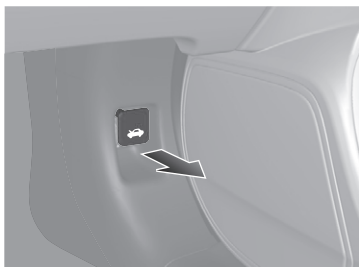


Maintenance P. 449

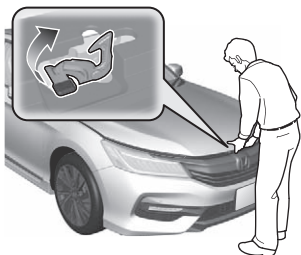
Under the Bonnet P. 457

- Check engine oil, engine coolant, and washer fluid. Add when necessary.
- Check brake fluid.
- Check the battery condition monthly.

- 1 Pull the bonnet release handle under the corner of the dashboard.



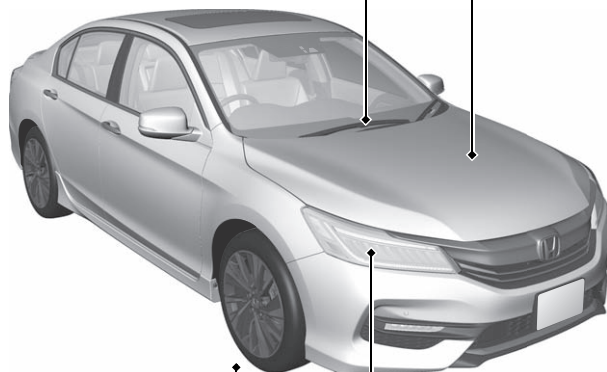
- 2 Locate the bonnet latch lever, pull the lever up, and lift up the bonnet.



- 3 When finished, close the bonnet and make sure it is firmly locked in place.

Wiper Blades P. 482

- Replace blades if they leave streaks across the windscreen.



Tyres P. 484

- Inspect tyres and wheels regularly.
- Check tyre pressures regularly.
- Install winter tyres for winter driving.

Lights P. 471

- Inspect all lights regularly.

Handling the Unexpected ➡ P.501

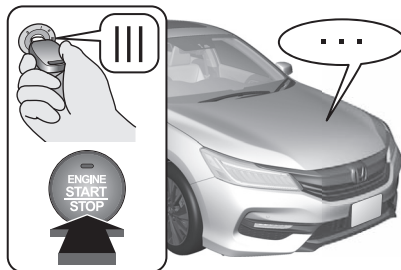
Flat Tyre ➡ P.503

- Park in a safe location and replace the flat tyre with the spare tyre in the boot.



Engine Won't Start ➡ P.510

- If the battery is dead, jump start using a booster battery.



Overheating ➡ P.517

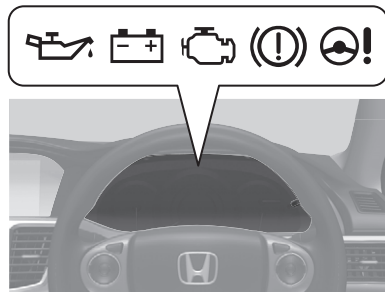
- Park in a safe location. If you do not see steam under the bonnet, open the bonnet, and let the engine cool down.



Indicators Come On

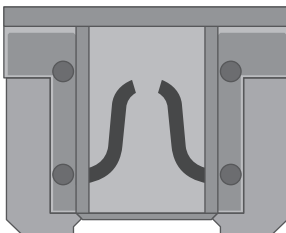
➡ P.519

- Identify the indicator and consult the owner's manual.



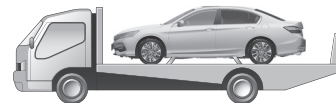
Blown Fuse ➡ P.522

- Check for a blown fuse if an electrical device does not operate.



Emergency Towing ➡ P.525

- Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.



What to Do If

Q The ignition switch does not turn from **0** to **I***1. Why?

- A**
- The steering wheel may be locked.
 - Try to turn the steering wheel left and right while turning the ignition key.

Models with keyless access system

- Move the steering wheel left and right while pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button at the same time.



Q The ignition switch does not turn from **I** to **0***1 and I cannot remove the key. Why?

- A** The shift lever should be moved to **P**.



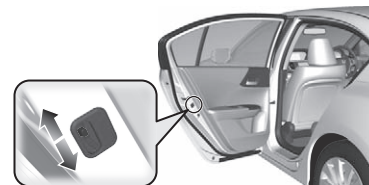
Q Why does the brake pedal pulsate slightly when applying the brakes?

- A** This can occur when the ABS activates, and does not indicate a problem. Apply firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. Never pump the brake pedal.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Q The rear door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle. Why?

A Check if the childproof lock is in the lock position. If so, open the rear door with the outside door handle.
To cancel this function, push the lever to the unlock position.



Q Why do the doors lock after I unlocked the doors using a remote transmitter?

A If you do not open a door within 30 seconds, the doors are relocked automatically for security.

Q Why does the beeper sound when I open the driver's door?

A The beeper sounds when:

- The key is left in the ignition switch*.
- The power mode* is in ACCESSORY.
- The exterior lights are left on.

Q Why does the beeper sound when I start driving?

A The beeper sounds when:

- Driver and/or front passenger are not wearing their seat belts.
- The parking brake is not fully released.

Q Why do I hear a screeching sound when I apply the brake pedal?

A The brake pads may need to be replaced. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Event Data Recorders

Your vehicle is equipped with several devices commonly referred to as Event Data Recorders. They record various types of real time vehicle data such as SRS airbag deployment and SRS system components failure.


This data belongs to the vehicle owner and may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.



However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.


Service Diagnostic Recorders



Your vehicle is equipped with service-related devices that record information about powertrain performance and driving conditions. The data can be used to help technicians diagnose, repair and maintain the vehicle. This data may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

As you read this manual, you will find Information that is preceded by a symbol  **NOTICE**. This information is intended to help you avoid damage to your vehicle, other property, or the environment.

Symbols   on labels attached to your vehicle are to remind you to read this owner's manual for proper and safe operation of your vehicle.

 is colour-coded to indicate "danger" (red), "warning" (orange), or "caution" (amber).

 **Safety Labels**  **P. 77**


A Few Words About Safety

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. And operating this vehicle safely is an important responsibility.

To help you make informed decisions about safety, we have provided operating procedures and other information on labels and in this manual. This information alerts you to potential hazards that could hurt you or others.

Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your vehicle. You must use your own good judgement.

You will find this important safety information in a variety of forms, including:

- **Safety Labels** - on the vehicle.
- **Safety Messages** - preceded by a safety alert symbol  and one of three signal words: **DANGER**, **WARNING**, or **CAUTION**. These signal words mean:

DANGER

You **WILL** be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

WARNING

You **CAN** be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

CAUTION

You **CAN** be HURT if you don't follow instructions.

- **Safety Headings** - such as Important Safety Precautions.
- **Safety Section** - such as Safe Driving.
- **Instructions** - how to use this vehicle correctly and safely.

This entire book is filled with important safety information - please read it carefully.

Safe Driving

You can find many safety recommendations throughout this chapter, and throughout this manual.

For Safe Driving

Important Safety Precautions	32
Your Vehicle's Safety Features.....	34

Seat Belts

About Your Seat Belts.....	36
Fastening a Seat Belt.....	41
Seat Belt Inspection.....	45

Airbags

Airbag System Components.....	47
Types of Airbags	49
Front Airbags (SRS)	49
Side Airbags*	52

Side Curtain Airbags*	54
Airbag System Indicators.....	55
Airbag Care	56

Child Safety

Protecting Child Passengers	57
Safety of Infants and Small Children ..	61
Safety of Larger Children	73

Exhaust Gas Hazard

Carbon Monoxide Gas.....	76
--------------------------	----

Safety Labels

Label Locations	77
-----------------------	----

The following pages explain your vehicle's safety features and how to use them properly. The safety precautions below are ones that we consider to be among the most important.

Important Safety Precautions

■ Always wear your seat belt

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of collisions. Airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, make sure you and your passengers always wear your seat belts, and wear them properly.

■ Restrain all children

Children aged 12 and under should ride properly restrained in a back seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in a child restraint system. Larger children should use a booster seat and a lap/shoulder seat belt until they can use the belt properly without a booster seat.

■ Be aware of airbag hazards

While airbags can save lives, they can cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk. Be sure to follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

■ Don't drink and drive

Alcohol and driving don't mix. Even one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions, and your reaction time gets worse with every additional drink. So don't drink and drive, and don't let your friends drink and drive, either.

⌘ Important Safety Precautions

Some countries prohibit the use of mobile phones other than hands-free devices by the driver while driving.

■ Pay appropriate attention to the task of driving safely

Engaging in mobile phone conversation or other activities that keep you from paying close attention to the road, other vehicles, and pedestrians could lead to a crash. Remember, situations can change quickly, and only you can decide when it is safe to divert some attention away from driving.

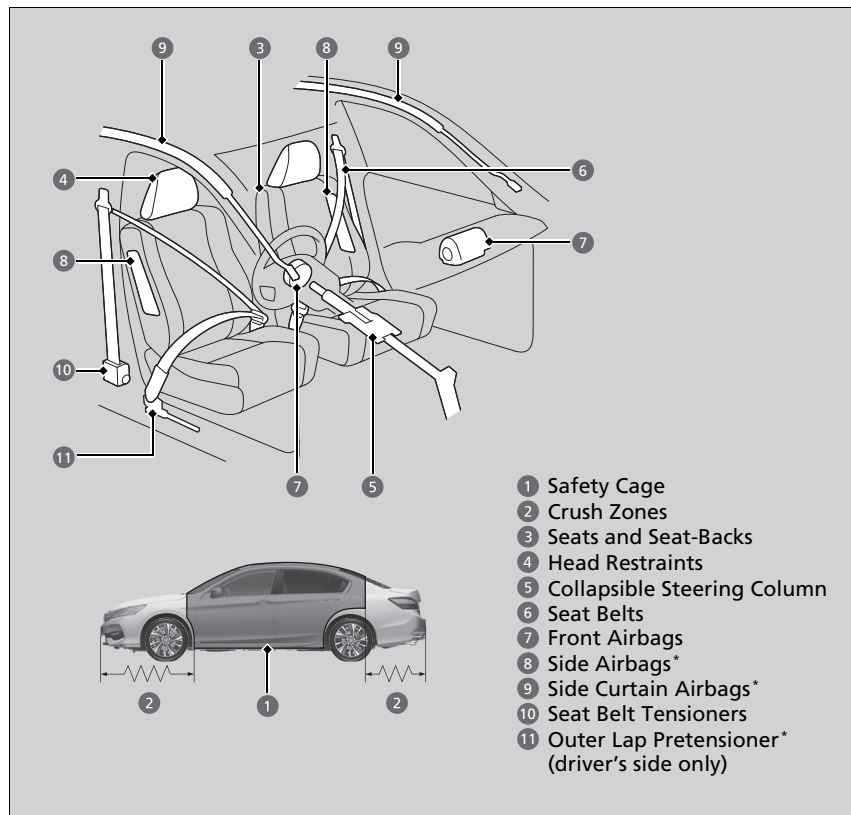
■ Control your speed

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

■ Keep your vehicle in safe condition

Having a tyre blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous. To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tyre pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

Your Vehicle's Safety Features



The following checklist will help you take an active role in protecting yourself and your passengers.

* Not available on all models

Your Vehicle's Safety Features

Your vehicle is equipped with many features that work together to help to protect you and your passengers during a crash.

Some features do not require any action on your part. These include a strong steel framework that forms a safety cage around the passenger compartment, front and rear crush zones, a collapsible steering column, and tensioners that tighten the front seat belts in a sufficient crash.

However, you and your passengers cannot take full advantage of these features unless you remain seated in the correct position and always wear your seat belts. In fact, some safety features can contribute to injuries if they are not used properly.

Safety Checklist

For the safety of you and your passengers, make a habit of checking these items each time before you drive.

- Adjust your seat to a position suitable for driving. Be sure the front seats are adjusted as far to the rear as possible while allowing the driver to control the vehicle. Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious or fatal injury in a crash.

➤ **Adjusting the Seats** P. 184

- Adjust head restraints to the proper position. Head restraints are most effective when the centre of the head restraint aligns with the centre of your head. Taller persons should adjust their head restraint to the highest position.

➤ **Adjusting the Head Restraints** P. 188

- Always wear your seat belt, and make sure you wear it properly. Confirm that any passengers are properly belted as well.

➤ **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 41

- Protect children by using seat belts or child restraint systems according to a child's age, height and weight.

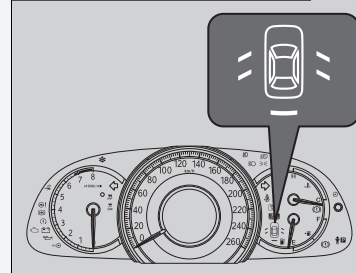
➤ **Child Safety** P. 57

Safety Checklist

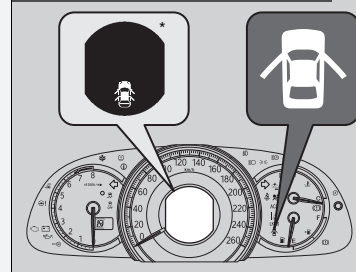
If the door and boot open indicator is on, a door and/or the boot is not completely closed. Close all doors and the boot tightly until the indicator goes off.

➤ **Door and Boot Open Indicator** P. 87

Models with information display



Models with multi-information display



About Your Seat Belts

Seat belts are the single most effective safety device because they keep you connected to the vehicle so that you can take advantage of many built-in safety features. They also help to keep you from being thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against other passengers, or out of the vehicle. When worn properly, seat belts also keep your body properly positioned in a crash so that you can take full advantage of the additional protection provided by the airbags.

In addition, seat belts help to protect you in almost every type of crash, including:

- frontal impacts
- side impacts
- rear impacts
- rollovers

About Your Seat Belts

WARNING

Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.

Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts and wear them properly.

WARNING: Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

WARNING: Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

WARNING: Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.

WARNING: Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

■ Lap/shoulder seat belts

All five seating positions are equipped with lap/shoulder seat belts with emergency locking retractors. In normal driving the retractor lets you move freely while keeping some tension on the belt. During a collision or sudden stop the retractor locks to restrain your body.

Models with lockable retractor seat belts

The rear seat belts also have a lockable retractor for use with child restraint systems.

➤ **Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt** P. 69

»» About Your Seat Belts

Seat belts cannot completely protect you in every crash. But in most cases, seat belts can reduce your risk of serious injury.

Most countries require you to wear seat belts. Take time to familiarise with the legal requirements of the countries in which you will drive.

The emergency locking retractor may lock if you lean forward too quickly. Slower movements will allow the belt to extend fully without locking.

■ Proper use of seat belts

Follow these guidelines for proper use:

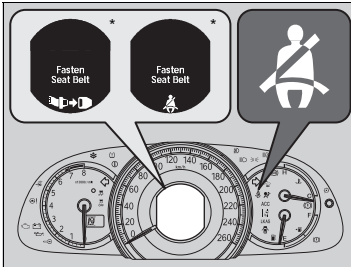
- All occupants should sit upright, well back in the seat, and remain in that position for the duration of the trip. Slouching and leaning reduce the effectiveness of the belt and can increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- Never place the shoulder part of a lap/shoulder seat belt under your arm or behind your back. This could cause very serious injuries in a crash.
- Two people should never use the same seat belt. If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not put any accessories on the seat belts. Devices intended to improve comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can reduce the protective capability and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

►► About Your Seat Belts

Models with lockable retractor seat belts

If a rear seat passenger moves around and extends the seat belt, the lockable retractor may activate. If this happens, release the retractor by unfastening the seat belt and allow the belt to retract completely. Then refasten the belt.

Seat Belt Reminder



Front seats

Your vehicle monitors front seat belt use. If the ignition switch is turned to ON **II**^{*1} before the driver's seat belt is fastened, a beeper will sound and the indicator will blink. If the driver does not fasten the belt before the beeper stops, the indicator will remain on.

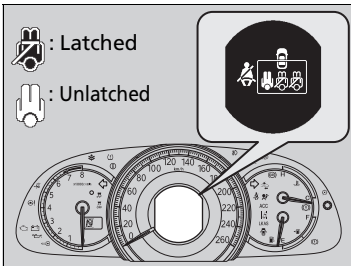
The beeper will periodically sound and the indicator will blink while driving until the driver's and front passenger's seat belts are fastened.

Rear seats*

Your vehicle monitors rear seat belt use. A multi-information display notifies you if any of the rear seat belts are used.

To see the display:

Press the **▲i/▼** (information) button repeatedly.



Seat Belt Reminder

The indicator will also come on if a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt within six seconds after the ignition switch is turned to ON **II**^{*1}. The beeper will also periodically sound and the indicator will blink while driving until the front passenger's seat belt is fastened.

When no one is sitting in the front passenger's seat, or a child or small adult is riding there, the indicator will not come on.

If the indicator comes on or the beeper sounds with no front passenger, or with a passenger wearing the seat belt, something may be interfering with the occupant detection sensor. Check if:

- Heavy items are on the seat.
- A cushion is placed on the seat.
- A rear passenger pushing or pulling on the back of the front passenger's seat.
- The front passenger is not sitting properly.

If none of these conditions exist, have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

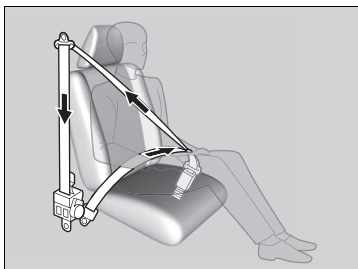
*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

■ Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The front seats are equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners to enhance safety.

The tensioners automatically tighten the front seat belts during a moderate-to-severe frontal collision, sometimes even if the collision is not severe enough to inflate the front airbags.



►► Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

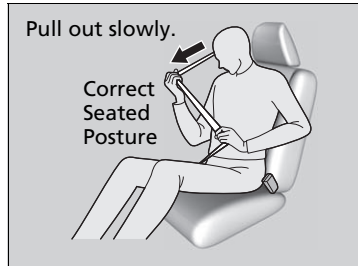
The seat belt tensioners can only operate once. If a tensioner is activated, the SRS indicator will come on. Have a dealer replace the tensioner and thoroughly inspect the seat belt system as it may not offer protection in a subsequent crash.

During a moderate-to-severe side impact, the tensioner on that side of the vehicle also activates.

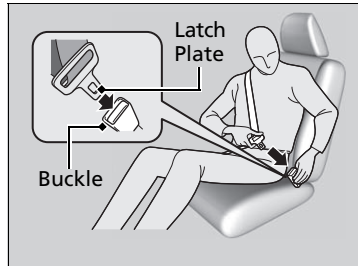
Fastening a Seat Belt

After adjusting a front seat to the proper position, and while sitting upright and well back in the seat:

✎ Adjusting the Seats P. 184



1. Pull the seat belt out slowly.



2. Insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the buckle is secure.

► Make sure that the belt is not twisted or caught on anything.

✎ Fastening a Seat Belt

No one should sit in a seat with an inoperative seat belt or one that does not appear to be working correctly. Using a seat belt that is not working properly may not protect the occupant in a crash. Have a dealer check the belt as soon as possible.

Never insert any foreign objects into the buckle or retractor mechanism.



3. Position the lap part of the belt as low as possible across your hips, then pull up on the shoulder part of the belt so the lap part fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.
4. If necessary, pull up on the belt again to remove any slack, then check that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder. This spreads the forces of a crash over the strongest bones in your upper body.

► Fastening a Seat Belt

⚠ WARNING

Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.

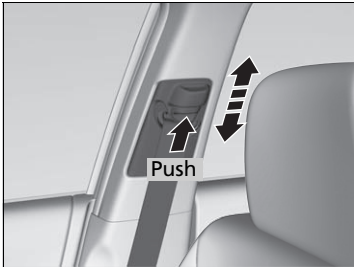
Make sure all seat belts are properly positioned before driving.

To release the belt, push the red **PRESS** button then guide the belt by hand until it has retracted completely.

When exiting the vehicle, be sure the belt is out of the way and will not get caught by closing the door.

■ Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor

The front seats have adjustable shoulder anchors to accommodate taller and shorter occupants.



1. Move the anchor up and down while holding the release button.
2. Position the anchor so that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder.

▣ Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor

The shoulder anchor height can be adjusted to four levels. If the belt contacts your neck, lower the height one level at a time.

After an adjustment, make sure that the shoulder anchor position is secure.

Continued

■ Advice for Pregnant Women

If you are pregnant, the best way to protect yourself and your unborn child when driving or riding in a vehicle is to always wear a seat belt and keep the lap part of the belt as low as possible across the hips.

Wear the shoulder belt across the chest avoiding the abdomen.



Wear the lap part of the belt as low as possible across the hips.

► Advice for Pregnant Women

Each time you have a checkup, ask your doctor if it is okay for you to drive.

To reduce the risk of injuries to both you and your unborn child that can be caused by an inflating front airbag:

- When driving, sit upright and adjust the seat as far back as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle.
- When sitting in the front passenger's seat, adjust the seat as far back as possible.

Seat Belt Inspection

Regularly check the condition of your seat belts as follows:

- Pull each belt out fully, and look for frays, cuts, burns, and wear.
- Check that the latches work smoothly and the belts retract easily.
 - ▶ If a belt does not retract easily, cleaning the belt may correct the problem. Only use a mild soap and warm water. Do not use bleach or cleaning solvents. Make sure the belt is completely dry before allowing it to retract.

Any belt that is not in good condition or working properly will not provide proper protection and should be replaced as soon as possible.

A belt that has been worn during a crash may not provide the same level of protection in a subsequent crash. Have your seat belts inspected by a dealer after any collision.

Seat Belt Inspection

⚠ WARNING

Not checking or maintaining seat belts can result in serious injury or death if the seat belts do not work properly when needed.

Check your seat belts regularly and have any problem corrected as soon as possible.

WARNING: No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

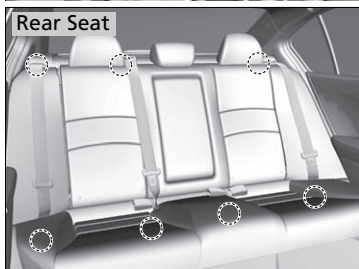
WARNING: It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.

WARNING: Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.

■ Anchorage points



When replacing the seat belts, use the anchorage points shown in the images. The front seat has a lap/shoulder belt.



The rear seat has three lap/shoulder belts.

Airbag System Components

The front, front side, and side curtain airbags are deployed according to the direction and severity of impact. The airbag system includes:


- Two SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) front airbags. The driver's airbag is stored in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is stored in the dashboard. Both are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

Models with side airbags

- Two side airbags, one for the driver and one for a front passenger. The airbags are stored in the outer edges of the seat-backs. Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

Models with side curtain airbags

- Two side curtain airbags, one for each side of the vehicle. The airbags are stored in the ceiling, above the side windows. The front and rear pillars are marked **SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG**.

- An electronic control unit that continually monitors and records information about the sensors, the airbag activators, the seat belt tensioners, and driver and front passenger seat belt use when the ignition switch is in ON *1.
- Automatic front seat belt tensioners.
- Impact sensors that can detect a moderate-to-severe front or side impact.
- An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you to a possible problem with your airbag system or seat belt tensioners.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

■ Important Facts About Your Airbags

Airbags can pose serious hazards. To do their job, airbags must inflate with tremendous force. So, while airbags help to save lives, they can cause burns, bruises, and other minor injuries, sometimes even fatal ones if occupants are not wearing their seat belts properly and sitting correctly.

What you should do: Always wear your seat belt properly, and sit upright and as far back from the steering wheel as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. A front passenger should move their seat as far back from the dashboard as possible.

Remember, however, that no safety system can prevent all injuries or deaths that can occur in a severe crash, even when seat belts are properly worn and the airbags deploy.

Do not place hard or sharp objects between yourself and a front airbag.

Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap, or driving with a pipe or other sharp object in your mouth, can result in injuries if your front airbag inflates.

Do not attach or place objects on the front airbag covers. Objects on the covers marked **SRS AIRBAG** could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags or be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone if the airbags inflate.

► Important Facts About Your Airbags

Do not attempt to deactivate your airbags. Together, airbags and seat belts provide the best protection.

When driving, keep hands and arms out of the deployment path of the front airbag by holding each side of the steering wheel. Do not cross an arm over the airbag cover.

Types of Airbags

Your vehicle is equipped with three types of airbags:

- **Front airbags:** Airbags in front of the driver's and front passenger's seats.
- **Side airbags*:** Airbags in the driver's and front passenger's seat-backs.
- **Side curtain airbags*:** Airbags above the side windows.

Each is discussed in the following pages.

Front Airbags (SRS)

The front SRS airbags inflate in a moderate-to-severe frontal collision to help to protect the head and chest of the driver and/or front passenger.

SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) indicates that the airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. Seat belts are the occupant's primary restraint system.


Housing Locations

The front airbags are housed in the centre of the steering wheel for the driver, and in the dashboard for the front passenger. Both airbags are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Types of Airbags

The airbags can inflate whenever the ignition switch is in ON *1.

After an airbag inflates in a crash, you may see a small amount of smoke. This is from the combustion process of the inflator material and is not harmful. People with respiratory problems may experience some temporary discomfort. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Front Airbags (SRS)

Dual-Stage, Multiple-Threshold Front Airbags (SRS)

Your vehicle is equipped with dual-stage, multiple-threshold front airbags (SRS).

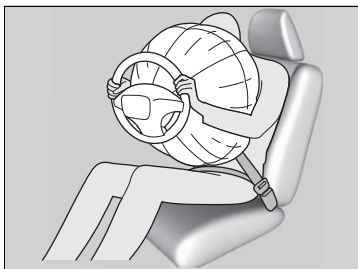
During a frontal crash severe enough to cause one or both front airbags to deploy, the airbags can inflate at different rates, depending on the severity of the crash, whether or not the seat belts are latched, and/or other factors. Frontal airbags are designed to supplement the seat belts to help to reduce the likelihood of head and chest injuries in frontal crashes.

■ Operation

Front airbags are designed to inflate during moderate-to-severe frontal collisions. When the vehicle decelerates suddenly, the sensors send information to the control unit which signals one or both front airbags to inflate.

A frontal collision can be either head-on or angled between two vehicles, or when a vehicle crashes into a stationary object, such as a concrete wall.

■ How the Front Airbags Work



While your seat belt restrains your torso, the front airbag provides supplemental protection for your head and chest.

The front airbags deflate immediately so that they won't interfere with the driver's visibility or the ability to steer or operate other controls.

The total time for inflation and deflation is so fast that most occupants are not aware that the airbags deployed until they see them lying in front of them.

⌘ How the Front Airbags Work

Although the driver's and front passenger's airbags normally inflate within a split second of each other, it is possible for only one airbag to deploy. This can happen if the severity of a collision is at the margin, or threshold that determines whether or not the airbags will deploy. In such cases, the seat belt will provide sufficient protection, and the supplemental protection offered by the airbag would be minimal.

■ When front airbags should not deploy

Minor frontal crashes: Front airbags were designed to supplement seat belts and help to save lives, not to prevent minor scrapes, or even broken bones that might occur during a less than moderate-to-severe frontal crash.

Side impacts: Front airbags can provide protection when a sudden deceleration causes a driver or front passenger to move towards the front of the vehicle. Side airbags* and side curtain airbags* have been specifically designed to help to reduce the severity of injuries that can occur during a moderate-to-severe side impact which can cause the driver or passenger to move towards the side of the vehicle.

Rear impacts: Head restraints and seat belts are your best protection during a rear impact. Front airbags cannot provide any significant protection and are not designed to deploy in such collisions.

Rollovers: Seat belts, and in vehicles equipped with a rollover sensor, side airbags*, and side curtain airbags* offer the best protection in a rollover. Because front airbags could provide little if any protection, they are not designed to deploy during a rollover.

■ When front airbags deploy with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden deceleration, a strong impact to the vehicle framework or suspension might cause one or more of the airbags to deploy. Examples include running into a curb, the edge of a hole, or other low fixed object that causes a sudden deceleration in the vehicle chassis. Since the impact is underneath the vehicle, damage may not be readily apparent.

■ When front airbags may not deploy, even though exterior damage appears severe

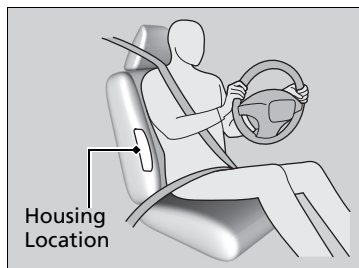
Since crushable body parts absorb crash energy during an impact, the amount of visible damage does not always indicate proper airbag operation. In fact, some collisions can result in severe damage but no airbag deployment because the airbags would not have been needed or would not have provided protection even if they had deployed.

* Not available on all models

Side Airbags*

The side airbags help to protect the upper torso of the driver or a front passenger during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

Housing Locations



The side airbags are housed in the outside edge of the driver's and passenger's seat-backs.

Both are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

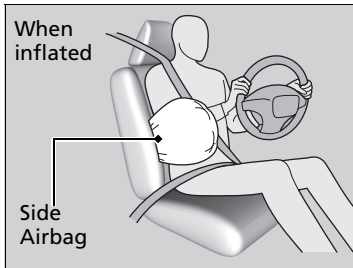
Side Airbags*

Do not attach accessories on or near the side airbags. They can interfere with the proper operation of the airbags, or hurt someone if an airbag inflates.

Do not cover or replace the front seat-back covers without consulting a dealer. Improperly replacing or covering front seat-back covers can prevent your side airbags from properly deploying during a side impact.

Do not let the front passenger lean sideways with their head in the deployment path of the side airbag. An inflating side airbag can strike with strong force and seriously injure the passenger.

■ Operation



When the sensors detect a moderate-to-severe side impact, the control unit signals the side airbag on the impact side to immediately inflate.

■ When a side airbag deploys with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden acceleration, a strong impact to the side of the vehicle's framework can cause a side airbag to deploy. In such cases, there may be little or no damage, but the side impact sensors detected a severe enough impact to deploy the airbag.

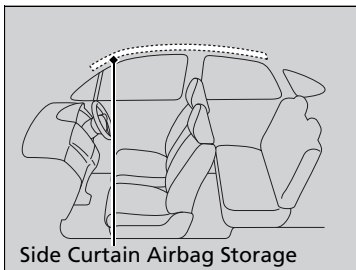
■ When a side airbag may not deploy, even though visible damage appears severe

It is possible for a side airbag to not deploy during an impact that results in apparently severe damage. This can occur when the point of impact was towards the far front or rear of the vehicle, or when the vehicle's crushable body parts absorbed most of the crash energy. In either case, the side airbag would not have been needed nor provided protection even if it had deployed.

Side Curtain Airbags*

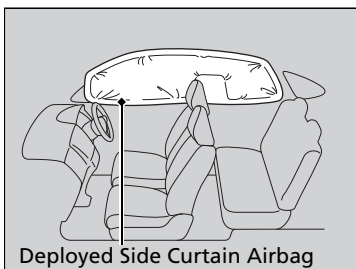
The side curtain airbags help to protect the heads of the driver and passengers in outer seating positions during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

Housing Locations



The side curtain airbags are located in the ceiling above the side windows on both sides of the vehicle.

Operation



■ When side curtain airbags deploy in a frontal collision

One or both side curtain airbags may inflate in a moderate-to-severe angled frontal collision.

In this case, the side curtain airbags will deploy slightly after the front airbags.

* Not available on all models

►► Side Curtain Airbags*

The side curtain airbags are most effective when an occupant is wearing their seat belt properly and sitting upright, well back in their seat.

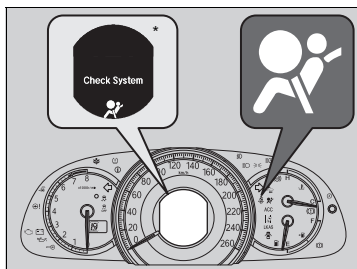
Do not attach any objects to the side windows or roof pillars as they can interfere with the proper operation of the side curtain airbags.

Do not put a coat hanger or hard objects on a coat hook. This could result in injuries if your side curtain airbag inflates.

Airbag System Indicators

If a problem occurs in the airbag system, the SRS indicator will come on.

■ SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) Indicator



■ When the ignition switch is turned to ON *1

The indicator comes on for a few seconds, then goes off. This tells you the system is working properly.

If the indicator comes on at any other time, or does not come on at all, have the system checked by a dealer as soon as possible. If you don't, your airbags and seat belt tensioners may not work properly when they are needed.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

⚠ SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) Indicator

⚠ WARNING

Ignoring the SRS indicator can result in serious injury or death if the airbag systems or tensioners do not work properly.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if the SRS indicator alerts you to a possible problem.

Airbag Care

You do not need to, and should not, perform any maintenance on or replace any airbag system components yourself. However, you should have your vehicle inspected by a dealer in the following situations:

■ When the airbags have deployed

If an airbag has inflated, the control unit and other related parts must be replaced. Similarly, once an automatic seat belt tensioner has been activated, it must be replaced.

■ When the vehicle has been in a moderate-to-severe collision

Even if the airbags did not inflate, have your dealer inspect the following: front seat belt tensioners, and each seat belt that was worn during the crash.

» Airbag Care

The removal of airbag components from the vehicle is prohibited.

In case of malfunction, or shutdown, or after the airbag inflation/seat belt tensioner operation, ask a qualified personnel for handling.

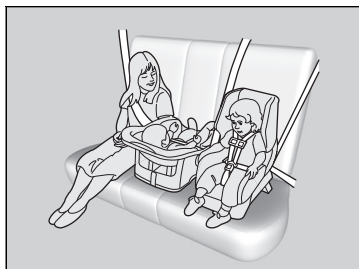
We recommend against the use of salvaged airbag system components, including the airbag, tensioners, sensors, and control unit.

Protecting Child Passengers

Each year, many children are injured or killed in vehicle crashes because they are either unrestrained or not properly restrained. In fact, vehicle accidents are the number one cause of death of children aged 12 and under.

To reduce the number of child deaths and injuries, infants and children should be properly restrained when they ride in a vehicle.

Children should sit properly restrained in a rear seat. This is because:



- An inflating front or side airbag can injure or kill a child sitting in the front seat.
- A child in the front seat is more likely to interfere with the driver's ability to safely control the vehicle.
- Statistics show that children of all sizes and ages are safer when they are properly restrained in a rear seat.

Protecting Child Passengers

⚠ WARNING

Children who are unrestrained or improperly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash.

Any child too small for a seat belt should be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system. A larger child should be properly restrained with a seat belt, using a booster seat if necessary.

In many countries, the law requires all children aged 12 and under, and whose height are shorter than 150 cm be properly restrained in a rear seat.

In many countries, it is required to use an officially approved and suitable child restraint system for transporting a child on any passenger seat. Check your local legal requirement.

Malaysian and South African models

Child restraint systems must meet the UN-ECE R44 or the regulations of the subject countries.

➔ Selecting a Child Restraint System P. 64

Except Malaysian and South African models

We recommend that child restraint systems meet the UN-ECE R44 or the regulations of the subject countries.

- Any child who is too small to wear a seat belt must be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system that is properly secured to the vehicle using the lap belt portion of the lap/shoulder belt.
- Never hold a child on your lap because it is impossible to protect them in the event of a collision.

►► Protecting Child Passengers

Models with lockable retractor seat belts

⚠ WARNING

Allowing a child to play with a seat belt or wrap one around their neck can result in serious injury or death.

Instruct children not to play with any seat belt and make sure any unused seat belts a child can reach is buckled, fully retracted, and locked.

Front Passenger's Sun Visor

⚠ WARNING

NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an **ACTIVE AIRBAG** in front of it, **DEATH** or **SERIOUS INJURY** to the **CHILD** can occur.

- Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child. During a crash, the belt would likely press deep into the child and cause serious or fatal injuries.
- Never let two children use the same seat belt. Both children could be very seriously injured in a crash.

►► Protecting Child Passengers

For some types

WARNING



DO NOT place rear-facing child seat on this seat with a airbag.

DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY can occur.

- Do not allow children to operate the doors, windows or seat adjustments.
- Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended, especially in hot weather when the inside of the vehicle can get hot enough to kill them. They could also activate vehicle controls causing it to move unexpectedly.

►► Protecting Child Passengers

For some types

Front Passenger's Doorjamb.


WARNING



Extreme Hazard!

DO NOT use a rear-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!

WARNING: Use the power window lock button to prevent children from opening the windows. Using this feature will prevent children from playing with the windows, which could expose them to hazards or distract the driver.

 **Opening/Closing the Power Windows** P. 153

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone (with other occupants).

Models with lockable retractor seat belts

To deactivate a lockable retractor, release the buckle and allow the seat belt to wind up all the way.

Safety of Infants and Small Children

■ Protecting Infants

An infant must be properly restrained in a rear-facing, reclining child restraint system until the infant reaches the seat maker's weight or height limit for the seat, and the infant is at least one year old.



■ Positioning a rear-facing child restraint system

Child restraint system must be placed and secured in a rear seating position.

►► Protecting Infants

⚠ WARNING

Placing a rear-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

Always place a rear-facing child restraint system in the back seat, not the front.

As required by UN-ECE R94 Regulation:

⚠ WARNING



NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

When properly installed, a rear-facing child restraint system may prevent the driver or a front passenger from moving their seat all the way back, or from locking their seat-back in the desired position.

►► Protecting Infants

For some types

⚠ WARNING



Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it.

DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY can occur.

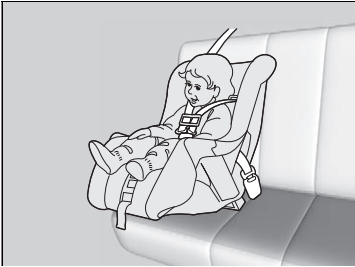
If the passenger's front airbag inflates, it can hit the rear-facing child restraint system with great force, which can dislodge or strike the system, and seriously injure the child.

Rear-facing child restraint systems should never be installed in a front facing position.

Always refer to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions before installation.

■ Protecting Smaller Children

If a child is at least one year old and within the weight range indicated by the child restraint system manufacturer, the child should be properly restrained in a firmly secured front facing child restraint system.



■ Front facing child restraint system placement

We strongly recommend placing a front facing child restraint system in a rear seating position.

Placing a front facing child restraint system in the front seat can be hazardous. A rear seat is the safest place for a child.

►► Protecting Smaller Children

⚠ WARNING

Placing a front facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the front airbag inflates.

If you must place a front facing child restraint system in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, and properly restrain the child.

Educate yourself about the laws and regulations regarding child restraint system use where you are driving, and follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions.

Many experts recommend use of a rear-facing child restraint system for a child up to two years old, if the child's height and weight are appropriate for a rear-facing child restraint system.

■ Selecting a Child Restraint System

Some child restraint systems are lower anchorage compatible. Some have a rigid-type connector while others have a flexible-type connector. Both are equally easy to use. Some existing and previously owned child restraint systems can only be installed using the seat belt. Whichever type you choose, follow the child restraint system manufacturer's use and care instructions as well as the instructions in this manual. Proper installation is key to maximizing your child's safety.

The flexible type may not be available in your country.

In seating positions and vehicles not equipped with lower anchorages, install a child restraint system using the seat belt and a top tether for added security. This is because all child restraint systems must be secured with a lap belt or the lap part of a lap/shoulder belt when not using the lower anchorage system. In addition, the child restraint system manufacturer may advise that a seat belt be used to attach an ISO FIX restraint system once a child reaches a specified weight. Please read the child restraint system owner's manual for proper installation instructions.

■ Important consideration when selecting a child restraint system

Make sure the child restraint system meets the following three requirements:

- The child restraint system is the correct type and size for the child.
- The child restraint system is the correct type for the seating position.
- Child restraint system is compliant with safety standard. We recommend the child restraint system with the UN-ECE R44 or the regulations of the subject countries. Look for the approval mark on the system and the manufacturer's statement of compliance on the box.

►► Selecting a Child Restraint System

Installation of a lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system is simple.

Lower anchorage-compatible child restraint systems have been developed to simplify the installation process and reduce the likelihood of injuries caused by incorrect installation.

We recommend to use the genuine rear-facing Honda BABYSAFE ISOFIX child restraint system for infants, and the genuine front facing Honda ISOFIX child restraint system for small children. Both are available at a dealer in some countries.

The Recommended Child Restraint Systems for Malaysia and South Africa

Various types of child restraint systems are available. Not all types are suitable for your vehicle. Please refer to the table below to select which category of child restraint system can be used on each seating position.

Mass group		Seating position		
		Front Passenger	Rear passenger	
			Rear outboard	Rear centre
group 0	Up to 10 kg	X	U	U
group 0+	Up to 13 kg	X	IL (Honda BABY SAFE ISOFIX) or U	U
group I	9 kg to 18 kg	UF*1	IUF (Size class A, B1, B) or U	U
group II	15 kg to 25 kg	UF*1	U	U
group III	22 kg to 36 kg	UF*1	U	U

U: Suitable for “universal” category restraints approved for use in this mass group.

UF: Suitable for front facing “universal” category restraints approved for use in this mass group.

IL: Suitable for particular ISOFIX child restraint systems (CRS) given in this list.

IUF: Suitable for front facing ISOFIX child restraint system of universal category approved for use in this mass group.

X: Seat position not suitable for children in this mass group.

*1: Move the front seat to its rearmost position.

A size class is specified for some child restraint systems. Make sure to check the size class as indicated on the manufacturer’s instructions, package, and labels of the child restraint.

The particular child restraints in the table are Honda Genuine Parts. They are available from your dealer.

For a correct installation, please refer to the Child Restraint Instruction Manual.

■ The Recommended Child Restraint Systems for India

Various types of child restraint systems are available. Not all types are suitable for your vehicle. Please refer to the table below to select which category of child restraint system can be used on each seating position.

Mass group		Seating position		
		Front Passenger	Rear passenger*2	
			Rear outboard	Rear centre
group 0	Up to 10 kg	X	U	U
group 0+	Up to 13 kg	X	IL (Honda genuine ISOFIX child restraint system) or U	U
group I	9 kg to 18 kg	UF*1	IUF (Size class A, B1, B) or U or IL (Honda genuine ISOFIX child restraint system)	U
group II	15 kg to 25 kg	UF*1	U	U
group III	22 kg to 36 kg	UF*1	U	U

U: Suitable for “universal” category restraints approved for use in this mass group.

UF: Suitable for front facing “universal” category restraints approved for use in this mass group.

IL: Suitable for particular ISOFIX child restraint systems (CRS) given in this list.

IUF: Suitable for front facing ISOFIX child restraint system of universal category approved for use in this mass group.

X: Seat position not suitable for children in this mass group.

*1: Move the front seat to its rearmost position.

*2: When the ISOFIX child restraint system is installed on left side seat, wearing seat belt of the centre seat is impossible.

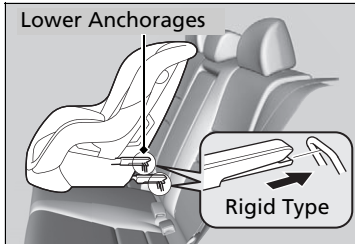
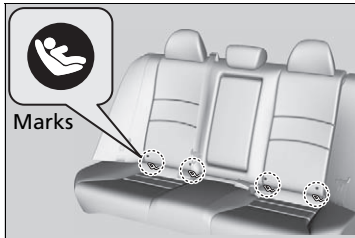
A size class is specified for some child restraint systems. Make sure to check the size class as indicated on the manufacturer’s instructions, package, and labels of the child restraint.

The particular child restraints in the table are Honda Genuine Parts. They are available from your dealer.

For a correct installation, please refer to the Child Restraint Instruction Manual.

■ Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

A lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system can be installed in either of the two rear outer seats. A child restraint system is attached to the lower anchorages with either the rigid or flexible type of connectors.



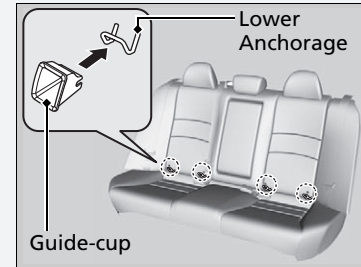
1. Locate the lower anchorages under the marks.

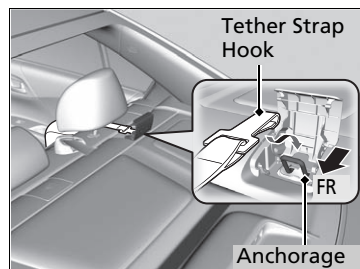
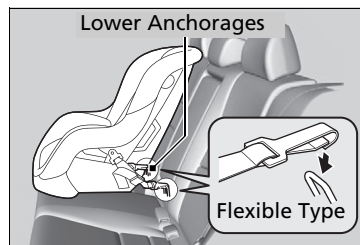
2. Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat then attach the child restraint system to the lower anchorages according to the instructions that came with the child restraint system.

► When installing the child restraint system, make sure that the lower anchorages are not obstructed by the seat belt or any other object.

▣ Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

Some child restraint systems come with optional guide-cups, which avoid possible damage to the seat surface. Follow the manufacturer's instructions when using the guide-cups, and attach them to the lower anchorages as shown in the image.





3. Open the tether anchorage cover behind the head restraint.
4. Raise the head restraint to its highest position, then route the tether strap between the head restraint legs, and secure the tether strap hook onto the anchorage.
5. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.
6. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back and side to side; little movement should be felt.
7. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled, the lockable retractor* is activated, and the belt is fully retracted and locked.

►► Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

WARNING: Never use a hook that does not come with a Top Tether anchor symbol when securing an installed child restraint system.

For your child's safety, when using a child restraint system installed using the lower anchorage system, make sure that the child restraint system is properly secured to the vehicle. A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

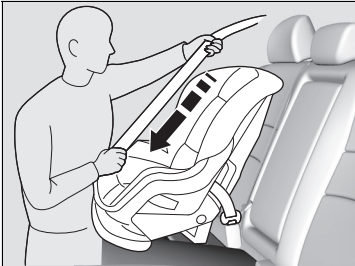
The flexible type may not be available in your country.

Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt



1. Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat.
2. Route the seat belt through the child restraint system according to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions, and insert the latch plate into the buckle.

► Insert the latch plate fully until it clicks.



Lap/shoulder seat belt with lockable retractor

3. Slowly pull the shoulder part of the belt all the way out until it stops. This activates the lockable retractor.
4. Let the seat belt completely wind up into the retractor, then try to pull it out to make sure the retractor is locked.

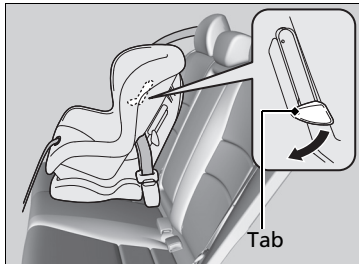
► If you are able to pull the shoulder belt out, the lockable retractor is not activated. Pull the seat belt all the way out, and repeat steps 2 – 4.

Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

To check if the lap/shoulder belt is equipped with the lockable retractor, pull the lap part of the lap/shoulder belt all the way out, let the belt retract slowly, then pull the belt again gently. If the belt is locked, the belt is equipped with the lockable retractor.

The seat belt with a lockable retractor has a label as shown in the image.





5. Grab the shoulder part of the seat belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt.

► When doing this, place your weight on the child restraint system and push it into the vehicle seat.

Lap/shoulder seat belt without lockable retractor

3. Push down the tab. Route the shoulder part of the belt into the slit at the side of the restraint.
4. Grab the shoulder part of the belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt.

► When doing this, place your weight on the child restraint system and push it into the vehicle seat.
5. Position the belt properly and push up the tab. Make sure the belt is not twisted.

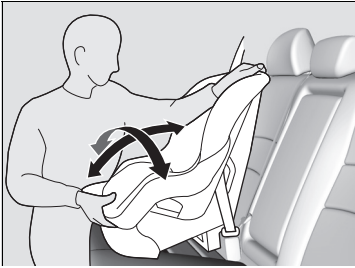
► When pushing up the tab, pull up the upper shoulder part of the belt to remove any slack from the belt.

►► Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

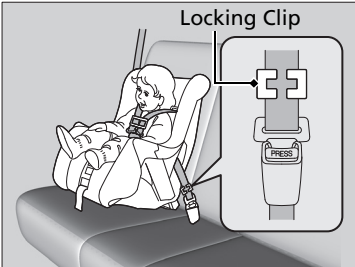
Lap/shoulder seat belt with lockable retractor

After the child restraint system is installed properly, check if the lockable retractor is activated and the belt is fully retracted and locked. To deactivate a lockable retractor, release the buckle and allow the seat belt to wind up all the way.



All models

- 6.** Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back and side to side; little movement should be felt.
- 7.** Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled.



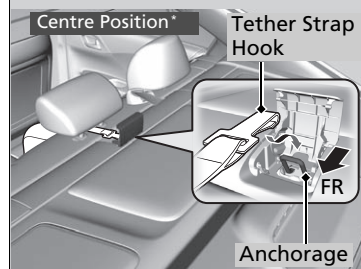
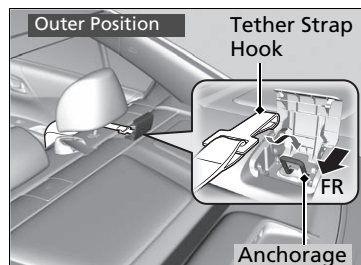
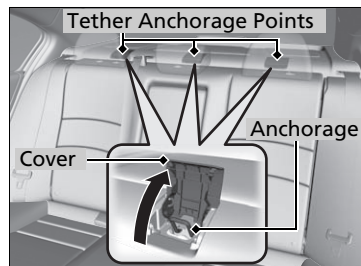
Lap/shoulder seat belt without lockable retractor

If your child restraint system does not come with a mechanism that secures the belt, install a locking clip on the seat belt.

After going through the step 1 and 2, pull up the shoulder part of the belt and make sure there is no slack in the lap portion.

- 3.** Tightly grasp the belt near the latch plate. Pinch both parts of the belt together so they do not slip through the latch plate. Unbuckle the seat belt.
- 4.** Install the locking clip as shown in the image. Position the clip as close as possible to the latch plate.
- 5.** Insert the latch plate into the buckle. Go to step 6 and 7.

■ Adding Security with a Tether



A tether anchorage point is provided behind each or rear outer seating position. A child restraint system that is installed with a seat belt and comes with a tether can use the tether for additional security.

1. Locate the appropriate tether anchorage point and lift the cover.
2. Raise the head restraint to its highest position, then route the tether strap through the head restraint legs. Make sure the strap is not twisted.
3. Secure the tether strap hook onto the anchorage.
4. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.

► Adding Security with a Tether

WARNING: Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Since a tether can provide additional security to the lap/shoulder seat belt installation, we recommend using a tether whenever one is available.

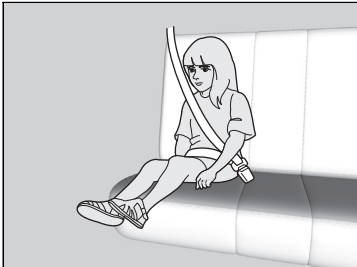
Safety of Larger Children

■ Protecting Larger Children

The following pages give instructions on how to check proper seat belt fit, what kind of booster seat to use if one is needed, and important precautions for a child who must sit in front.

■ Checking Seat Belt Fit

When a child is too big for a child restraint system, secure the child in a rear seat using the lap/shoulder seat belt. Have the child sit upright and all the way back, then answer the following questions.



■ Checklist

- Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the edge of the seat?
- Does the shoulder belt cross between the child's neck and arm?
- Is the lap part of the seat belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs?
- Will the child be able to stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If you answer yes to all these questions, the child is ready to wear the lap/shoulder seat belt correctly. If you answer no to any question, the child needs to ride on a booster seat until the seat belt fits properly without a booster seat.

►► Safety of Larger Children

⚠ WARNING

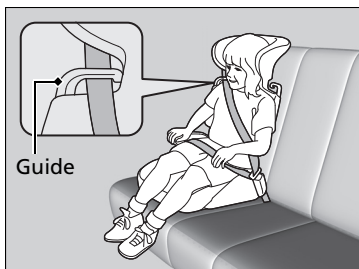
Allowing a child age 12 or under to sit in front can result in injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

If a larger child must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, have the child sit up properly and wear the seat belt properly, using a booster seat if needed.

Booster Seats



If a lap/shoulder seat belt cannot be used properly, position the child in a booster seat in a rear seating position. For the child's safety, check that the child meets the booster seat manufacturer's recommendations.



A back-rest is available for a specific booster seat. Install the back-rest to the booster seat and adjust it to the vehicle seat according to the booster seat manufacturer's instructions. Make sure the seat belt is properly routed through the guide at the shoulder of the back-rest and the belt does not touch and cross the child's neck.

Booster Seats

When installing a booster seat, make sure to read the instructions that came with it, and install the seat accordingly.

There are high- and low-type booster seats. Choose a booster seat that allows the child to wear the seat belt correctly.

■ Protecting Larger Children - Final Checks

Your vehicle has a rear seat where children can be properly restrained. If you ever have to carry a group of children, and a child must ride in front:

- Make sure you read and fully understand the instructions and safety information in this manual.
- Move the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Have the child sit upright and well back in the seat.
- Check that the seat belt is properly positioned so that the child is secure in the seat.

■ Monitoring child passengers

We strongly recommend that you keep an eye on child passengers. Even older, more mature children sometimes need to be reminded to fasten their seat belts and sit up properly.


Carbon Monoxide Gas

The engine exhaust from this vehicle contains carbon monoxide, a colourless, odourless, and highly toxic gas. As long as you properly maintain your vehicle, carbon monoxide gas will not get into the interior.

■ Have the exhaust system inspected for leaks whenever

- The exhaust system is making an unusual noise.
- The exhaust system may have been damaged.
- The vehicle is raised for an oil change.

When you operate a vehicle with the boot open, airflow can pull exhaust gas into the interior and create a hazardous condition. If you must drive with the boot open, open all the windows and set the heating and cooling system*/climate control system* as shown below.

1. Select the fresh air mode.
2. Select the  mode.
3. Set the fan speed to high.
4. Set the temperature control to a comfortable setting.

Adjust the heating and cooling system*/climate control system* in the same manner if you sit in your parked vehicle with the engine running.

Carbon Monoxide Gas

WARNING

Carbon monoxide gas is toxic. Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you.

Avoid any enclosed areas or activities that expose you to carbon monoxide.

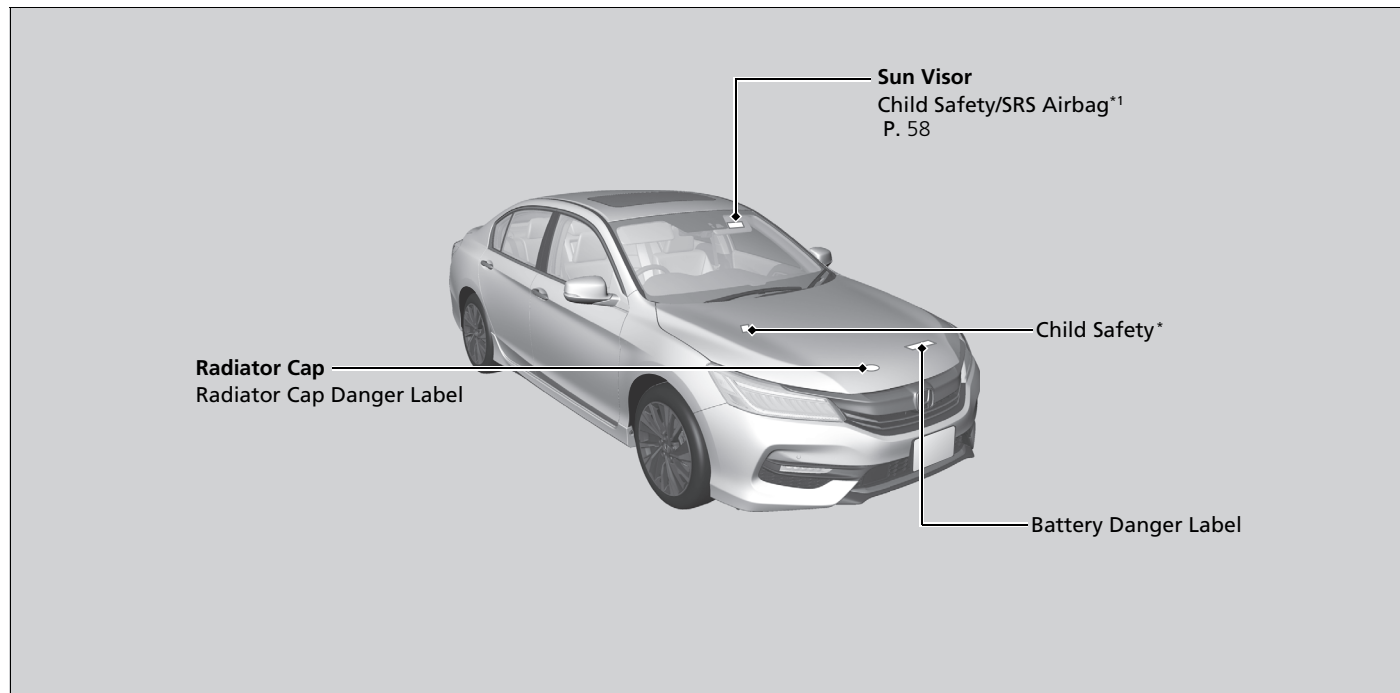
An enclosed area such as a garage can quickly fill up with carbon monoxide gas.

Do not run the engine with the garage door closed. Even when the garage door is open, drive out of the garage immediately after starting the engine.

Label Locations

These labels are in the locations shown. They warn you of potential hazards that can cause serious injury or death. Read these labels carefully.

If a label comes off or becomes hard to read, contact a dealer for a replacement.



*1: Right-hand drive models shown. For the left-hand drive models, these labels are located at the symmetrically opposite to the right-hand drive model.

* Not available on all models



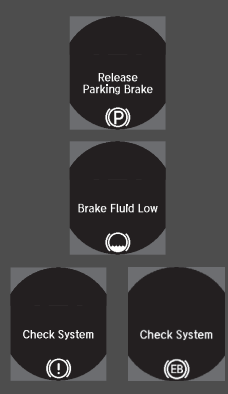
Instrument Panel

This chapter describes the buttons, indicators, and gauges that are used while driving.



- Indicators** 80
 - Information Display Warning and Information Messages* 100
 - Multi-Information Display Warning and Information Messages* 101
- Gauges and Displays**
 - Gauges 110
 - Information Display* 111
 - Multi-Information Display* 114



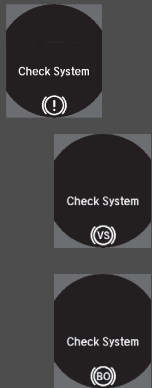
* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*2, 3
	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, then goes off if the parking brake has been released. Comes on when the parking brake is applied, and goes off when it is released. The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if you drive with the parking brake not fully released. Comes on when the brake fluid level is low. Comes on if there is a problem with the brake system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on while driving - Make sure the parking brake is released. Check the brake fluid level. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ What to do when the indicator comes on while driving P. 520 Comes on along with the ABS indicator - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On P. 520 	

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

*2: Models with multi-information display
















*3: On the left: Australian, New Zealand, Indonesian, and African right-hand drive models On the right: Malaysian models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*2, 3
 (Amber)	Brake System Indicator (Amber)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, then goes off. Comes on if there is a problem with a system related to braking other than the conventional brake system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

*2: Models with multi-information display

*3: On the left: Australian, New Zealand, Indonesian, and African right-hand drive models On the right: Malaysian models





Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*2
	Low Oil Pressure Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, and goes off when the engine starts. Comes on when the engine oil pressure is low. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on while driving - Immediately stop in a safe place.  If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On P. 519 	
	Malfunction Indicator Lamp	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, and goes off either when the engine starts or after several seconds if the engine did not start. Comes on if there is a problem with the emissions control systems. Blinks when a misfire in the engine's cylinders is detected. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on while driving - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. Blinks while driving - Stop in a safe place where there are no flammable objects. Stop the engine for 10 minutes or more, and wait for it to cool down. Then, take your vehicle to a dealer.  If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks P. 520 	
	Charging System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, and goes off when the engine starts. Comes on when the battery is not charging. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on while driving - Turn off the heating and cooling system*/climate control system* and rear demister to reduce electricity consumption.  If the Charging System Indicator Comes On P. 519 	
	Shift Lever Position Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates the current shift lever position. 	 Shifting P. 384, 386	

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.










*2: Models with multi-information display

* Not available on all models

Automatic transmission models with paddle shifters

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message* ¹
<div>Models with information display</div>  <div>Models with multi-information display</div> 	M (Sequential shift mode) Indicator/Gear Position Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when sequential shift mode is applied. 	 Sequential Shift Mode * P. 388	









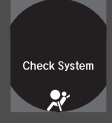
*1: Models with multi-information display

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*2, 3
	Transmission Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks if the transmission system has a problem. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks while driving - Avoid sudden starts and acceleration and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately. 	
	Seat Belt Reminder Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on and the beeper sounds if you are not wearing a seat belt when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1. If the front passenger is not wearing a seat belt, the indicator comes on a few seconds later. Blinks while driving if either you or the front passenger has not fastened a seat belt. The beeper sounds and the indicator blinks at regular intervals. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The beeper stops and the indicator goes off when you and the front passenger fasten their seat belts. Stays on after you or the front passenger has fastened the seat belt - A detection error may have occurred in the sensor. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.  Seat Belt Reminder P. 39 	   

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.











*2: Models with multi-information display

*3: On the left: Australian, New Zealand, Indonesian, and African right-hand drive models On the right: Malaysian models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message* ²
	Low Fuel Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the fuel reserve is running low (approximately 9.7 Litres left). Blinks if there is a problem with the fuel gauge. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on - Refuel your vehicle as soon as possible. Blinks - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	
	Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1}, then goes off. If it comes on at any other time, there is a problem with the ABS. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability but no anti-lock function. <p> Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) P. 428</p>	
	Supplemental Restraint System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1}, then goes off. Comes on if a problem with any of the following is detected: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Supplemental restraint system - Side airbag system* - Side curtain airbag system* - Seat belt tensioner 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on constantly or does not come on at all - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.





*2: Models with multi-information display

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message* ^{2, 3}
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1}, then goes off. Blinks when VSA, or trailer stability assist* is active. Comes on if there is a problem with the VSA, hill start assist* or trailer stability assist system*. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. <ul style="list-style-type: none">  Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System* P. 418  Trailer Stability Assist P. 373  Hill start assist system* P. 375, 381 	 
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1}, then goes off. Comes on when you deactivate VSA. 	 VSA On and Off P. 419	—

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.








*2: Models with multi-information display

*3: On the left: Australian, New Zealand, Indonesian, and African right-hand drive models On the right: Malaysian models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message ^{*2}
<div>Models with information display</div>  <div>Models with multi-information display</div> 	Door and Boot Open Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1}, then goes off. Comes on if any door or the boot is not completely closed. The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if any door or the boot is opened while driving. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Goes off when all doors and the boot are closed. 	





*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

*2: Models with multi-information display












Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message* ²
	Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1}, and goes off when the engine starts. Comes on if there is a problem with the EPS (Electric Power Steering) system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on constantly or does not come on at all - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) Indicator Comes On P. 521 	
	System Message Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1}, then goes off. Comes on along with a beep when a problem is detected. A system message on the multi-information display appears at the same time. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> While the indicator is on, press the  (information) button to see the message again. Refer to the Indicators information in this chapter when a system message appears on the multi-information display. Take appropriate action for the message. The multi-information display does not return to the normal screen unless the warning is cancelled, or the button is pressed. 	

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

*2: Models with multi-information display







Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message* ¹
	Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Blink when you operate the turn signal lever. • Blink along with all turn signals if you press the hazard warning button. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Does not blink or blinks rapidly - A turn signal light bulb has blown. Change the bulb immediately. ➡ Replacing Light Bulbs P. 474, 476 	—
		Models with emergency stop signal <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Blink along with all turn signals if you depress the brake pedal while the high speed driving. 	➡ Emergency Stop Signal P. 438	
	High Beam Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on when the high beam headlights are on. 	—	—
	Lights On Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on whenever the light switch is on, or in AUTO* when the exterior lights are on. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If you remove the key from the ignition switch or set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) while the exterior lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened. 	—
	Front Fog Light Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on when the front fog lights are on. 	—	—

*1: Models with multi-information display



Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*2
	Rear Fog Light Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the rear fog light is on. 	—	—
	Immobilizer System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on briefly when you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1}, then goes off. Comes on if the immobilizer system cannot recognize the key information. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks - You cannot start the engine. Turn the ignition switch to LOCK ^{*1}, pull the key out, and then insert the key and turn it to ON ^{*1} again. Repeatedly blinks - The system may be malfunctioning. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems can occur. 	—
 Indicator	Security System Alarm Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks when the security system alarm has been set. 	 Security System Alarm P. 150	—
	ECON Mode Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1}, and goes off. Comes on when ECON mode is on. 	 ECON Button P. 390	

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

*2: Models with multi-information display





Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message* ¹
	CRUISE MAIN Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when you press the CRUISE button. 	 Cruise Control* P. 391	—
	CRUISE CONTROL Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when you have set a speed for cruise control. 	 Cruise Control* P. 391	—
	Keyless Access System Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. Comes on as soon as a problem is detected in the keyless access system or keyless starting system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on constantly or does not come on at all - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	

*1: Models with multi-information display

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message* ²
	Starter System Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. Comes on if the starter system has a problem. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> As a temporary measure, press and hold the ENGINE START/STOP button for up to 15 seconds while pressing the brake pedal and manually start the engine. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	—
	Light Control Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if there is a problem with the automatic lighting control system or low beam headlights*. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on while driving - Turn the lights on manually and have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	—



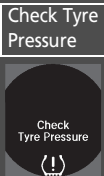
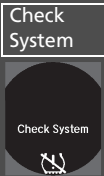
*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

*2: Models with multi-information display

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message* ²
	Auto High-Beam Indicator (Green)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *¹, then goes off. Comes on when all the operating conditions of the auto high-beam are met. 	 Auto High-Beam * P. 169	—
	Auto High-Beam Indicator (Amber)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if there is a problem with the auto high-beam. Comes on when the area around the camera on the windscreen is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Manually operate the headlight switch. If you are driving with the high beam headlights when this happens, the headlights are changed to low beams. Stop in a safe place and clean the camera lens with a soft cloth. If the indicator does not turn off after cleaning the lens, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	—




*1:Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

*2:Models with multi-information display


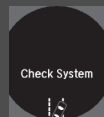




Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message* ²
	Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1}, then goes off. Comes on if the tyre pressure of any of the tyres becomes low. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on or blinks while driving - Stop in a safe place, check which tyre's pressure is low, and find the cause. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks* P. 521 Stays on after the tyres are inflated to the recommended pressures - The system needs to be initialised. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Deflation Warning System Initialisation P. 422 	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks for about one minute, and then stays on if there is a problem with the deflation warning system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks and remains on - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.










*2: Models with multi-information display

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message* ¹
	Shift to Park Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when you press the ENGINE START/STOP button to turn the engine off without the shift lever in P. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press the ENGINE START/STOP button twice after moving the shift lever to P. 	—
	Rotate Wheel Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the steering wheel is locked. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Move the steering wheel left and right while pressing the ENGINE START/STOP button. 	—
	Parking Sensor System Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if there is a problem with the parking sensor system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check if the area around the sensor(s) is covered with mud, ice, snow, etc. If the indicator stays on even after you clean the area, have the system checked by a dealer. 	—







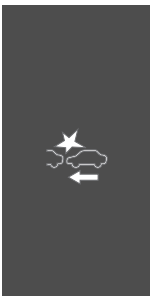




*1: Models with multi-information display

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message* ¹
	Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you change the power mode to ON, then goes off. Comes on if there is a problem with the RDM system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the RDM system shuts itself off. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on - The temperature inside the camera is too high. Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down.  Front Sensor Camera* P. 394 	
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator and message come back on after you cleaned the area around the camera.  Front Sensor Camera* P. 394 	

*1: Models with multi-information display








Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message* ¹
ACC	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Indicator (Amber)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *¹, then goes off. Comes on if there is a problem with ACC. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if anything covers the radar sensor cover and prevents the sensor from detecting a vehicle in front. May come on when driving in bad weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.) ACC has been automatically cancelled. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When the radar sensor gets dirty, stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe off dirt using a soft cloth. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator does not go off even after you clean the sensor cover. 	
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Indicator (White)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when you press the MAIN button. 	 Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)* P. 396	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if the temperature inside the camera is too high. ACC has been automatically cancelled. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. Goes off - The camera has been cooled down. Pressing the MAIN button can resume the system.  Front Sensor Camera* P. 394  Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)* P. 396	

*1: Models with multi-information display

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*2
	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, then goes off. Comes on if there is a problem with the LKAS. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	
	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (White)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when you press the MAIN button. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none">  Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)* P. 411 	
	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, then goes off. Comes on when you deactivate the CMBS. A multi-information display message appears for five seconds. Comes on if there is a problem with the CMBS. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on constantly without the CMBS off - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.  Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)* P. 430 	 

*1:Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.


*2:Models with multi-information display

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message* ¹
	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the CMBS system shuts itself off. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth.  Front Sensor Camera* P. 394 	
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When the radar sensor gets dirty, stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe off dirt using a soft cloth. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the message does not disappear even after you clean the sensor cover.  Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)* P. 430 	
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on - The temperature inside the camera is too high. Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down.  Front Sensor Camera* P. 394 	



*1: Models with multi-information display

Information Display Warning and Information Messages*


The following messages appear only on the information display.









Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Appears when there is a problem with the sensor on the battery.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Models with keyless access system

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Appears when the power mode is in ACCESSORY.	—
NO KEY	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Appears when you close the door with the power mode in ON without the keyless remote inside the vehicle.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Disappears when you bring the keyless remote back inside the vehicle and close the door.
KEY 	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Appears when the keyless remote's battery becomes weak.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Replace the battery as soon as possible. ➡ Replacing the Button Battery P. 492



Multi-Information Display Warning and Information Messages*

The following messages appear only on the multi-information display. Press the /▼ (information) button to see the message again with the system message indicator on.


Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the engine coolant temperature gets abnormally high. 	 Overheating P. 517
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears while you are customizing the settings and the shift lever is moved out of P. 	 Customized Features P. 118
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears once if the outside temperature is below 3°C while the ignition switch is in ON II*1. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> There is a possibility that the road surface is icy and slippery.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when there is a problem with the sensor on the battery. Appears when the battery is not charging. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.  Checking the Battery P. 490 Appears along with the battery charging system indicator - Turn off the climate control system and rear demister to reduce electricity consumption.  If the Charging System Indicator Comes On P. 519

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



Models with automatic lighting control system

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Appears if there is a problem with the automatic lighting control system.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Appears while driving - Manually turn the lights on, and have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➤ Automatic Lighting Control* P. 164
<div>Models with LED headlights</div> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Appears if there is a problem with the low beam headlights.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➤ Headlight Bulbs P. 471


Models with rear seat belt reminder

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Appears when any of the rear seat belts are latched or unlatched, or either rear door is opened and closed.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">➤ Seat Belt Reminder P. 39

Models with auto high-beam


Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when there is a problem with the auto high-beam. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Manually operate the headlight switch. If you are driving with the high beam headlights when this happens, the headlights are changed to low beams. ➤ Auto High-Beam* P. 169
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears if anything covers the camera lens or windscreen around the camera prevents the sensor from detecting a vehicle in front. May appear when driving in bad weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When the camera lens or windscreen around the camera gets dirty, stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe off dirt using a soft cloth. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the message does not disappear even after you clean the camera lens or windscreen around the camera. ➤ Auto High-Beam* P. 169

Models with parking sensor system




Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears if there is a problem with the parking sensor system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check if the area around the sensor(s) is covered with mud, ice, snow, etc. If the indicator(s) stays on even after you clean the area, have the system checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models







Models with trailer stability assist





Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Appears if there is a problem with the brake lighting system. Trailer stability assist automatically shuts down.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.




Models without keyless access system


Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Appears when the ignition key is turned to ACCESSORY I from ON II. (The driver's door is closed.)	—
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Appears when you open the driver's door while the ignition key is in ACCESSORY I.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Turn the ignition switch to LOCK 0, then remove the key.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Appears when you open the driver's door while the ignition key is in LOCK 0.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Remove the key from the ignition switch.



Models with keyless access system

Message	Condition	Explanation
 <p>To Unlock Wheel Push + Turn</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the steering wheel is locked. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Move the steering wheel left and right while pressing the ENGINE START/STOP button.
 <p>Shift To Park</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears if you push the ENGINE START/STOP button to turn the engine off without the shift lever in P. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Push the ENGINE START/STOP button twice after moving the shift lever to P.
 <p>Accessory Mode</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the power mode in ACCESSORY. 	—
 <p>To Turn Vehicle Off Push Twice</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears after the driver's door is opened when the power mode is in ACCESSORY. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press the ENGINE START/STOP button twice with your foot off the brake pedal to change the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
 <p>Keyless Remote Not Detected</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when you close the door with the power mode in ON without the keyless remote inside the vehicle. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Disappears when you bring the keyless remote back inside the vehicle and close the door.  Keyless Remote Reminder P. 160


Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the keyless remote battery becomes weak. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Replace the battery as soon as possible. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Replacing the Button Battery P. 492
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears with the beep sound if the keyless remote battery is too weak to start the engine or the key is not within operating range to start the engine. A beeper sounds six times. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak P. 511
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears a few seconds after you bring the keyless remote in front of the ENGINE START/STOP button when To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button appears. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Changing the Power Mode P. 158
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when you set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Starting the Engine P. 376
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the starter system has a problem. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> As a temporary measure, press and hold the ENGINE START/STOP button for up to 15 seconds while pressing the brake pedal and manually start the engine. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears for about three seconds when ACC has been automatically cancelled. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> You can resume the set speed after the condition that caused ACC to cancel improves. Press the RES/+ button. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)* P. 396
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Flashes when the system senses a likely collision with a vehicle in front of you. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Take the appropriate means to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)* P. 430 ➤ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)* P. 396
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth. May appear when driving in bad weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the message appears again after you cleaned the area around the camera. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Front Sensor Camera* P. 394 ➤ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)* P. 396 ➤ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)* P. 411

Message	Condition	Explanation
	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Appears when the vehicle is driving out of a detected line. The steering wheel vibrates rapidly.• Blinks when you fail to steer the vehicle. The beeper sounds simultaneously.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Keep the vehicle within the lane you are driving.• The colour of either line changes from white to amber as the vehicle gets closer to that side of the lane line.<ul style="list-style-type: none">➤ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)* P. 411• Operate the steering wheel to resume the LKAS.
	Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Appears when the vehicle is driving out of a detected line.<ul style="list-style-type: none">When you selected Warning Only<ul style="list-style-type: none">- The steering wheel vibrates rapidly when the vehicle is drifting out of a detected line.When you selected Normal or Delayed<ul style="list-style-type: none">- The steering wheel vibrates rapidly when the vehicle is drifting out of a detected line. The system also steers the vehicle to help you remain within your driving lane.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Keep the vehicle within the lane you are driving.• The colour of either line changes from white to amber as the vehicle gets closer to that side of the lane line.<ul style="list-style-type: none">➤ Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System* P. 407• You can change the setting for the road departure mitigation system. Normal, Delayed, and Warning Only can be selected.<ul style="list-style-type: none">➤ Customized Features P. 118, 308

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears if the temperature inside the camera is too high. ACC/LKAS has been automatically cancelled. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Use the climate control system to cool down or warm up the camera. Goes off - The camera has been cooled down. Pressing the MAIN/LKAS button can resume the system. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Front Sensor Camera* P. 394 ➤ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)* P. 396 ➤ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)* P. 411
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the LKAS is in operation, or the LKAS button is pressed, but there is a problem with a system related to the LKAS. The beeper sounds simultaneously. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If any other system indicators come on, such as the VSA, ABS and brake system, take appropriate action. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Indicators P. 80

Gauges

Gauges include the speedometer, tachometer, fuel gauge, and related indicators. They are displayed when the ignition switch is in ON ^{*1}.

■ Speedometer

Displays your driving speed in km/h.

■ Tachometer

Shows the number of engine revolutions per minute.

■ Fuel Gauge

Displays the amount of fuel left in the fuel tank.


■ Temperature Gauge

Displays the temperature of the engine coolant.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

⌘ Fuel Gauge

NOTICE

You should refuel when the reading approaches . Running out of fuel can cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

The actual amount of remaining fuel may differ from the fuel gauge reading.

⌘ Temperature Gauge

NOTICE


Driving with the temperature gauge pointer in the upper zone can cause serious engine damage. Pull safely to the side of the road and allow engine temperature to return to normal.

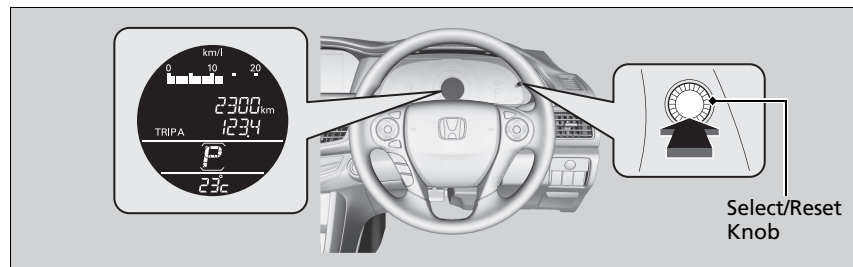
➡ **Overheating** P. 517

Information Display*

The information display shows the odometer, trip meter, and other gauges.

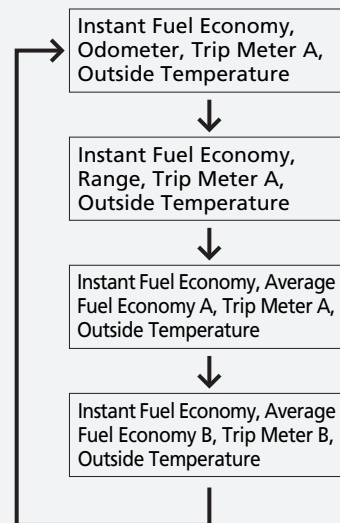
Switching the Display

Press the  (Select/Reset) Knob to change the display.



Switching the Display

Each time you press the  knob, the information display changes as follows:



Some of the items on the information display also appear on the audio/information screen. They also change along with the information display changes while the fuel consumption is shown.


■ Odometer

Shows the total number of kilometres that your vehicle has accumulated.

■ Trip Meter

Shows the total number of kilometres driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

■ Resetting a trip meter

To reset a trip meter, display it, then press and hold the  knob. The trip meter is reset to **0.0**.


■ Average Fuel Economy

Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in l/100 km or km/l. The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

■ Instant Fuel Economy

Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in l/100 km or km/l.

» Trip Meter

Switch between trip meter A and trip meter B by pressing the  knob.


» Average Fuel Economy

You can change when to reset the average fuel economy.

► **Customized Features** P. 308




■ Outside Temperature

Shows the outside temperature in Celsius.

If the outside temperature has been below 3°C at the time you turn the ignition switch to ON *, the outside temperature indicator blinks for 10 seconds.

■ Adjusting the outside temperature indicator

Adjust the temperature reading up to $\pm 3^{\circ}\text{C}$ if the temperature reading seems incorrect.

1. Turn the ignition switch to ON *.
2. Press and hold the  (Select/Reset) knob for 10 seconds or more while the outside temperature is shown on the information display.
 - The information display goes into temperature adjustment mode. The display starts showing from -3°C to $+3^{\circ}\text{C}$.
3. Release the  knob when the right adjustment amount is shown.
 - The adjustment is complete.

■ Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining fuel. This distance is estimated from the fuel economy of your previous trips.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

» Outside Temperature

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. Road heat and exhaust from another vehicle can affect the temperature reading when your vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h.

It may take several minutes for the display to be updated after the temperature reading has stabilized.

Multi-Information Display*

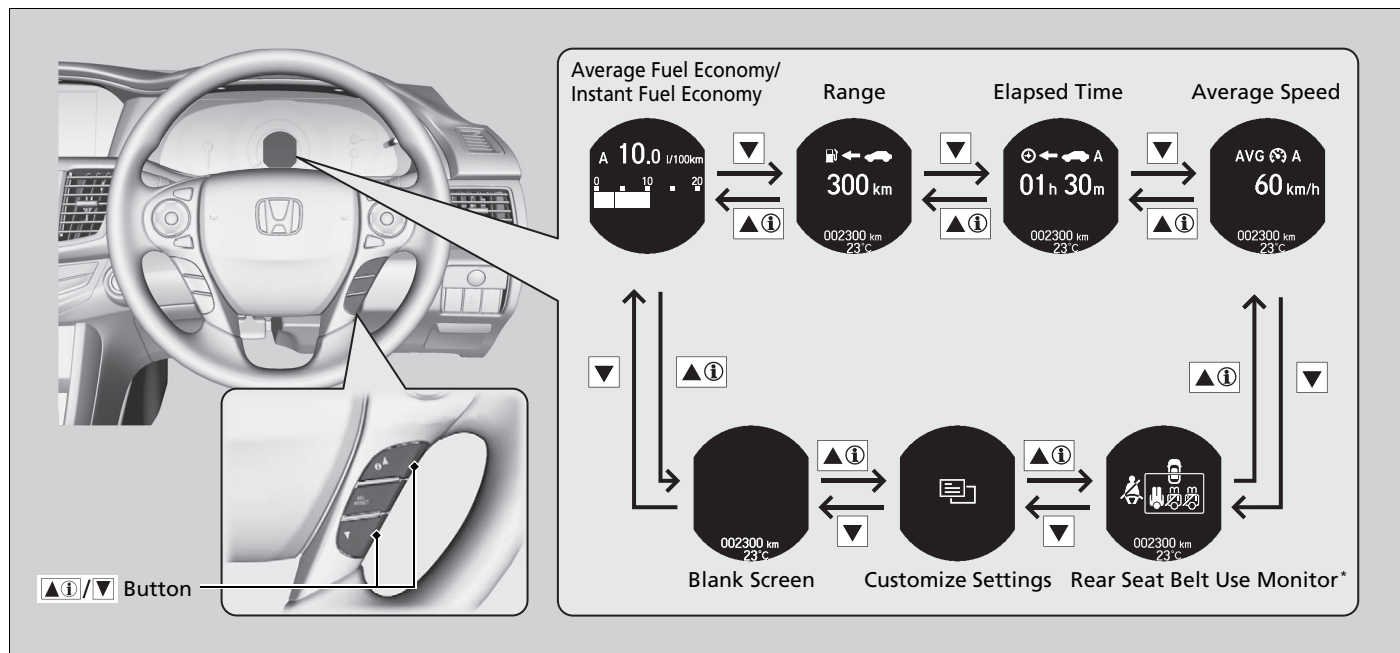
The multi-information display shows the odometer, trip meter, outside temperature indicator, and other gauges.

It also displays important messages such as warnings and other helpful information.

Switching the Display

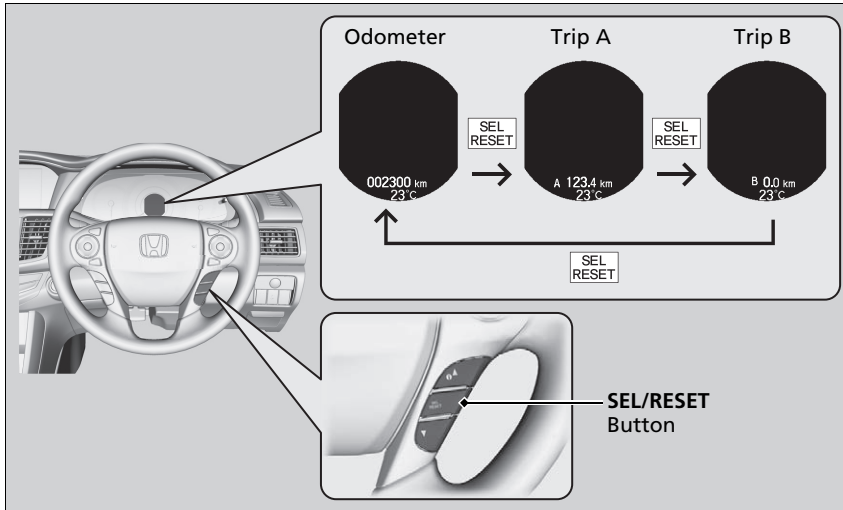
Main displays

Press the (information) button to change the display.



■ Lower displays

Press the **SEL/RESET** button to change the display.



■ Odometer

Shows the total number of kilometres that your vehicle has accumulated.

■ Trip Meter

Shows the total number of kilometres driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

■ Resetting a trip meter

To reset a trip meter, display it, then press and hold the **SEL/RESET** button. The trip meter is reset to **0.0**.

■ Average Fuel Economy

Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in l/100 km or km/l. The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

■ Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining fuel. This distance is estimated from the fuel economy of your previous trips.

■ Elapsed Time

Shows the time elapsed since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

» Trip Meter

Switch between trip meter A and trip meter B by pressing the **SEL/RESET** button.

» Average Fuel Economy

You can change when to reset the average fuel economy.

► **Customized Features** P. 118

» Elapsed Time

You can change when to reset the elapsed time.

► **Customized Features** P. 118

■ Average Speed


Shows the average speed in km/h since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

■ Instant Fuel Economy

Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in l/100 km or km/l.

■ Outside Temperature

Shows the outside temperature in Celsius.

If the outside temperature has been below 3°C at the time you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1}, the outside temperature indicator blinks for 10 seconds.

■ Adjusting the outside temperature display

Adjust the temperature reading up to ±3°C if the temperature reading seems incorrect.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

⌘ Average Speed

You can change when to reset the average speed.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 118

⌘ Outside Temperature

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. Road heat and exhaust from another vehicle can affect the temperature reading when your vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h.

It may take several minutes for the display to be updated after the temperature reading has stabilized.




Use the multi-information display's customized features to correct the temperature.

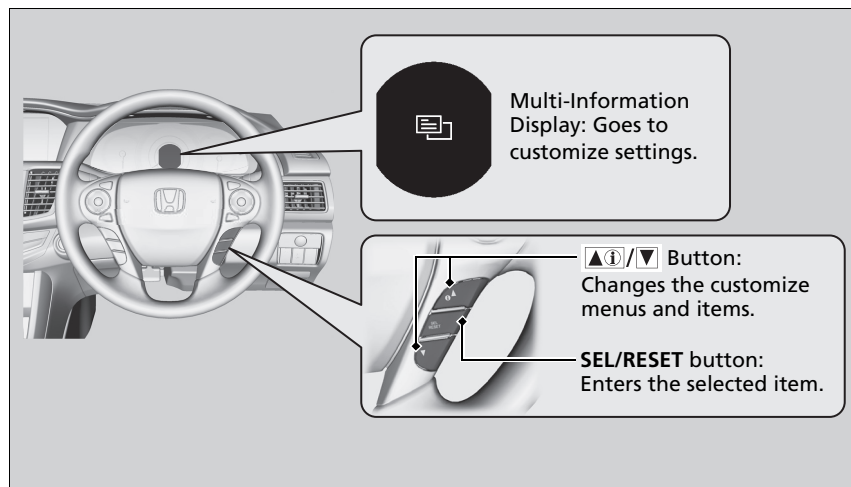
➤ **Customized Features** P. 118

■ Customized Features

Use the multi-information display to customize certain features.


■ How to customize

Select the  (customize settings) screen by pressing the  button while the ignition switch is in ON ^{*1}, and the vehicle is at a complete stop. Press the **SEL/RESET** button.



*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

▶ Customized Features

To customize other features, press the  button.

- ▶ **List of customizable options** P. 121
- ▶ **Example of customization settings** P. 125

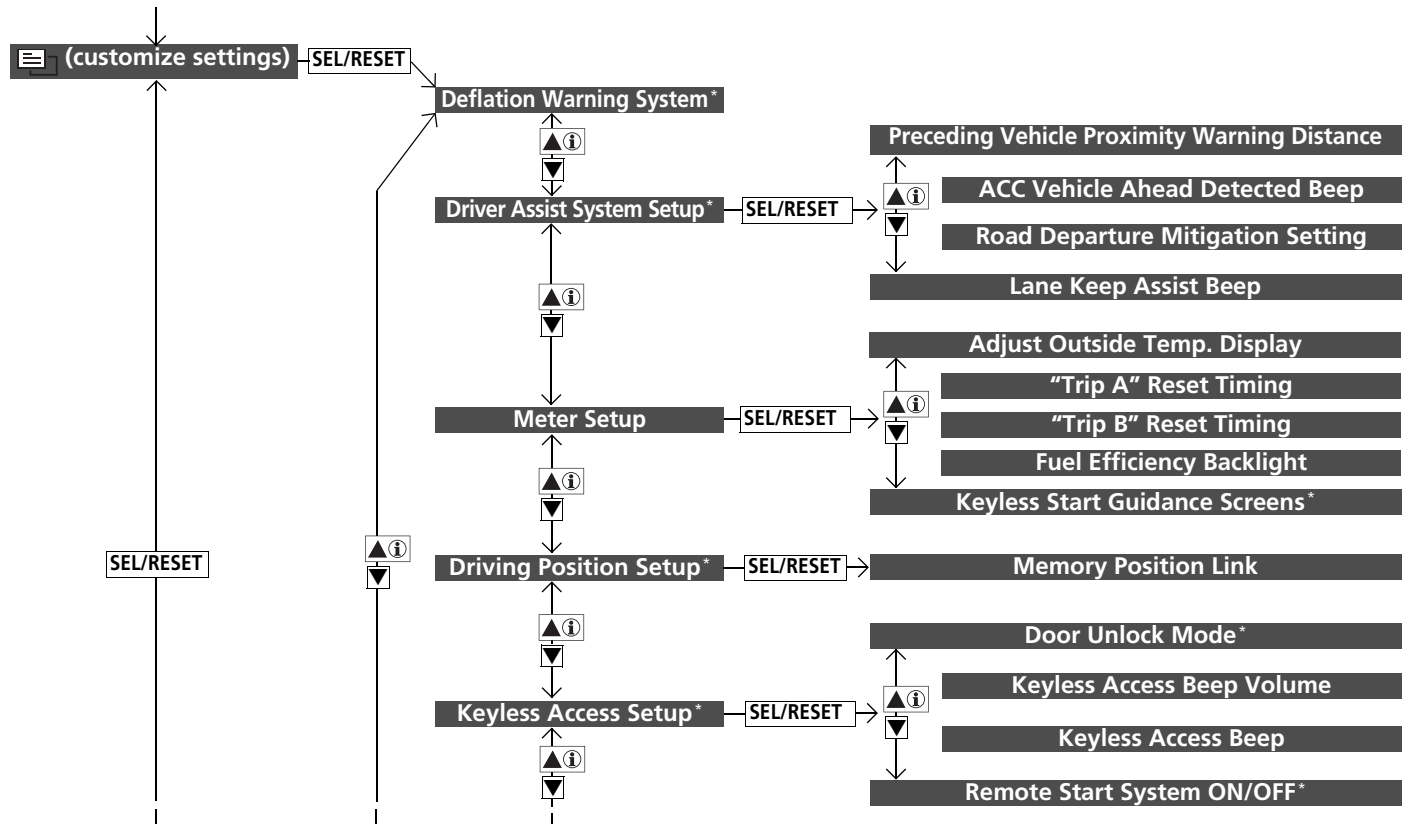
Models with driving position memory system

Customization is possible when you see the driver's ID (**Driver 1** or **Driver 2**) on the screen. The driver's ID indicates which remote transmitter you have used to unlock the driver's door. The customized settings are recalled every time you unlock the driver's door with that remote.

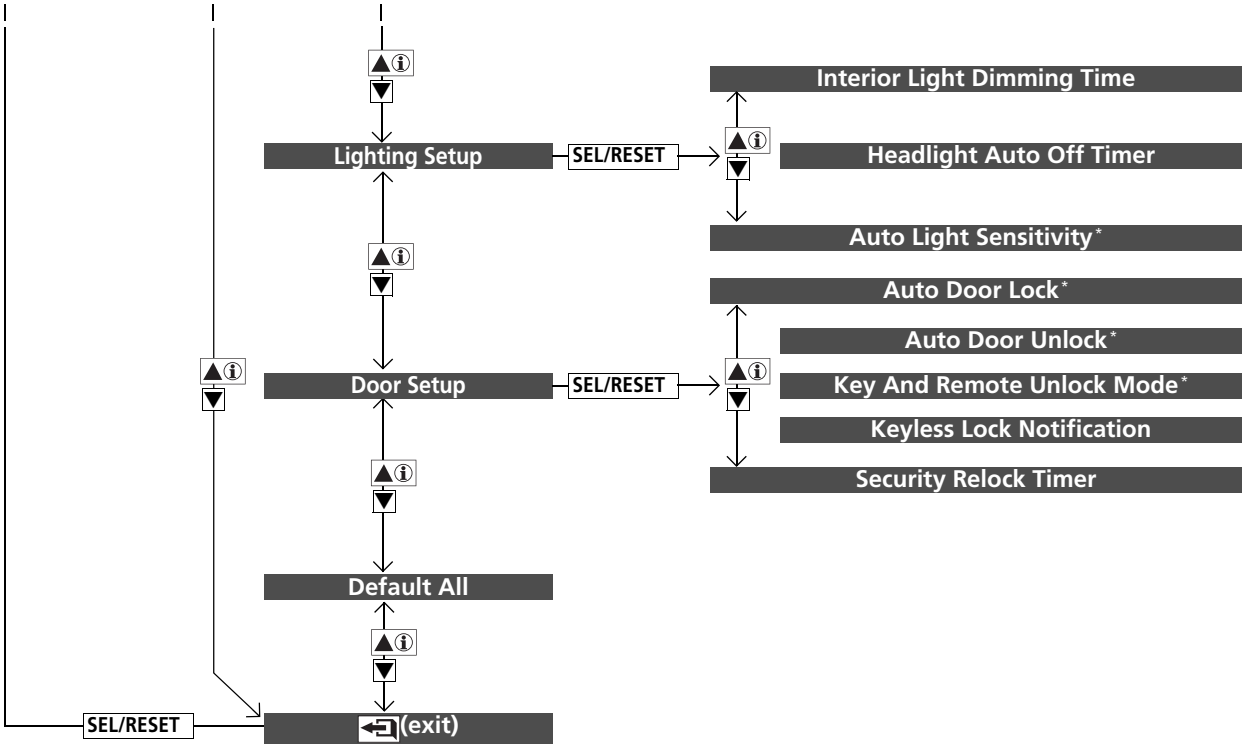
When you customize settings: Shift to **P**

■ Customization flow

Press the /▼ button.



* Not available on all models



■ List of customizable options

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Deflation Warning System*	—	Initialises the deflation warning system.	Cancel/Initialise
	Preceding Vehicle Proximity Warning Distance	Changes at which distance the CMBS alerts.	Far/Normal*¹/Near
	ACC Vehicle Ahead Detected Beep	Causes the system to beep when a vehicle ahead of you gets too close.	On*¹/Off
	Road Departure Mitigation Setting	Changes the setting for the road departure mitigation system.	Normal*¹/Delayed/Warning Only
	Lane Keep Assist Beep	Causes the system to beep when the LKAS is suspended.	On/Off*¹

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Meter Setup	Adjust Outside Temp. Display	Adjusts the temperature reading by a few degrees.	-3°C ~ ±0°C*¹ ~ +3°C
	"Trip A" Reset Timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter A, average fuel economy A, average speed A, and elapsed time A.	When Refueled/When Ignition Is Turned Off/Manual Reset*¹
	"Trip B" Reset Timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter B, average fuel economy B, average speed B, and elapsed time B.	When Refueled/When Ignition Is Turned Off/Manual Reset*¹
	Fuel Efficiency Backlight	Turns the ambient meter feature on and off.	On*¹/Off
	Keyless Start Guidance Screens*	Displays the push button start guidance when conditions are met to change power mode.	On*¹/Off

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Driving Position Setup*	Memory Position Link	Turns the driving position memory system on and off.	On^{*1}/Off
Keyless Access Setup*	Door Unlock Mode*	Changes which doors unlock when you grab the driver's door handle.	Driver Door Only^{*1}/All Doors
	Keyless Access Beep Volume	Changes the beep tone that sounds when you have a keyless remote and grab a front door handle.	High^{*1}/Low
	Keyless Access Beep	Causes the beeper to sound when you unlock/lock the doors.	On^{*1}/Off
	Remote Start System ON/OFF*	Turns the remote start system on and off.	ON^{*1}/OFF
Lighting Setup	Interior Light Dimming Time	Changes the length of time the interior lights stay on after you close the doors.	60sec/30sec^{*1}/15sec
	Headlight Auto Off Timer	Changes the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door.	60sec/30sec/15sec^{*1}/0sec
	Auto Light Sensitivity*	Changes the timing for the headlights to come on.	Max/High/Mid^{*1}/Low/Min

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

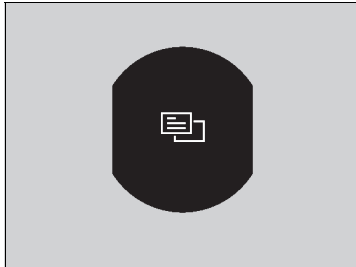
Continued

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Door Setup	Auto Door Lock*	Changes the setting for when the doors automatically lock.	With Vehicle Speed* ¹ /Shift From P/Off
	Auto Door Unlock*	Changes the setting for when the doors automatically unlock.	Except African right-hand drive models Shift To P* ¹ /IGN Off/Off
			African right-hand drive models Driver Door With Shift To P* ¹ /All Doors With Shift To P/ Driver Door With IGN Off/All Doors With IGN Off/Off
	Key And Remote Unlock Mode*	Sets up either the driver's door or all doors to unlock on the first operation of the remote or built-in key.	Driver Door Only* ¹ /All Doors
	Keyless Lock Notification	LOCK/UNLOCK - The exterior lights flash.	On* ¹ /Off
	Security Relock Timer	Changes the time it takes for the doors to relock and the security system to set after you unlock the vehicle without opening any door.	90sec/60sec/30sec* ¹
Default All	—	Cancels/Resets all the customized settings as default.	Cancel/Ok

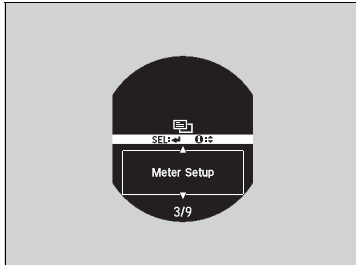
*1:Default Setting

■ Example of customization settings

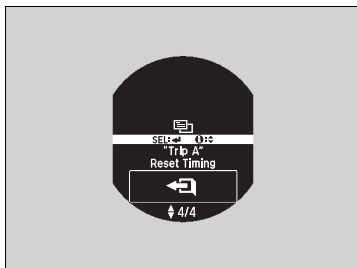
The steps for changing the **"Trip A" Reset Timing** setting to **When Refueled** are shown below. The default setting for **"Trip A" Reset Timing** is **Manual Reset**.



1. Press the button to select until (customize settings) appears on the display, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.



2. Press the button until **Meter Setup** appears on the display.
3. Press the **SEL/RESET** button.
 - ▶ **Adjust Outside Temp. Display** appears first in the display.



4. Press the /▼ button until **"Trip A"** **Reset Timing** appears on the display, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.

► The display switches to the customization setup screen, where you can select **When Refueled**, **When Ignition Is Turned Off**, **Manual Reset**, or (Exit).

5. Press the /▼ button and select **When Refueled**, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.

► The **When Refueled** setup screen appears, then the display returns to the customization menu screen.

6. Press the /▼ button until (Exit) appears on the display, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.

7. Repeat Step 6 until you return to the normal screen.

Controls

This chapter explains how to operate the various controls necessary for driving.

Clock	128
Locking and Unlocking the Doors	
Key Types and Functions	130
Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength*	133
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside	134
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside	139
Childproof Door Locks	141
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking*	142
Opening and Closing the Boot	147
Security System	
Immobilizer System	150
Security System Alarm	150
Ultrasonic Sensors*	152
Opening and Closing the Windows	153

Opening and Closing the Sunroof*	156
Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel	
Ignition Switch*	157
ENGINE START/STOP Button*	158
Ignition Switch and Power Mode Comparison	161
Turn Signals	162
Light Switches	163
Front and Rear Fog Lights*	166
Headlight Adjuster*	168
Auto High-Beam*	169
Daytime Running Lights	172
Active Cornering Lights*	173
Wipers and Washers	174
Brightness Control	176

Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror* Button	177
Driving Position Memory System*	178
Adjusting the Steering Wheel	180
Adjusting the Mirrors	
Interior Rearview Mirror	181
Power Door Mirrors	183
Adjusting the Seats	
Front Seats	184
Interior Lights/Interior Convenience Items	193
Heating and Cooling System*	
Using Vents, Heating and A/C	205
Climate Control System*	
Using Automatic Climate Control	208
Automatic Climate Control Sensors	211

* Not available on all models

Adjusting the Clock

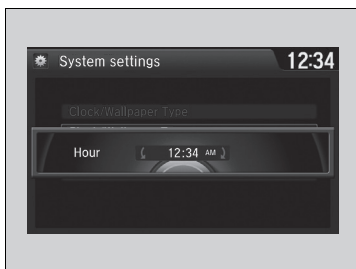
Models without navigation system







You can adjust the time in the clock display with the ignition switch in ON *1.

Adjusting the Time

Models with one display

■ Using the Settings menu on the audio/information screen



1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate  to select **System Settings**, then press .
▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Clock**, then **Clock Adjustment**.
3. Rotate  to change hour, then press .
4. Rotate  to change minute, then press .

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

» Adjusting the Clock

Models with one display

These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.

Rotate  to select.

Press  to enter.

You can customize the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock.

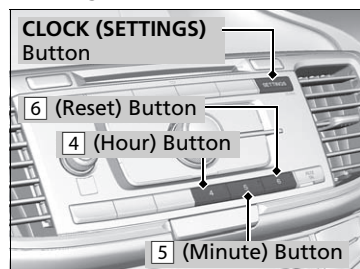
➤ **Customized Features** P. 308

You can turn the clock display on and off.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 308

Models with one display

■ Using the SETTINGS button



1. Press and hold the **CLOCK (SETTINGS)** button until the clock display blinks.
2. Press Preset **4** (Hour) or **5** (Minute) to adjust the time.
3. Press the **CLOCK** button again to set the time.

Models with display audio system

■ Using the Settings menu on the audio/information touch screen



1. Select the **HOME** icon, then select **Settings**.
2. Select **Clock/Info**, then **Clock Adjustment**.
3. Adjust the hours and minutes by selecting **▲/▼**.
4. Select **OK** to set the time.

▶▶ Using the SETTINGS button

To set the time to the nearest hour: Press and hold the **CLOCK** button until the clock display blinks, then press the **6** (Reset) button.

Depending on the displayed time, the clock sets forward or backward.

Example:

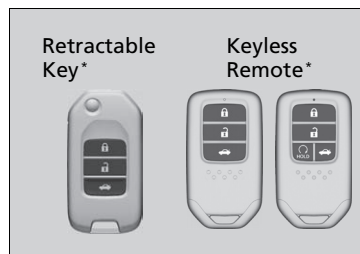
1:06 will reset to 1:00

1:53 will reset to 2:00

Key Types and Functions

This vehicle comes with the following keys:

Master Keys



Use the key to start and stop the engine, to lock and unlock the doors and to open the boot. You can also use the remote transmitter or keyless access system* to lock and unlock the doors and to open the boot.

Key Types and Functions

All the keys have an immobilizer system. The immobilizer system helps to protect against vehicle theft.

Immobilizer System P. 150

The keys contain precision electronics. Adhere to the following advice to prevent damage to the electronics:

- Do not leave the keys in direct sunlight, or in locations with high temperature or high humidity.
- Do not drop the keys or set heavy objects on them.
- Keep the keys away from liquids.
- Do not take the keys apart except for replacing the battery.

If the circuits in the keys are damaged, the engine may not start, and the remote transmitter may not work.

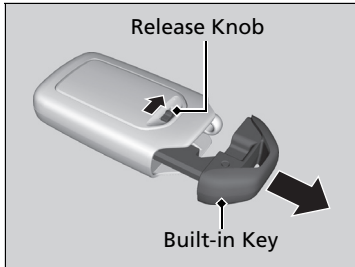
If the keys do not work properly, have them inspected by a dealer.

Models with button on the keyless remote

You can remotely start the engine using the keyless remote.

Remote Engine Start* P. 378

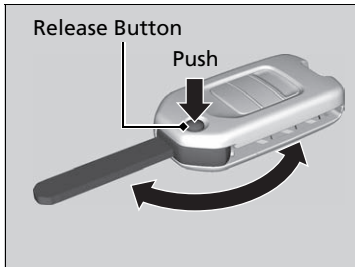
■ Keyless remote*



The built-in key can be used to lock/unlock the doors when the keyless remote battery becomes weak and the power door lock/unlock operation is disabled.

To remove the built-in key, pull it out while sliding the release knob. To reinstall the built-in key, push the built-in key into the keyless remote until it clicks.

■ Retractable keys*



The key folds up inside the remote transmitter.

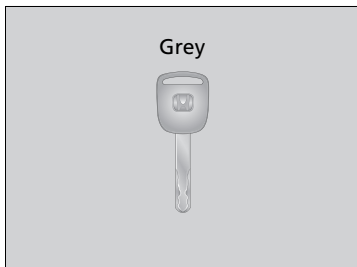
1. Press the release button to release the key out from the transmitter.
► Make sure to fully extend the key.
2. To close the key, press the release button then push the key inside the transmitter until you hear a click.

▣ Retractable keys*

If the key is not fully extended, the immobilizer system may not work properly, and the engine may not start. Avoid contact with the key whenever it extends or retracts.

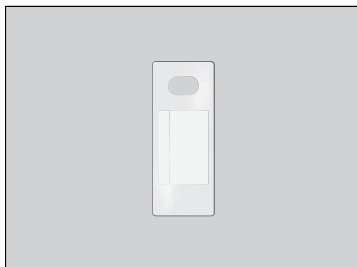
* Not available on all models

■ Valet Key*



Can be used to start and stop the engine, and lock and unlock driver's door.

■ Key Number Tag



Contains a number that you will need if you purchase a replacement key.

▣ Valet Key*

When you need to leave a key with a third party, leave the valet key.

▣ Key Number Tag

Keep the key number tag separate from the key in a safe place outside of your vehicle.
If you wish to purchase an additional key, contact a dealer.

If you lose your key and you cannot start the engine, contact a dealer.

Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength*

The vehicle transmits radio waves to locate the keyless remote when locking/unlocking the doors, opening the boot, or to start the engine.

In the following cases, locking/unlocking the doors, opening the boot, or starting the engine may be inhibited or operation may be unstable:

- Strong radio waves are being transmitted by nearby equipment.
- You are carrying the keyless remote together with telecommunications equipment, laptop computers, mobile phones, or wireless devices.
- A metallic object is touching or covering the keyless remote.

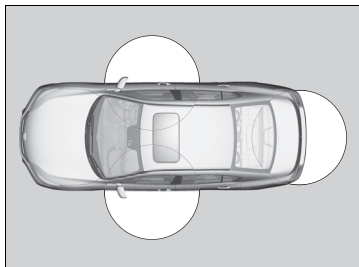
Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength*

Communication between the keyless remote and the vehicle consumes the keyless remote's battery. The keyless remote battery lasts about two years. This changes by how often you use the remote. The battery is consumed whenever the keyless remote is receiving strong radio waves. Avoid placing it near electrical appliances such as televisions and personal computers.

* Not available on all models

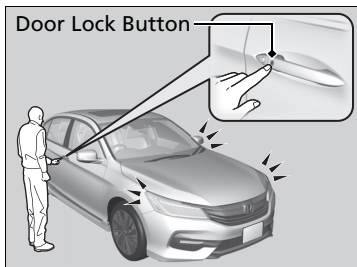
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

■ Using the Keyless Access System *



When you carry the keyless remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and open the boot. You can lock/unlock the doors within a radius of about 80 cm of the outside door handle. You can open the boot within about 80 cm radius from the boot release button.

■ Locking the doors and the boot



Press the door lock button on the front door.

- Some exterior lights flash three times; the beeper sounds; all the doors and boot lock; and the security system sets.

►► Using the Keyless Access System *

- Do not leave the keyless remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can unlock the boot while someone else with the remote is within range.
- The door may be unlocked if the door handle is covered with water in heavy rain or in a car wash if the keyless remote is within range.
- If you grip a front door handle wearing gloves, the door sensor may be slow to respond or may not respond by unlocking the doors.
- You cannot unlock the door by gripping the handle after two seconds of locking it.
- The door may not open if you pull it immediately after gripping the door handle. Grip the handle again and confirm that the door is unlocked before pulling the handle.
- Even within the 80 cm radius, you may not be able to lock/unlock the doors with the keyless remote if it is above or below the outside handle.
- The keyless remote may not operate if it is too close to the door and door glass.

If the distance at which it works varies, the battery is probably low.

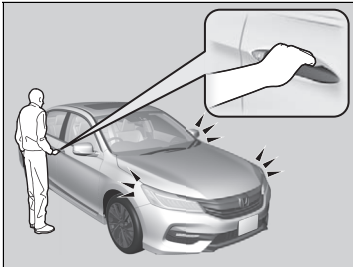
If the LED does not come on when you press a button, the battery is dead.

►► **Replacing the Button Battery** P. 492

You can customize the door lock mode and keyless lock acknowledgement setting.

►► **Customized Features** P. 308

■ Unlocking the doors and the boot



Grab the front door handle:

- All the doors and boot unlock.
- Some exterior lights flash once and the beeper sounds.

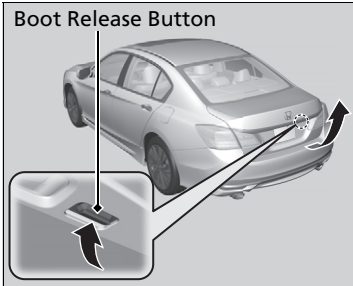
African models

Grab the driver's door handle:

- The driver's door unlocks.
- Some exterior lights flash once and a beeper sounds.

Grab the front passenger's door handle:

- All the doors and boot unlock.
- Some exterior lights flash once and the beeper sounds.



Press the boot release button:

- The boot unlocks and opens.
- **Using the Boot Release Button*** P. 148

►► Using the Keyless Access System*

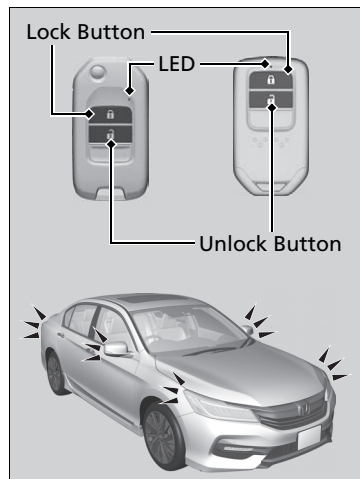
If you do not open a door within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle, the doors will automatically relock.

The light flash, beep and unlock settings can be customized.

► **Customized Features** P. 308

* Not available on all models

■ Using the Remote Transmitter



■ Locking the doors

Press the lock button.

- Some exterior lights flash three times, all the doors lock, and the security system sets.

►► Using the Remote Transmitter

If you do not open a door within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the remote transmitter, the doors will automatically relock.

You can change the relock timer setting.

► **Customized Features** P. 308

If the interior light switch is in the door activated position, the interior lights come on when you press the unlock button.

No doors opened: The lights fade out after 30 seconds.

Doors relocked with the remote: The lights go off immediately.

► **Interior Lights** P. 193

■ Unlocking the doors

Press the unlock button.

- ▶ Some exterior lights flash once, and all doors unlock.

African models

Once:

- ▶ Some exterior lights flash once, and the driver's doors unlock.

Twice:

- ▶ The remaining doors unlock.

» Using the Remote Transmitter

The remote transmitter uses low-power signals, so the operating range may vary depending on the surroundings.

Models without keyless access system

The remote transmitter will not work when the key is in the ignition switch.

Models with keyless access system

You can lock or unlock doors using the remote transmitter or keyless access system only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

All models

The remote will not lock the vehicle when a door is open.

If the distance at which it works varies, the battery is probably low.

If the LED does not come on when you press a button, the battery is dead.

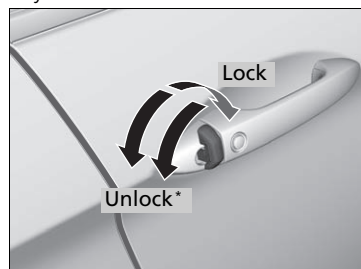
➤ **Replacing the Button Battery** P. 492

You can customize the door unlock mode setting.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 308

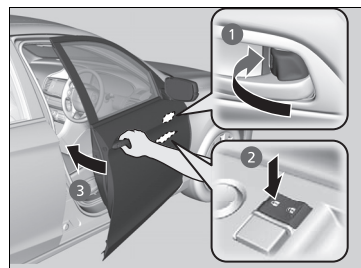
■ Locking/Unlocking * the Doors Using a Key

If the keyless remote battery or the vehicle battery is dead, use the key instead of the keyless remote.



Fully insert the key and turn it.

■ Locking a Door Without Using a Key



■ Locking the driver's door

Push the lock tab forward ① or push the master door lock switch in the lock direction ②, then pull and hold the outside door handle ③. Close the door, then release the handle.

■ Locking the passenger's doors

Push the lock tab forward and close the door.

■ Lockout prevention system

The doors cannot be locked when the key is in the ignition switch*¹, or the keyless remote is inside the vehicle.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

► Locking/Unlocking * the Doors Using a Key

When you lock the driver's door with the key, all the other doors lock at the same time.

African left-hand drive models

When unlocking, the driver's door unlocks first. Turn the key a second time within a few seconds to unlock the remaining doors.

Except African left-hand drive models

Unlocking the doors with the key causes the security system to alarm. Always unlock the doors with the remote transmitter.

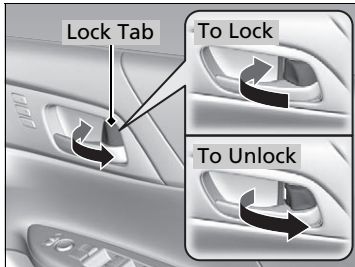
► Locking a Door Without Using a Key

When you lock the driver's door, all the other doors lock at the same time.

Make sure you have the key in your hand before locking the door to prevent it from being locked in the vehicle.

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside

■ Using the Lock Tab



■ Locking a door

Push the lock tab forward.

■ Unlocking a door

Pull the lock tab rearward.

» Using the Lock Tab

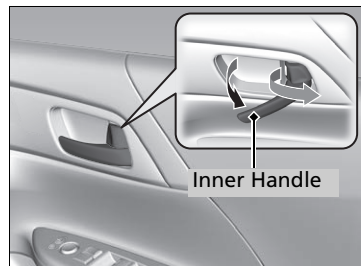
When you lock/unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, all the other doors lock/unlock at the same time.

African models

When you lock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, all the other doors lock at the same time.

When you unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, only the driver's door will unlock.

■ Unlocking Using the Front Door Inner Handle



Pull the front door inner handle.

African left-hand drive models

- The door unlocks and opens in one motion.

Except African left-hand drive models

- The door unlocks and opens in one motion only on driver's door.

Unlocking and opening the driver's door from the inner handle unlocks all the other doors.

African models

To avoid all the doors to be unlocked, use the lock tab on the driver's door to unlock, then lock again before opening the door.

- This setting works for one time only. If you do not want all the doors to be unlocked all the time, customize the **Auto Door Unlock** setting to **Off** using the multi-information display* or audio/information (touch) screen.

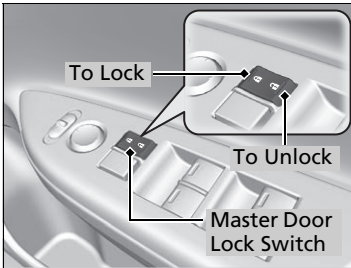
►► Unlocking Using the Front Door Inner Handle

The front door inner handles are designed to allow front seat occupants to open the door in one motion. However, this feature requires that front seat occupants never pull a front door inner handle while the vehicle is in motion.

Children should always ride in a rear seat where childproof door locks are provided.

🔒 **Childproof Door Locks** P. 141

■ Using the Master Door Lock Switch

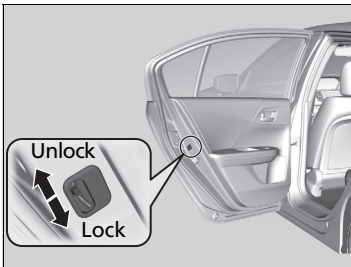


Press the master door lock switch in as shown to lock or unlock all doors.

Childproof Door Locks

The childproof door locks prevent the rear doors from being opened from the inside regardless of the position of the lock tab.

■ Setting the Childproof Door Locks



Slide the lever in the rear door to the lock position, and close the door.

■ When opening the door

Open the door using the outside door handle.

► Using the Master Door Lock Switch

When you lock/unlock the driver's door using the master lock switch, all the other doors lock/unlock at the same time.

African left-hand drive models

The front passenger's door also has the master door lock switch.

► Childproof Door Locks

To open the door from the inside when the childproof door lock is on, put the lock tab in the unlock position, lower the rear window, put your hand out of the window, and pull the outside door handle.

Auto Door Locking/Unlocking*

Your vehicle locks and unlocks all doors or the driver's door automatically when a certain condition is met.

■ Auto Door Locking

■ Drive lock mode

All doors lock when the vehicle's speed reaches about 15 km/h.

■ Auto Door Unlocking

■ Park unlock mode

Except African models

All doors unlock when the shift lever is moved to **P** with the brake pedal depressed.

African models

The driver's door unlocks when the shift lever is moved to **P** with the brake pedal depressed. The settings can be changed to unlock all doors.

⌘ Auto Door Locking/Unlocking*

You can turn off or change to another auto door locking/unlocking setting using the master door lock switch.

⌘ Customizing the Auto Door Locking/Unlocking Setting* P. 143

You can turn off or change to another auto door locking/unlocking setting using the audio/information (touch) screen or multi-information display*.

⌘ Customized Features P. 118, 308

Customizing the Auto Door Locking/Unlocking Setting*

You can customize the auto door locking/unlocking setting to your liking using the master door lock switch.

List of the Auto Door Locking/Unlocking Customizable Options

■ Auto door locking

Mode	Description
Drive Lock Mode	All doors lock when the vehicle’s speed reaches about 15 km/h*1.
Park Lock Mode	All doors lock when the shift lever is moved out of P .
Off	The auto door locking is deactivated all the time.

■ Auto door unlocking

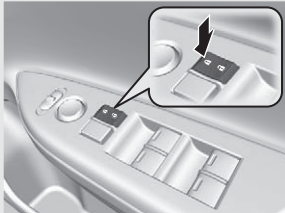
Mode	Description
Park Unlock Mode	African models Driver’s door unlocks*1/All doors unlock when the shift lever is moved into P .
	Except African models All doors unlock*1 when the shift lever is moved into P .
Ignition Switch Unlock Mode	African models Driver’s door unlocks/All doors unlock when the ignition switch is moved out of ON II *2.
	Except African models All doors unlock when the ignition switch is moved out of ON II *2.
Off	The auto door unlocking is deactivated all the time.

*1:Default setting

*2:Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

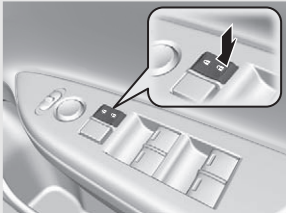
■ Customizing Flow for Auto Door Locking Options

Steps	Drive Lock Mode	Park Lock Mode	Off
1.	Apply the parking brake. Make sure the shift lever is in P .		
2.	Turn the ignition switch to ON II *1.		
3.	The driver's door must be closed at this stage.	Open the driver's door.	
4.	Move the shift lever out of P with the brake pedal depressed.	—	
5.	Press and hold the front of the master door lock switch on the driver's door. You will hear a click when more than five seconds elapse. Release the switch. <div></div>		
6.	Move the shift lever to P .	—	
7.	Turn the ignition switch to LOCK 0 *1 within 20 seconds.		

*1:Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

■ Customizing Flow for Auto Door Unlocking Options

Steps	Ignition Switch Unlock Mode		Park Unlock Mode		Off
	To unlock driver's door*1	To unlock all doors	To unlock driver's door*1	To unlock all doors	
1.	Apply the parking brake. Make sure the shift lever is in P .				
2.	Turn the ignition switch to ON II *2.				
3.	The driver's door must be closed at this stage.				Open the driver's door.
4.	Move the shift lever out of P with the brake pedal depressed.		—		
5.	Press and hold the rear of the master door lock switch on the driver's door. You will hear a click when more than five seconds elapse.				



*1:African models only

*2:Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Steps	Ignition Switch Unlock Mode		Park Unlock Mode		Off
	To unlock driver's door*1	To unlock all doors	To unlock driver's door*1	To unlock all doors	
6.	Release the switch.	<div>Except African models</div> Release the switch. <div>African models</div> Keep pressing the switch for another five seconds to hear one more click.	Release the switch.	<div>Except African models</div> Release the switch. <div>African models</div> Keep pressing the switch for another five seconds to hear one more click.	Release the switch.
7.	Move the shift lever to P .		—		
8.	Turn the ignition switch to LOCK 0 *2 within 20 seconds. ▶ Customization is completed.				

*1:African models only

*2:Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Precautions for Opening/Closing the Boot

■ Opening the boot

Open the boot all the way.

- ▶ If it is not fully opened, the boot lid may begin to close under its own weight.

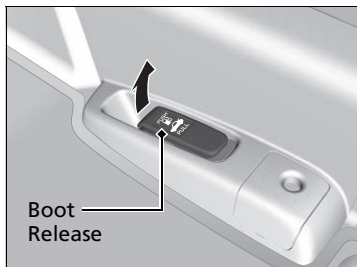
■ Closing the boot

Keep the boot lid closed while driving to:

- ▶ Avoid possible damage.
- ▶ Prevent exhaust gas from leaking into the vehicle.

⚠ **Exhaust Gas Hazard** P. 76

Using the Boot Opener



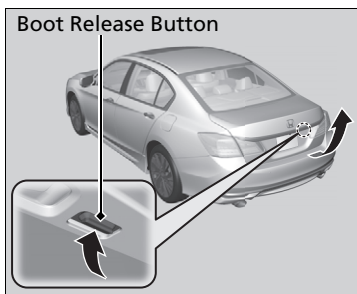
Pulling the boot release on the outside of the driver's seat unlocks and opens the boot.



■ Locking the boot opener*

You can lock the boot release with the master key* or the built-in key*.

Using the Boot Release Button *



Push up the release button on the boot lid after the doors are unlocked.

Even if the boot is locked, you can open the boot if you carry the keyless remote.

► The beeper sounds.

►► Locking the boot opener*

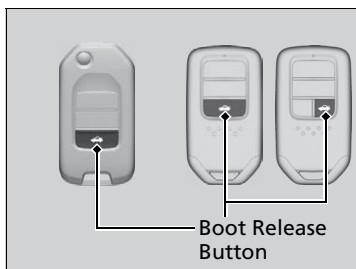
Models without keyless access system

If you need to give the key to someone else, give them the valet key.

►► Using the Boot Release Button *

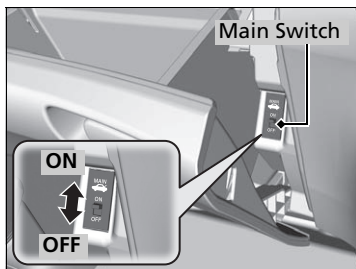
- Do not leave the keyless remote inside the boot and close the lid. The beeper sounds and the boot cannot be closed.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can unlock the boot while someone else with the remote is within range.
- Do not carry the keyless remote near the boot lid when closing it.
- Do not place the keyless remote around the rear seat when closing the boot.

Using the Remote Transmitter



Press the boot release button for approximately one second to unlock and open the boot.

Boot Main Switch *



The boot main switch disables the boot release button on the remote transmitter and the boot release button on the boot lid to protect luggage in the boot.

1. Make sure the rear seat-back is not folded down.
2. Turn off the boot main switch in the glove box.
3. Lock the glove box.
4. Lock the boot release.

✎ **Using the Boot Opener** P. 147

✎ Boot Main Switch *

If you need to give the key to someone else, remove the built-in key from the keyless remote by sliding the release knob, and give the remote as a valet key.

* Not available on all models

Immobilizer System

The immobilizer system prevents a key that has not been pre-registered from starting the engine. Each key contains electronic transmitters that use electronic signals to verify the key.

Pay attention to the following when inserting the key into the ignition switch or pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button:

- Do not allow objects that emit strong radio waves near the ignition switch or the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.
- Make sure the key is not covered by or touching a metal object.
- Do not bring a key from another vehicle's immobilizer system near the ignition switch.

Security System Alarm

The security system alarm activates when the doors, boot, or bonnet are opened without the key*, the remote transmitter, or keyless access system.

■ When the security system alarm activates

The horn sounds intermittently and the turn signal lights flash.

■ To deactivate the security system alarm

Unlock the vehicle using the remote transmitter or keyless access system. The system, along with the horn and flashing lights, is deactivated.

African left-hand drive models

Unlock the vehicle using the key, remote transmitter or keyless access system. The system, along with the horn and flashing lights, is deactivated.

» Immobilizer System

NOTICE

Leaving the ignition key in the vehicle can result in theft or accidental movement of the vehicle. Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle unattended.

If the system repeatedly does not recognize the coding of your key, contact your dealer. If you have lost your key and cannot start your engine, contact a dealer.

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.


» Security System Alarm

The security alarm will continue for approximately five minutes before the security system deactivates. The system will go through ten 30-second cycles, during which the horn will sound and some exterior lights will flash.

Depending on circumstances, the security system may continue operating for more than five minutes.

■ Setting the security system alarm

The security system alarm automatically sets when the following conditions have been met:

- The ignition switch is in LOCK *1.
- The bonnet and boot are closed.
- All doors are locked from outside with the key, the remote transmitter, or keyless access system.


Models without keyless access system

- The key has been removed from the ignition switch.


■ When the security system alarm sets

The security system indicator in the instrument panel blinks. When the blinking interval changes after about 15 seconds, the security system is set.

■ To cancel the security system alarm

The security system alarm is cancelled when the vehicle is unlocked using the remote transmitter, keyless access system or the ignition switch is turned to ON *1. The security system indicator goes off at the same time.

African left-hand drive models

The security system alarm is cancelled when the vehicle is unlocked using the key, remote transmitter, keyless access system or the ignition switch is turned to ON *1. The security system indicator goes off at the same time.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

» Security System Alarm

Do not set the security system alarm when someone is in the vehicle or a window is open. The system can accidentally activate when:

- Unlocking the door with the lock tab.
- Opening the boot with the boot release.

If the battery goes dead after you have set the security system alarm, the security alarm may go off once the battery is recharged or replaced.

If this occurs, deactivate the security system alarm by unlocking a door using the remote transmitter or keyless access system.

Do not attempt to alter this system or add another device to it.

Except African left-hand drive models

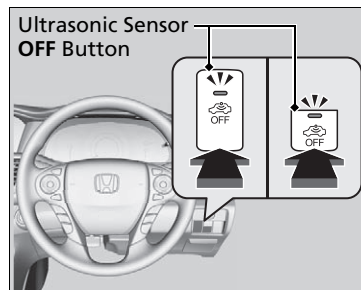
Do not unlock the door using the key. The security system alarm goes off.

Ultrasonic Sensors*

The ultrasonic sensors activate only when the security system alarm sets. The sensors detect if someone intrudes into the passenger compartment through a window or moves in the compartment, and activate the alarm.

■ To set the security system alarm without activating the ultrasonic sensors

You can set the security system without activating the ultrasonic sensor.



To turn off the ultrasonic sensor system, press the ultrasonic sensor **OFF** button after you set the power mode to ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

To turn it on again, press the ultrasonic sensor **OFF** button.

Ultrasonic sensors is turned on every time you set the security system alarm, even if you turned it off the last time.

►► Ultrasonic Sensors*

Do not set the security system alarm while someone is in the vehicle, or if a window is open. The system may accidentally activate when the ultrasonic sensor detects vibrations or loud sounds.

Whether the ultrasonic sensor is activated, the security system can only be turned off by the remote transmitter, not the key.

Do not unlock the door using the key. The security system alarm goes off.

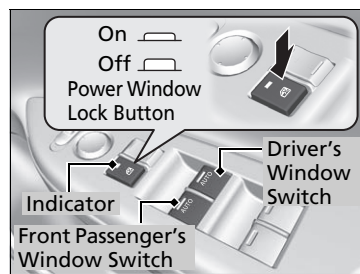
Opening/Closing the Power Windows

The power windows can be opened and closed when the ignition switch is in ON **II***1, using the switches on the doors. The driver's side switches can be used to open and close all the windows.

The power window lock button on the driver's side must be switched off (not pushed in, indicator off) to open and close the windows from anywhere other than the driver's seat.

When the power window lock button is pushed in, the indicator comes on and you can only operate the driver's window. Turn the power window lock button on if a child is in the vehicle.

Opening/Closing Windows with Auto-Open/Close Function



Automatic operation

To open: Push the switch down firmly.

To close: Pull the switch up firmly.

The window opens or closes completely. To stop the window at any time, push or pull the switch briefly.

Manual operation

To open: Push the switch down lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

To close: Pull the switch up lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Opening/Closing the Power Windows

⚠ WARNING

Closing a power window on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure your passengers are away from the windows before closing them.

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone (with other occupants).

Australian and New Zealand models

The power windows can be operated for up to 45 seconds after you turn the ignition switch to LOCK **0***1. Opening either front door cancels this function.

Except Australian and New Zealand models

The power windows can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you turn the ignition switch to LOCK **0***1. Opening either front door cancels this function.

Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine 6-cylinder, and African and Singaporean models

Closing the driver's door cancels this function.

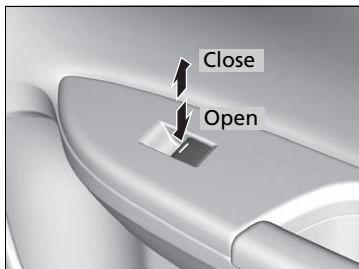
Auto Reverse

If a power window senses resistance when closing automatically, it stops closing and reverse direction.

The driver's window auto reverse function is disabled when you continuously pull up the switch.

The auto reverse function stops sensing when the window is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.

■ Opening/Closing Windows without Auto-Open/Close Function *

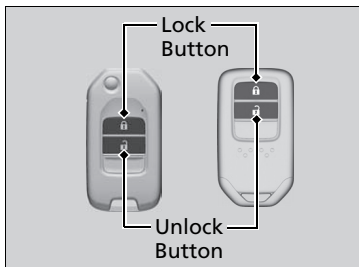


To open: Push the switch down.

To close: Pull the switch up.

Release the switch when the window reaches the desired position.

■ Opening/Closing Windows and Sunroof* with the Remote

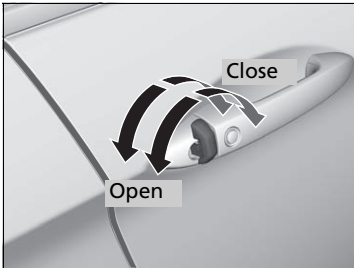


To open: Press the unlock button twice within 10 seconds and hold it down for the second time.

To close*: Press the lock button twice within 10 seconds and hold it down for the second time.

If the windows stop midway, repeat the procedure.

■ Opening/Closing the Windows and Sunroof with the Key



To open*: Unlock the driver's door with the key. Within 10 seconds of returning the key to the central position, turn the key in the unlock direction and hold it there.

To close: Lock the driver's door with the key. Within 10 seconds of returning the key to the central position, turn the key in the lock direction and hold it there.

Release the key to stop the windows/sunroof at the desired position. If you want further adjustment, repeat the same operation.


» Opening/Closing the Windows and Sunroof with the Key

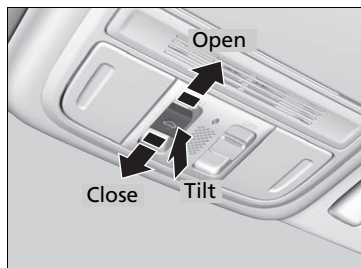
Except African left-hand drive models

Do not unlock the door using the key. The security system alarm goes off.

* Not available on all models

■ Opening/Closing the Sunroof

You can operate the sunroof only when the ignition switch is in ON *¹. Use the switch in the front of the ceiling to open and close the sunroof.



■ Automatic operation

To open: Pull the switch back firmly.

To close: Push the switch forward firmly.

The sunroof automatically opens or closes all the way. To stop the sunroof midway, touch the switch briefly.

■ Manual operation

To open: Pull the switch back lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

To close: Push the switch forward lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

■ Tilting the sunroof up

To tilt: Push on the centre of the sunroof switch.

To close: Push the switch forward firmly, then release.

*¹: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

» Opening/Closing the Sunroof

WARNING

Opening or closing the sunroof on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.


Make sure all hands and fingers are clear of the sunroof before opening or closing it.

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone (with other occupants).

NOTICE


Opening the sunroof in below freezing temperature or when it is covered with snow or ice can damage the sunroof panel or motor.

Australian and New Zealand models

The power sunroof can be operated for up to 45 seconds after you turn the ignition switch to LOCK *¹.

Opening either front door cancels this function.

Except Australian and New Zealand models

The power sunroof can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you turn the ignition switch to LOCK *¹.

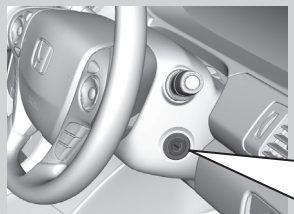
Opening either front door cancels this function.

Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine 6-cylinder, and African models

Closing the driver's door cancels this function.

When resistance is detected, the auto reverse function causes the sunroof to change directions, then stop. Auto reverse stops sensing when the sunroof is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes. Make sure that all objects, including fingers, are clear of the sunroof.

Ignition Switch *



- 0 LOCK:** Insert and remove the key in this position.
- I ACCESSORY:** Operate the audio system and other accessories in this position.
- II ON:** This is the position when driving.
- III START:** This position is for starting the engine. The switch returns to ON **II** when you let go of the key.

Ignition Switch *

You cannot take the key out unless the shift lever is in **P**.

If you open the driver's door when the key is in LOCK **0** or ACCESSORY **I**, a warning buzzer will sound to remind you to take the key out.

Models with multi-information display

When this happens, the following messages appear on the multi-information display:

- In LOCK **0**: **Ignition Key**
- In ACCESSORY **I**: **Return Ign Switch To (0) Position**

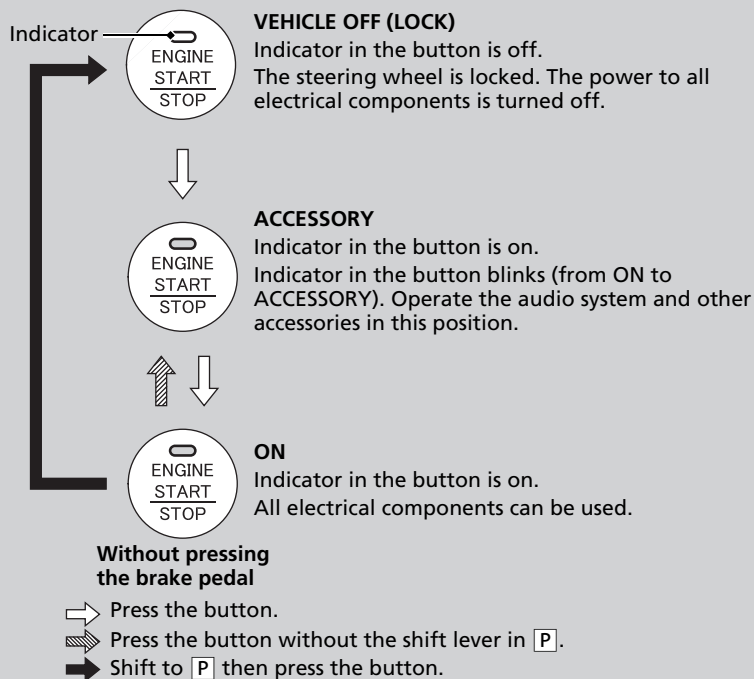
The buzzer will stop when you take the key out.

All models

If the key won't turn from LOCK **0** to ACCESSORY **I**, turn the key while moving the steering wheel left and right. The steering wheel will unlock, allowing the key to turn.

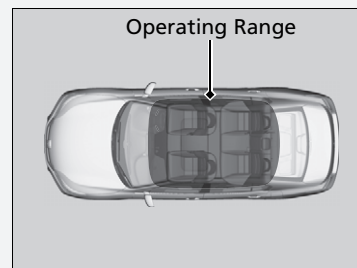
ENGINE START/STOP Button*

■ Changing the Power Mode



►► ENGINE START/STOP Button*

ENGINE START/STOP Button Operating Range



You can start the engine when the keyless remote is inside the vehicle.
The engine may also run if the keyless remote is close to a door or window, even if it is outside the vehicle.

ON mode:
Indicator in the button is off, if the engine is running.

If the keyless remote battery is weak, the beeper sounds and the **To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button** message appears on the multi-information display*.

❏ **If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak**
P. 511

Do not leave the power mode in ACCESSORY or ON when you get out.

■ Automatic Power Off

If you leave the vehicle for 30 to 60 minutes with the shift lever in **[P]** and the power mode in ACCESSORY, the vehicle automatically goes into the mode similar to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to avoid the battery drain.

When in this mode:

The steering wheel does not lock.

You cannot lock or unlock doors with the remote transmitter or the keyless access system.

Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button to switch the mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

■ Power Mode Reminder

If you open the driver's door when the power mode is set to ACCESSORY, a warning buzzer sounds.

■ Keyless Remote Reminder

Models with information display



Models with multi-information display



Warning buzzers may sound from inside or/ and outside the vehicle to remind you that the keyless remote is out of the vehicle. If the buzzer continues even after the remote is put back inside, place it to be within its operational range.

■ When the power mode is in ON

If the keyless remote is taken out of the vehicle, and the driver's door is closed, warning buzzers sound from both inside and outside the vehicle. A warning message on the information display or multi-information display notifies the driver inside that the remote is out.

■ When the power mode is in ACCESSORY

If the keyless remote is taken out of the vehicle, and all the doors are closed, a warning buzzer sounds from outside the vehicle.

☒ Keyless Remote Reminder










When the keyless remote is within the system's operational range, and the driver's door is closed, the warning function cancels.

If the keyless remote is taken out of the vehicle after the engine has been started, you can no longer change the **ENGINE START/STOP** button mode or restart the engine. Always make sure if the remote is in your vehicle when you operate the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

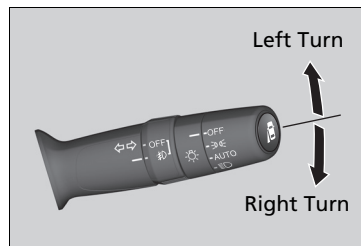
Removing the keyless remote from the vehicle through a window does not activate the warning buzzer.


Do not put the keyless remote on the dashboard or in the glove box. It may cause the warning buzzer to go off. Under some other conditions that can prevent the vehicle from locating the remote, the warning buzzer may also go off even if the remote is within the system's operational range.

Ignition Switch and Power Mode Comparison

Ignition Switch Position	LOCK (0) (with/without the key) 	ACCESSORY (I) 	ON (II) 	START (III) 
Without Keyless Access System	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Engine is turned off and power is shut down. The steering wheel is locked. No electrical components can be used. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Engine is turned off. Some electrical components such as the audio system and the accessory power socket can be operated. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Normal key position while driving. All electrical components can be used. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Use this position to start the engine. The ignition switch returns to the ON (II) position when you release the key.
Power Mode	VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) 	ACCESSORY 	ON   Indicator is: On Off	START 
With Keyless Access System and ENGINE START/STOP Button	Indicator-Off <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Engine is turned off and power is shut down. The steering wheel is locked. No electrical components can be used. 	Indicator-On or blinking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Engine is turned off. Some electrical components such as the audio system and the accessory power socket can be operated. 	Indicator-On (engine is turned off) Off (engine is running) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> All electrical components can be used. 	Indicator-Off <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The mode automatically returns to ON after the engine starts.

Turn Signals



The turn signals can be used when the ignition switch is in ON *1.

■ One-push turn signal

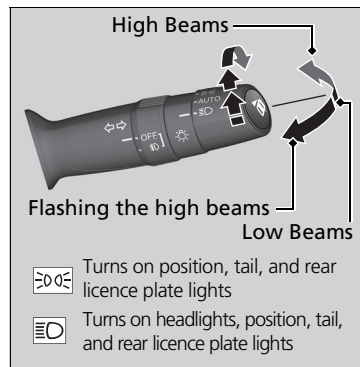
When you lightly push up or down and release the turn signal lever, the exterior turn signals and turn signal indicator blink three times.

This feature can be used when signalling for a lane change.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Light Switches

Manual Operation



Rotating the light switch turns the lights on and off, regardless of the position of the ignition switch*1.

■ High beams

Push the lever forward until you hear a click.

■ Low beams

When in high beams, pull the lever back to return to low beams.

■ Flashing the high beams

Pull the lever back, and release it.

Malaysian models

■ Lights off

Turn the lever to **OFF** either when:

- The shift lever is in **P**.
- The parking brake is applied.

To turn the lights on again, turn the lever to **OFF** to cancel the lights off mode. Even if you do not cancel the lights off mode, the lights come on automatically when:

- The shift lever is moved out of **P**.
- The parking brake is released.
- The vehicle starts to move.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Light Switches

Models without keyless access system

If you remove the key from the ignition switch while the lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened.

Models with keyless access system

If you leave the power mode in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) while the lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened.

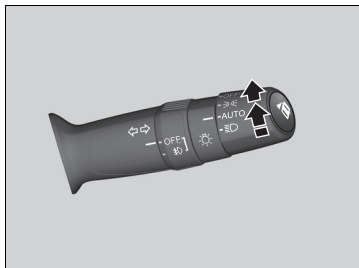
When the lights are on, the lights on indicator in the instrument panel will be on.

➤ Lights On Indicator P. 89

If you sense that the level of the headlights is abnormal, have the vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Do not leave the lights on when the engine is off because it will cause the battery to discharge.

■ Automatic Lighting Control*



Automatic lighting control can be used when the ignition switch is in ON **II***1.

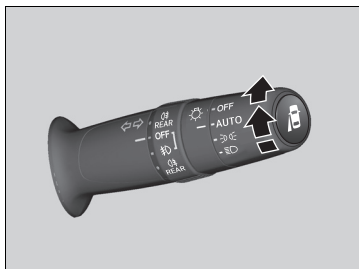
When you turn the light switch to **AUTO**, the headlights and other exterior lights will switch on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness.

- You can change the auto light sensitivity setting.

► **Customized Features** P. 118, 308

■ Malaysian models

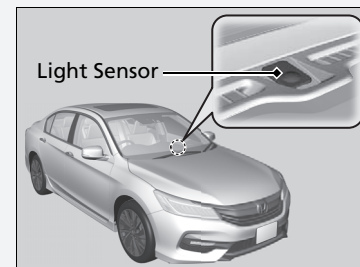
When the light switch is in **AUTO**, the headlights and other exterior lights will switch on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness.



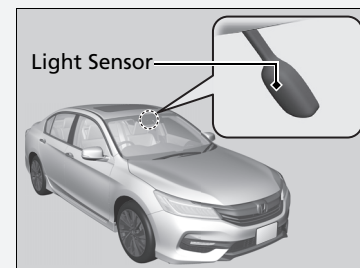
►► Automatic Lighting Control*

We recommend that you turn on the lights manually when driving at night, in a dense fog, or in dark areas such as long tunnels or parking facilities.

The light sensor is in the location shown below. Do not cover this light sensor with anything; otherwise, the automatic lighting system may not work properly.



■ Models with auto wiper



*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Automatic Lighting Off Feature

The headlights, all other exterior lights, and the instrument panel lights turn off 15 seconds after you remove the key or set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), take the remote with you, and close the driver's door.

▶ You can change the headlight auto off timer setting.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 118, 308

If you turn the ignition switch to LOCK [0]*¹ with the headlight switch on, but do not open the door, the lights turn off after 10 minutes (three minutes, if the switch is in the **AUTO** position).

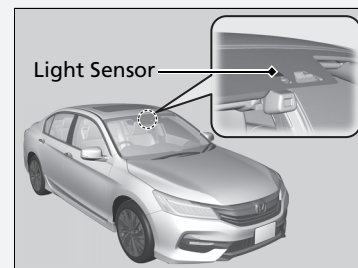
The lights turn on again when you unlock or open the driver's door. If you unlock the door, but do not open it within 15 seconds, the lights go off. If you open the driver's door, you will hear a lights on reminder chime.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.


* Not available on all models

Automatic Lighting Control*

Models with ACC



Adjust the auto light sensitivity as follows:

Setting	The exterior lights come on when the ambient light is at
MAX	 <div>Bright</div> <div>Dark</div>
HIGH	
MID	
LOW	
MIN	

Front and Rear Fog Lights*

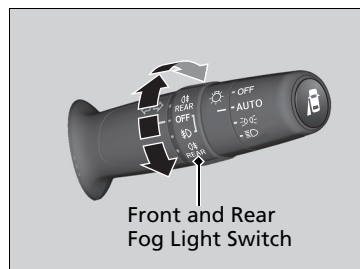
■ Front fog lights*

Can be used when the position lights or the headlights are on.

■ Rear fog light*

Can be used when the headlights or the front fog lights are on.

■ Front and Rear Fog Lights



■ To turn the front fog lights on

Rotate the switch up from the **OFF** position to the **F** position. The **F** indicator comes on.

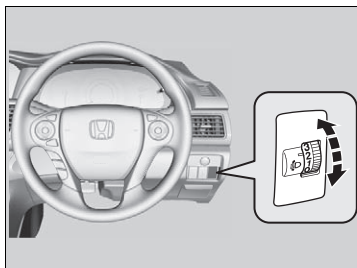
■ To turn the front and rear fog lights on

Rotate the switch one position up from the **F** position. The **F** and **R** indicator comes on.

■ To turn the rear fog light on

Rotate the switch down from the **OFF** position. The **R** indicator comes on.

Headlight Adjuster*



You can adjust the vertical angle of the low beam headlights when the ignition switch is in ON **II***1.

The larger dial number indicates the lower angle.

■ To select the adjusting dial position

Refer to the below table for the appropriate dial position for your vehicle's riding and loading conditions.

Condition	Dial position
A driver	0
A driver and a front passenger	1
Five persons in the front and rear seats	2
Five persons in the front and rear seats and luggage in the boot, within the limit of maximum permissible axle weight and maximum permissible vehicle weight	3
A driver and luggage in the boot, within the limits of maximum permissible axle weight and maximum permissible vehicle weight	

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

» Headlight Adjuster*

Models with LED headlights

Your vehicle is equipped with the automatic headlight adjusting system that automatically adjusts the vertical angle of the low beam headlights. If you find a significant change in the vertical angle of the headlights, there may be a problem with the system. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Models with halogen headlights

The headlights are suitable for left hand drive and right hand drive, without the need to make any adjustments or masking, as per UN-ECE R48 Dover Regulation.

Models with LED headlights

You may need to alter the headlight beam distribution.

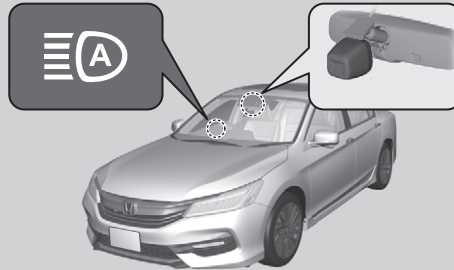
➡ **Adjusting Headlight Distribution** P. 425

Auto High-Beam*

Uses the camera attached, monitors the space ahead of your vehicle, and automatically changes the low beam headlights to high beam headlights when necessary.

The system operates when:

- The headlight switch is in **AUTO**.
- The lever is in the low beam position.
- The system recognises that you are driving at night and the low beam headlights come on.
- The vehicle speed is above 40 km/h.

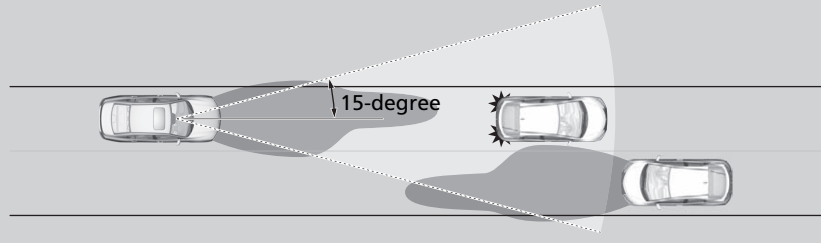


The system changes between high and low beam headlights when:

The camera is not detecting any lights coming from preceding or oncoming vehicles: The headlights change to high beams.

The camera detects lights coming from a preceding or oncoming vehicle: The headlights are returned to low beams.

The camera monitors the range within the 30-degree view angle. The distance that the camera can detect lights ahead differs depending on conditions, such as the brightness of the lights and the weather.



Auto High-Beam*

The auto high-beam may not work under certain conditions.

The system is for your convenience only. Always confirm the surroundings, and if necessary, change the headlight beams manually.

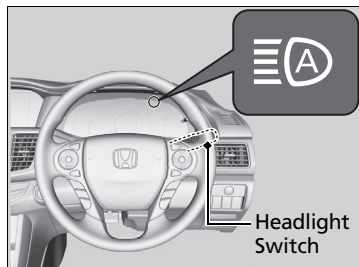
The auto high-beam determines when to change the headlight beams by responding to the brightness of the lights ahead of your vehicle. In the following cases, the system may not respond to the lights properly:

- The brightness of the lights from the preceding or oncoming vehicle is intense or poor.
- Visibility is poor due to the weather (rain, snow, fog, windscreen frost, etc.).
- Other light sources, such as streetlights and electric billboards are illuminating the road ahead.
- The brightness level of the road ahead constantly changes.
- The road is bumpy or with many curves.
- A vehicle cuts in front of you, or a vehicle in front of you is not in the preceding or oncoming direction.
- Your vehicle is tilted with a heavy load in the rear.

If you find the timing of beam changes inconvenient for driving, change the headlight beams manually.

* Not available on all models

■ To Operate the System



Turn the headlight switch in **AUTO** and pull the headlight lever to low beam.

► **Light Switches** P. 163

The auto high-beam indicator (green) comes on.

■ Temporary cancellation

The auto high-beam operation is temporarily cancelled while:

- You are continuously driving at a speed below 24 km/h.
- The vehicle speed is below 10 km/h.
- The windscreen wipers run at high speed for more than a few seconds.

The system operation resumes once the condition that caused it to cancel improves.

■ To manually cancel the system temporarily

You can cancel the operation when you manually change the headlights to high beams. Push the lever forward until you hear a click, or lightly pull the lever towards you to flash high beams. The auto high-beam indicator (green) goes off.

If you want the auto high-beam operation to resume at once, pull and hold the lever towards you for a few seconds.

►► To Operate the System


For the auto high-beam to work properly:

- Do not place an object that reflects light on the dashboard.
- Keep the windscreen around the camera clean.
When cleaning the windscreen, be careful not to apply the windscreen cleanser to the camera lens.
- Do not attach an object, sticker or film in the area around the camera.
- Do not touch the camera lens.

If the camera receives a strong impact, or repairing of the area near the camera is required, consult a dealer.

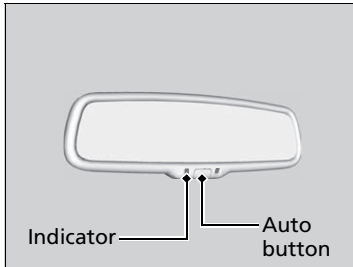
To help reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the camera system to shut off, when parking, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun.

If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing. Covering the camera can concentrate heat on the camera.

If the auto high-beam indicator (amber) comes on or  message appears:

Park your vehicle in a safe place. Wipe away debris blocking the windscreen, then start driving again. If the indicator or message remains on even after driving for a while with the clean windscreen, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

■ To Disable the System



Disable the system when the vehicle is parked with the power mode in ON.

To disable the system: Press the auto button for about more than 21 seconds. The indicator blinks twice.


To enable the system: Press the auto button for about more than 18 seconds. The indicator blinks once.


▣ To Disable the System

The auto high-beam is in the previously selected disabled or enabled setting each time you start the engine.

Daytime Running Lights

The position/daytime running lights comes on when the following conditions have been met:

- The ignition switch is in ON *1.
- The headlight switch is off.

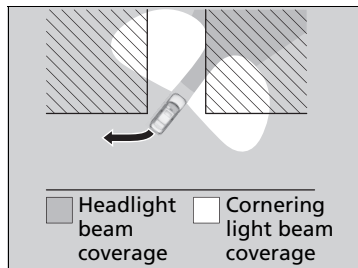
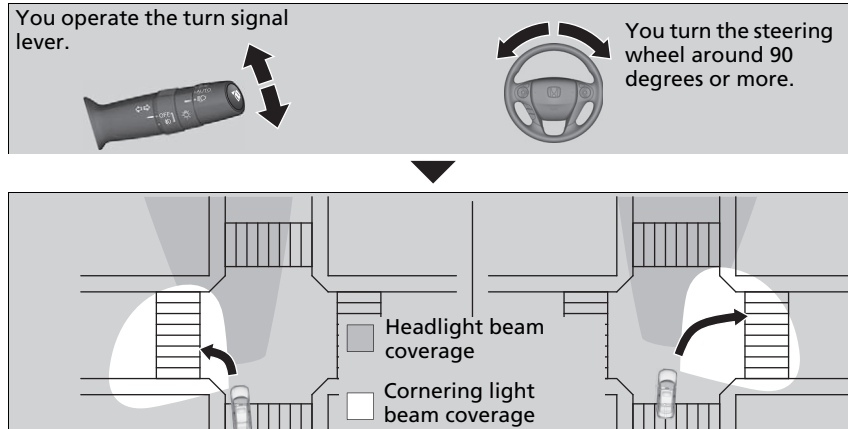
The lights remain on even if you set the parking brake. Turning the ignition switch to LOCK  or setting the power mode to VEHICLE OFF will turn off the daytime running lights.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Active Cornering Lights*

Enhance the visibility of the corner(s) when making a turn. With the power mode in ON, the headlights on, and the vehicle speed at less than 35 km/h, the cornering light(s) comes on either when operating the turn signals or the steering wheel, or moving the shift lever to **R**.

■ The corner you are making a turn to is illuminated when:

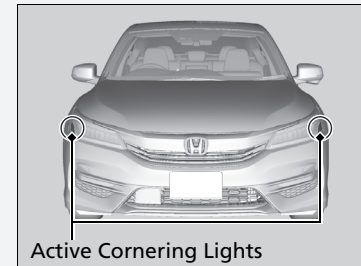


■ Both front corners are illuminated when:

You move the shift lever to **R**.

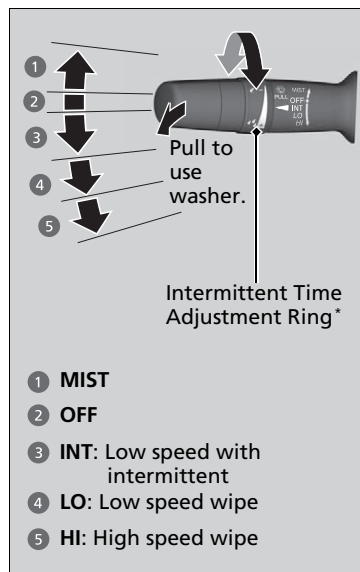
⚙ Active Cornering Lights*

The active cornering lights go off automatically after five minutes. To resume the lights on, recreate the same condition; putting the turn signal lever or steering wheel in the centre position, then operate it again, or if the shift lever has been in **R**, move it to another position momentarily.



* Not available on all models

Wipers and Washers



The windscreen wipers and washers can be used when the ignition switch is in ON *¹.

■ MIST

The wipers run at high speed until you release the lever.

■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT*, LO, HI)

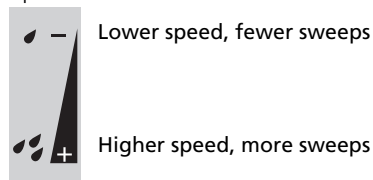
Change the wiper switch setting according to the amount of rain.

■ Auto*

► Automatic Intermittent Wipers* P. 175

■ Adjusting wiper operation*

Turn the adjustment ring to adjust wiper operation.



■ Washer

Sprays while you pull the lever towards you. When you release the lever for more than one second, the spray stops, the wipers sweep two or three more times to clear the windscreen, then stop.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Wipers and Washers

NOTICE

Do not use the wipers when the windscreen is dry. The windscreen will get scratched, or the rubber blades will get damaged.

NOTICE

In cold weather, the blades may freeze to the windscreen, becoming stuck. Operating the wipers in this condition may damage the wipers. Use the demister to warm the windscreen, then turn the wipers on.

If the vehicle speeds up while the wipers are operating intermittently, the length of the wipe interval shortens. When the vehicle starts moving, the wipers make a single sweep. When the vehicle speeds up, the wiper operation's shortest delay setting () and the **LO** setting become the same.

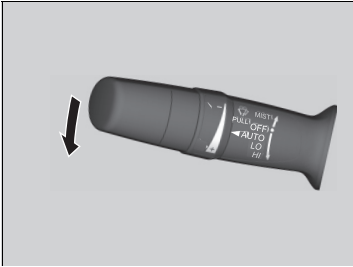
Turn the washers off if no washer fluid comes out. The pump may get damaged.

The wiper motor is equipped with a breaker that may stop motor operation temporarily to prevent an overload. Wiper operation resumes within a few minutes once the circuit has returned to normal.

If the wipers stop operating due to any obstacle such as the build-up of snow, park the vehicle in a safe place.

Rotate the wiper switch to **OFF**, and turn the ignition switch to **ACCESSORY** or **LOCK** *¹, then remove the obstacle.

Automatic Intermittent Wipers*



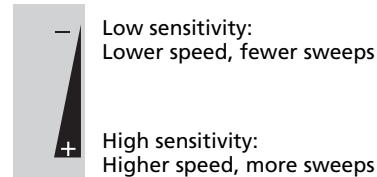
When you push the lever down to **AUTO**, the windscreen wipers sweep once, and go into the automatic mode.

The wipers operate intermittently, at low speed, or at high speed and stops in accordance with the amount of rainfall the rainfall sensor detects.

Auto sensitivity adjustment

When in **AUTO**, you can also adjust the rainfall sensor sensitivity using the intermittent time adjustment ring.

Sensor sensitivity

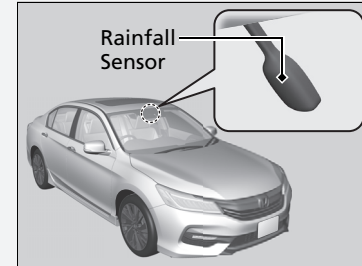


*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

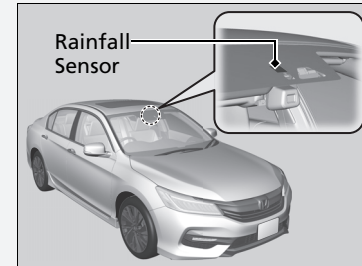
* Not available on all models

Automatic Intermittent Wipers*

The rainfall sensor is in the location shown below.

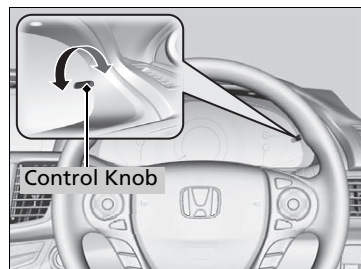



Models with ACC



Do not put the wiper lever in **AUTO** when cleaning the windscreen or driving through a car wash. If the wiper lever is in **AUTO**, and the ignition switch is in ON **[II]***1, the rainfall sensor may respond to your hand or car wash liquids, and the wipers may operate automatically.

Brightness Control



When the position lights are turned on and the ignition switch is in ON *1, you can use the brightness control knob to adjust instrument panel brightness.

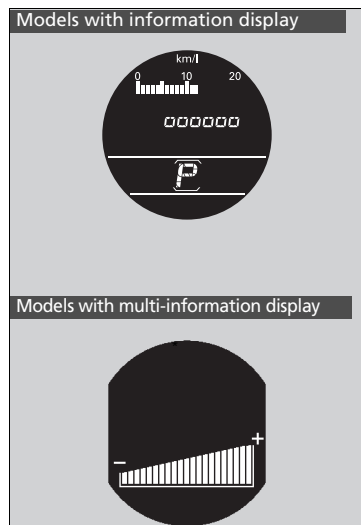
Brighten: Turn the knob to the right.

Dim: Turn the knob to the left.

You will hear a beep when the brightness reaches minimum or maximum. The information display/multi-information display will return to its original state several seconds after you adjust the brightness.


■ Brightness level indicator

The brightness level is shown on the information display/multi-information display while you are adjusting it.



▶▶ Brightness Control

Instrument panel brightness differs between when the exterior lights are on and when they are off. The instrument panel dims to reduce glare when the lights are on.


Pressing the  (Select/Reset) knob switches the display between the brightness level and other available information.

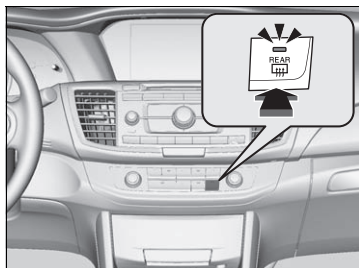
If you turn the knob to the right until the brightness display is up to max, the beeper sounds. This cancels the reduced instrument panel brightness when the exterior lights are on.

The brightness can be set differently for when the exterior lights are on, and when they are off.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror* Button

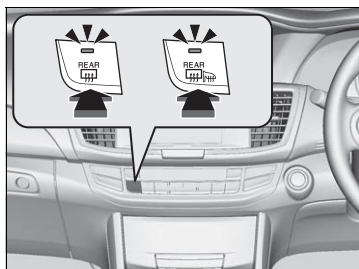
Press the rear demister and heated door mirror button to defog the rear window and mirrors when the ignition switch is in ON *1.



Models with heating and cooling system

The rear demister automatically switches off after 20 minutes.

However, if the outside temperature is -8°C or below, they do not automatically switch off.



Models with climate control system

The rear demister and heated door mirrors automatically switch off after 10-30 minutes depending on the outside temperature.

However, if the outside temperature is 0°C or below, they do not automatically switch off.

⚠ Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror* Button

NOTICE

When cleaning the inside of the rear window, be careful not to damage the heating wires. It is critical to wipe the window from side to side along the demister heating wires.

This system consumes a lot of power, and may weaken the battery, making it difficult to start the engine. Turn it off when the window has been defogged.

Also, do not use the system for a long period even if the engine is idling.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Driving Position Memory System*

You can store two driver's seat (except for power lumbar) positions with the driving position memory system.

When you unlock and open the driver's door with a remote transmitter, or keyless access system, the seat adjusts automatically to one of the two preset positions.

The multi-information display* shows you which remote transmitter you used to unlock the vehicle when you enter.

- **DRIVER 1** transmitter is linked to memory button 1.
- **DRIVER 2** transmitter is linked to memory button 2.



The driver's seat moves rearward depending on the set seating position once you:

- Stop the vehicle.
- Put the shift lever in **P**.
- Turn the engine off.
- Then open the driver's door.

Once the power mode is in the ACCESSORY position, the driver's seat moves to the **DRIVER 1** or **2** preset position.

►► Driving Position Memory System*

Using the audio/information touch screen or multi-information display*, you can disable the automatic seat adjustment function.

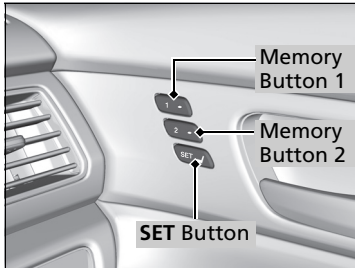
► **Customized Features** P. 118, 308

System Operation

The system will not operate if:

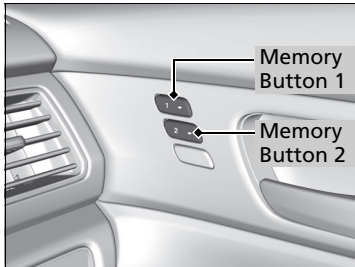
- The vehicle speed is above 3 km/h.
- Either memory position button is pressed while the seat is in motion.
- The seat position is adjusted while in operation.
- The memory 1 or 2 position is set fully to the rear.

■ Storing a Position in Memory



1. Set the power mode to ON. Adjust the driver's seat to the desired position.
2. Press the **SET** button.
 - You will hear a beep, and the memory button indicator light will blink.
3. Press memory button **[1]** or **[2]** within five seconds of pressing the **SET** button.
 - Once the seat position has been memorized, the indicator light on the button you pressed stays on.

■ Recalling the Stored Position



1. Move the shift lever to **[P]**.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Press a memory button (**[1]** or **[2]**).
 - You will hear a beep, and the indicator light will blink.

The seat will automatically move to the memorized position. When it has finished moving, you will hear a beep, and the indicator light stays on.

▣ Storing a Position in Memory

After you press the **SET** button, the storing operation will be cancelled when:

- You do not press the memory button within five seconds.
- You readjust the seat position before the double-beep.
- You set the power mode to any position except ON.

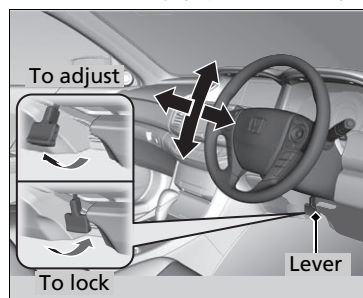
▣ Recalling the Stored Position

The seat will stop moving if you:

- Press the **SET** button, or a memory button (**[1]** or **[2]**).
- Adjust the seat position.
- Shift into any position except **[P]**.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel height and distance from your body can be adjusted so that you can comfortably grip the steering wheel in an appropriate driving posture.



1. Pull the steering wheel adjustment lever up.
 - The steering wheel adjustment lever is under the steering column.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down, and in or out.
 - Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and indicators.
3. Push the steering wheel adjustment lever down to lock the steering wheel in position.
 - After adjusting the position, make sure you have securely locked the steering wheel in place by trying to move it up, down, in, and out.

► Adjusting the Steering Wheel

⚠ WARNING

Adjusting the steering wheel position while driving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and be seriously injured in a crash.

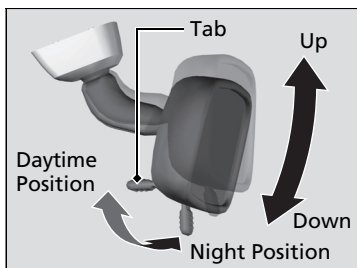
Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.

Make any steering wheel adjustments before you start driving.

Interior Rearview Mirror

Adjust the angle of the rearview mirror when you are sitting in the correct driving position.

Rearview Mirror with Day and Night Positions*



Flip the tab to switch the position.
The night position helps to reduce the glare from headlights behind you when driving after dark.

Adjusting the Mirrors

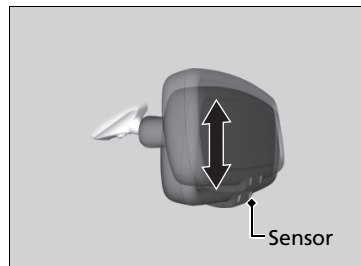
Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility.

Adjust the mirrors before you start driving.

➤ **Front Seats** P. 184

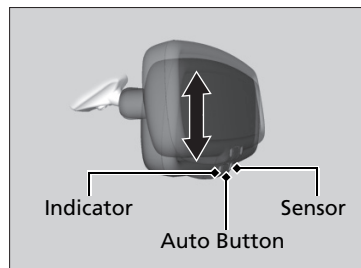
* Not available on all models

■ Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror*



Models without auto button

When driving after dark, the automatic dimming rearview mirror reduces the glare from headlights behind you, based in inputs from the mirror sensor. This feature is always active.



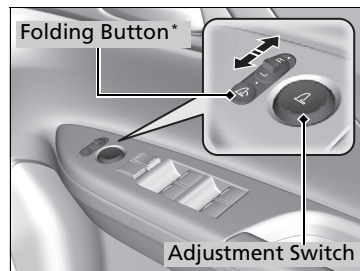
Models with auto button

When driving after dark, the automatic dimming rearview mirror reduces the glare from headlights behind you. Press the auto button to turn this function on and off. When activated, the auto indicator comes on.

►► Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror*

The auto dimming function cancels when the shift position is in **R**.

Power Door Mirrors



You can adjust the door mirrors when the ignition switch is in ON **II***1.

■ Mirror position adjustment

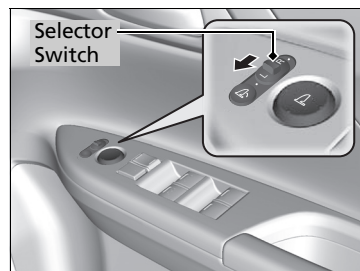
L/R selector switch: Select the left or right mirror. After adjusting the mirror, return the switch to the centre position.

Mirror position adjustment switch: Press the switch left, right, up, or down to move the mirror.

■ Folding door mirrors*

Press the folding button to fold in and out the door mirrors.

■ Reverse Tilt Door Mirror*



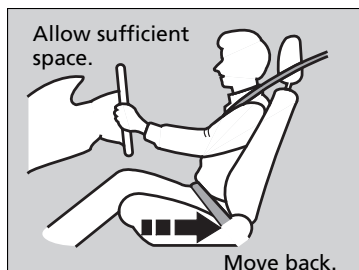
If activated, passenger side door mirror automatically tilts downward when you put the shift lever in **R**; this improves close-in visibility on the passenger side of the vehicle when reversing. The mirror automatically returns to its original position when you shift out of **R**.

To activate this feature, set the ignition switch is in ON **II***1, and slide the selector switch to the passenger side.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Front Seats



Adjust the driver's seat as far back as possible while allowing you to maintain full control of the vehicle. You should be able to sit upright, well back in the seat and be able to adequately press the pedals without leaning forward, and grip the steering wheel comfortably. The passenger's seat should be adjusted in a similar manner, so that it is as far back from the front airbag in the dashboard as possible.

Adjusting the Seats

⚠ WARNING

Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.

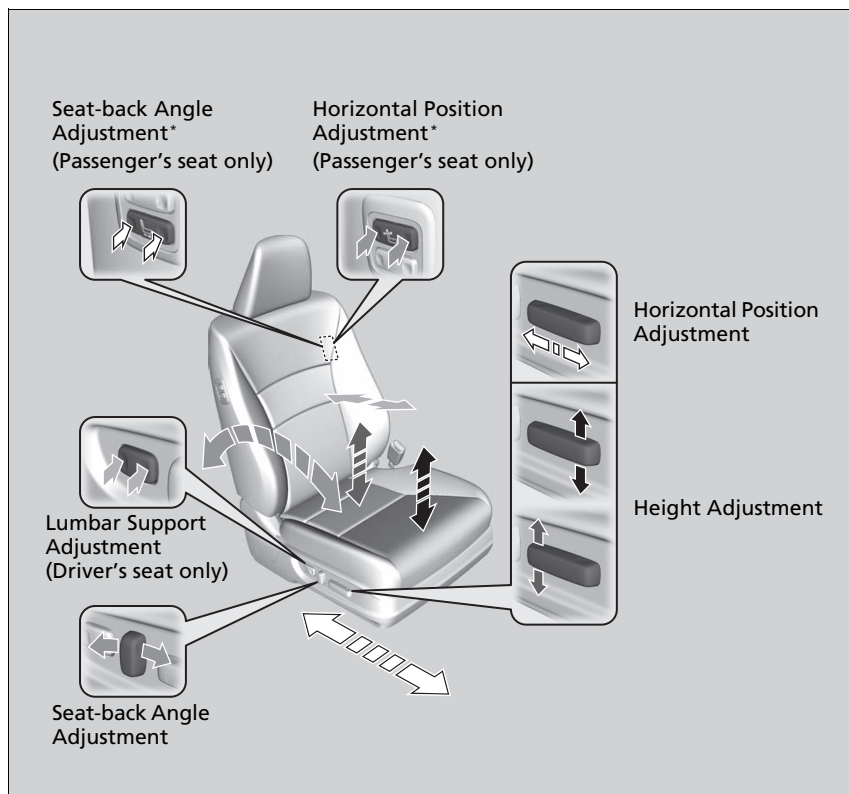
Always sit as far back from the front airbags as possible while maintaining control of the vehicle.

In addition to the seat adjustment, you can adjust the steering wheel up and down, in and out. Allow at least 25 cm between the centre of the steering wheel and the chest.

Always make seat adjustments before driving.

■ Adjusting the Seat Positions

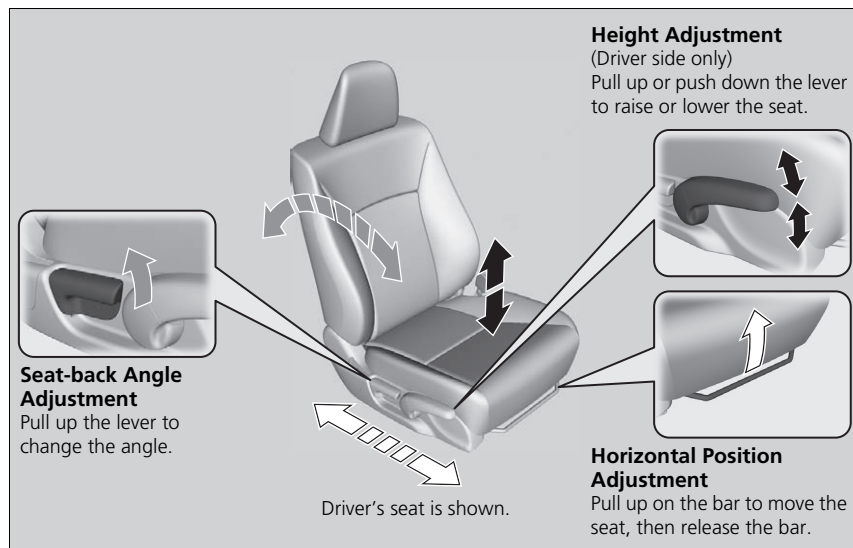
■ Adjusting the front power seat(s)*



* Not available on all models

Continued

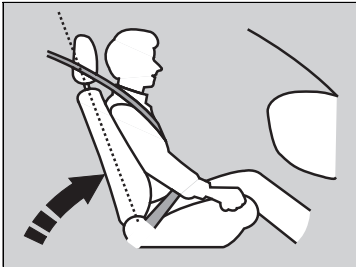
■ Adjusting the front manual seat(s)*



►► Adjusting the front manual seat(s)*

Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.

■ Adjusting the Seat-Backs



Adjust the driver's seat-back to a comfortable, upright position, leaving ample space between your chest and the airbag cover in the centre of the steering wheel.

The front seat passenger should also adjust their seat-back to a comfortable, upright position.

Reclining a seat-back so that the shoulder part of the belt no longer rests against the occupant's chest reduces the protective capability of the belt. It also increases the chance of sliding under the belt in a crash and being seriously injured. The farther a seat-back is reclined, the greater the risk of injury.

►► Adjusting the Seat-Backs

⚠ WARNING

Reclining the seat-back too far can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Adjust the seat-back to an upright position, and sit well back in the seat.

Do not put a cushion, or other object, between the seat-back and your back.

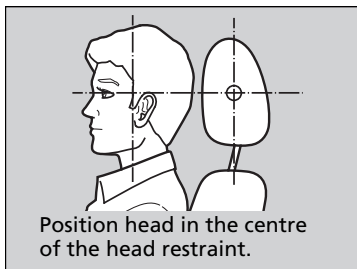
Doing so may interfere with proper seat belt or airbag operation.

If you cannot get far enough away from the steering wheel and still reach the controls, we recommend that you investigate whether some type of adaptive equipment may help.

Head Restraints

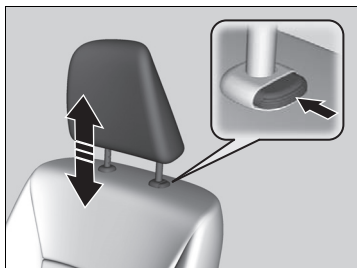
Your vehicle is equipped with head restraints in all seating positions.

■ Adjusting the Head Restraints



Head restraints are most effective for protection against whiplash and other rear-impact crash injuries when the centre of the back of the occupant's head rests against the centre of the restraint. The tops of the occupant's ears should be level with the centre height of the restraint.

■ Adjusting the front and rear outer head restraint positions



To raise the head restraint: Pull it upward.

To lower the head restraint: Push it down while pressing the release button.

►► Adjusting the Head Restraints

⚠ WARNING

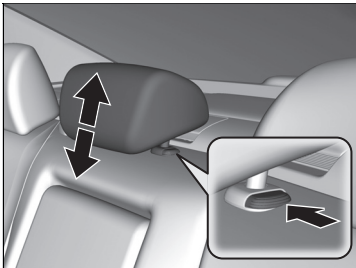
Improperly positioning head restraints reduces their effectiveness and increases the likelihood of serious injury in a crash.

Make sure head restraints are in place and positioned properly before driving.

In order for the head restraint system to work properly:

- Do not hang any items on the head restraints, or from the restraint legs.
- Do not place any objects between an occupant and the seat-back.
- Install each restraint in its proper location.

■ Changing the Rear Centre Seat Head Restraint Positions



A passenger sitting in the centre back seating position should adjust the height of their head restraint to an appropriate position before the vehicle begins moving.

To raise the head restraint:

Pull it upward.

To lower the head restraint:

Push it down while pressing the release button.

■ Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

Head restraints can be removed for cleaning or repair.

To remove the head restraint:

Pull the restraint up as far as it will go. Then push the release button, and pull the restraint up and out.

To reinstall the head restraint:

Insert the legs back in place, then adjust the head restraint to an appropriate height while pressing the release button. Pull up on the restraint to make sure it is locked in position.

▣ Changing the Rear Centre Seat Head Restraint Positions

When a passenger is seated in the rear centre seating position, make sure the rear head restraint is adjusted to its highest position. Do not use it in any lower position.

▣ Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

⚠ WARNING

Failure to reinstall, or correctly reinstall, the head restraints can result in severe injury during a crash.

Always replace the head restraints before driving.

Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and head restraints, and put on their seat belts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, well back in their seats, with their feet on the floor until the vehicle is safely parked and the engine is off.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury during a crash. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

In addition, an occupant who is out of position in the front seat can be seriously or fatally injured in a crash by striking interior parts of the vehicle or being struck by an inflating front airbag.

► Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

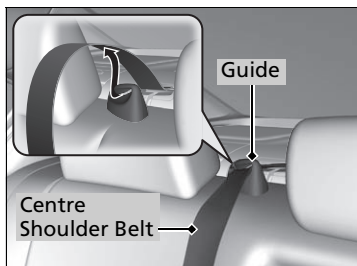
WARNING

Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

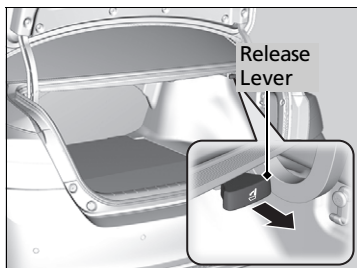
Always sit upright, well back in the seat, with your feet on the floor.

Rear Seats

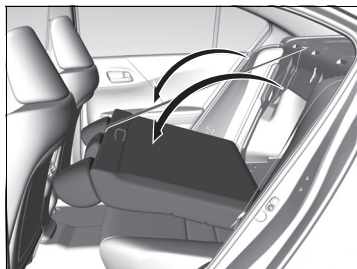
Folding Down the Rear Seats



1. Remove the centre shoulder belt from the guide.



2. Pull the release lever in the boot to release the lock.



3. Fold the seat-back down.

If the rear head restraints get caught on the front seat-backs, remove the head restraints.

➤ **Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints** P. 189

Folding Down the Rear Seats

The rear seat-back can be folded down to accommodate bulkier items in the boot.

Never drive with the seat-back folded down and the boot lid open.

➤ **Exhaust Gas Hazard** P. 76

To lock a seat-back upright, push it backwards until it locks.

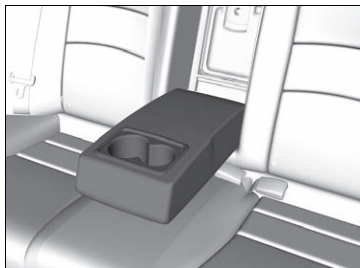
When returning the seat-back to its original position, push it firmly back. Also, make sure all rear shoulder belts are positioned in front of the seat-back, and the centre shoulder belt is re-positioned in the guide.

Make sure all items in the boot or items extending through the opening into the rear seat is properly secured. Loose items can fly forward if you have to brake hard.

The front seat(s) must be far enough forward so they do not interfere with the rear seats as they fold down.

Armrest

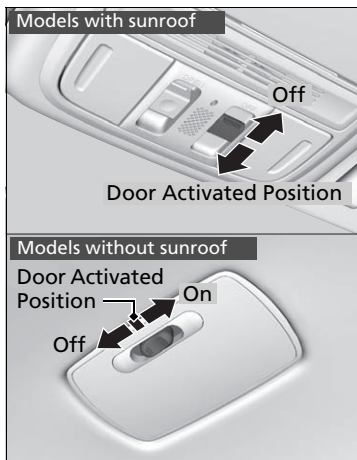
■ Using the Rear Seat Armrest



Pull down the armrest in the centre seat-back.

Interior Lights

Interior Light Switches



■ ON*

The interior lights come on regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

■ Door activated

The interior lights come on in the following situations:

- When any of the doors are opened.
- You unlock the driver's door.

Models without keyless access system

- You remove the key from the ignition switch.

Models with keyless access system

- When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

■ OFF

The interior lights remain off regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

Interior Light Switches

In the door activated position, the interior lights fade out and go off about 30 seconds after the doors are closed.

The lights go off after 30 seconds in the following situations:

- When you unlock the driver's door but do not open it.

Models without keyless access system

- When you remove the key from the ignition switch but do not open a door.

Models with keyless access system

- When you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), but do not open a door.

You can change the interior lights dimming time.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 118, 308

The interior lights go off immediately in the following situations:

- When you lock the driver's door.
- When you turn the ignition switch to ON [0]*1.

Models without keyless access system

- When you close the driver's door with the key in the ignition switch.

Models with keyless access system

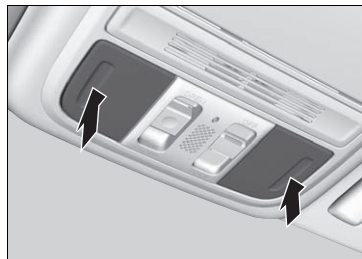
- When you close the driver's door in ACCESSORY mode.

If you leave any of the doors open without the key in the ignition switch*1, the interior lights go off after about 15 minutes.

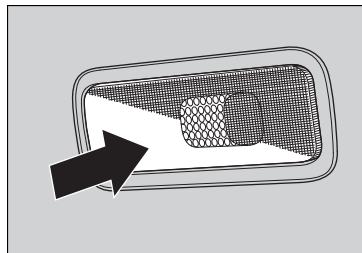
*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

■ Map Lights

The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the lenses.

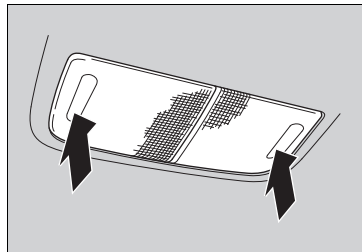


■ Front map lights



Models without sunroof

■ Rear map lights*



Models with sunroof

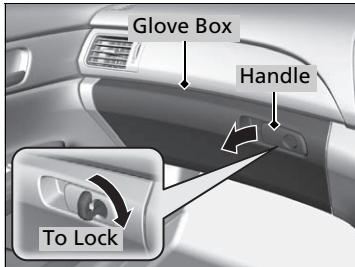
■ Rear map lights*

» Map Lights

When the ceiling light switch is in the door activated position and any door is open, pressing the lens does not turn off the map light.

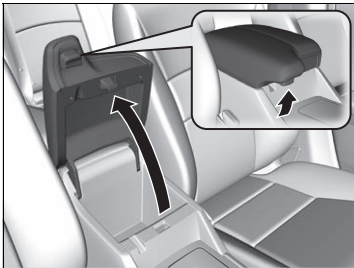
Interior Convenience Items

Glove Box



Pull the handle to open the glove box. You can lock the glove box with the master key*, the ignition key*, or the built-in key*.

Console Compartment



Pull the handle to open the console compartment.

Glove Box

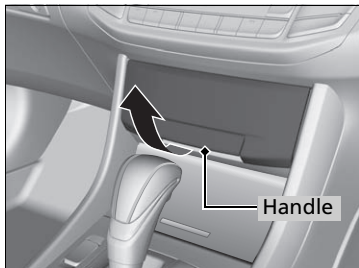
⚠ WARNING

An open glove box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt.

Always keep the glove box closed while driving.

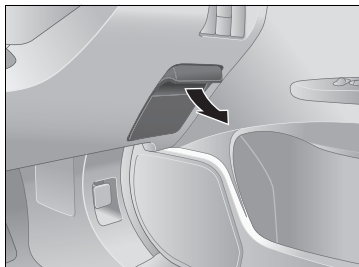
* Not available on all models

■ Centre Pocket



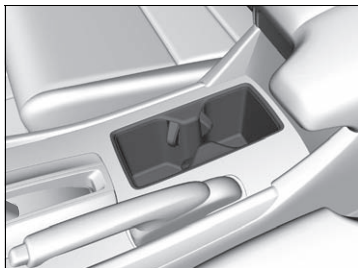
Pull the handle to open the pocket.

■ Driver's Side Pocket*



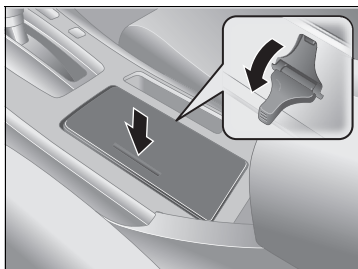
Pull the handle to open the pocket.

■ Beverage Holders



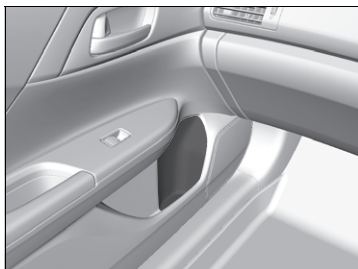
■ Front seat beverage holders*

Are located in the console between the front seats.



■ Front seat beverage holders with lid*

To open the beverage holder, push the lid.



■ Front door beverage holders

» Beverage Holders

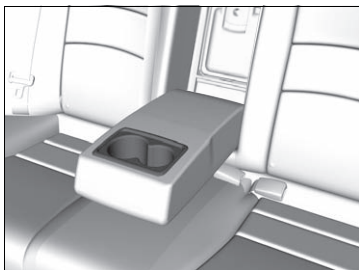
NOTICE

Spilled liquids damage the upholstery, carpeting, and electrical components in the interior.

Be careful when you are using the beverage holders. Hot liquid can scald you.

When you put back the armrest in the centre seat-back, make sure the lid is closed properly.

* Not available on all models



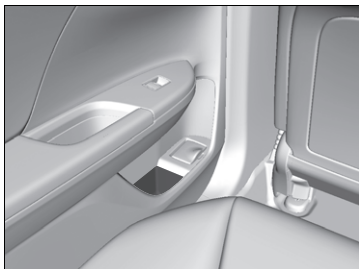
■ **Rear seat beverage holders***

Fold the armrest down to use the rear seat beverage holders.



■ **Rear seat beverage holders with lid***

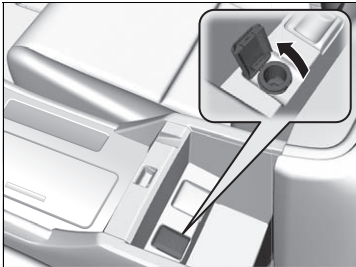
Fold the armrest down and pull up on the lid to use the rear seat beverage holders.



■ **Rear door beverage holders**

■ Accessory Power Socket

The accessory power socket can be used when the ignition switch is in ACCESSORY **I** or ON **II***1.



Open the console lid and the cover to use it.

■ Coat Hook



There is a coat hook on the rear right grab handle. Pull it down to use it.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

▣ Accessory Power Socket

NOTICE

Do not insert an automotive type cigarette lighter element.

This can overheat the power socket.

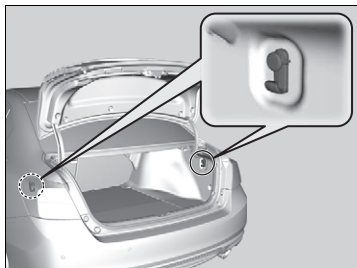
The accessory power socket is designed to supply power for 12 volt DC accessories that are rated 180 watts (15 amps) or less.

To prevent battery drain, only use the power socket with the engine running.

▣ Coat Hook

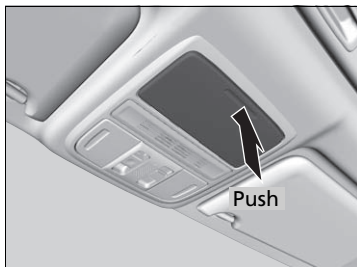
The coat hook is not designed for large or heavy items.

■ Luggage Hooks



The luggage hooks in the boot can be used to install a net for securing items.

■ Sunglasses Holder



To open the sunglasses holder, push and release the indent. To close, push it again until it latches.

You can store eyeglasses and other small items in this holder.

» Luggage Hooks

Heavy objects may damage the hook. Make sure any items put on this hook weigh less than 3 kg.

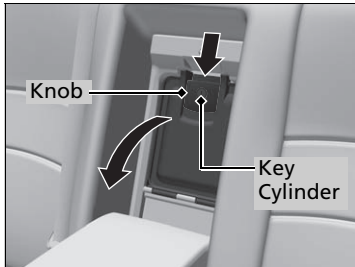
Distribute luggage evenly on the floor of the boot, placing the heaviest items on the bottom and as far forward as possible.

► **Load Limit** P. 367

» Sunglasses Holder

Keep the holder closed while driving except when accessing stored items.

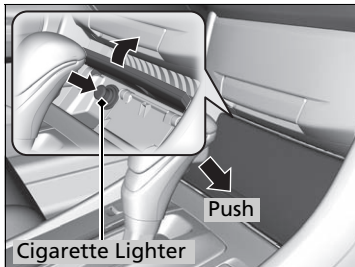
■ Boot Pass-through Cover



Slide down the knob to open the cover. You have access to the boot from this opening in the rear seat-back. The cover latches when you push it back to the original position.

You can lock and unlock this cover using the key.

■ Cigarette Lighter



Push the lid open, then push the lighter in and wait until it pops out.

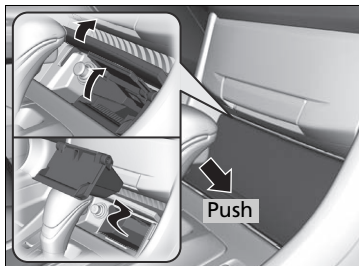
It can be used when the ignition switch is in ACCESSORY **I** or ON **II***1.

» Cigarette Lighter

Do not hold the lighter in. It can overheat the lighter.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Ashtrays



■ Front console

Push the console lid to open the ashtray lid.



■ Rear door pockets

Pull up on the lid to open.

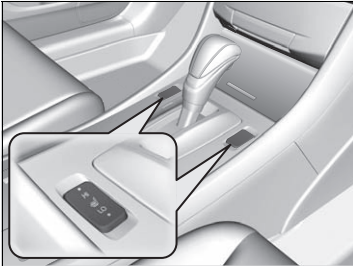
» Ashtrays

To prevent a possible fire and damage to your vehicle, use the ashtray only for discarding cigarettes and cigars.

Seat Heaters*



The ignition switch must be ON **II***1 to use the seat heaters. The **HI** setting heats the seats faster than the **LO** setting.



While in **HI**, the heater cycles on and off.

- The appropriate indicator will be on while the seat heater is on. Briefly press the switch on the opposite side to turn the heater off. The indicator will be off. When a comfortable temperature is reached, select **LO** to keep the seat warm.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Seat Heaters*

⚠ WARNING

Heat induced burns are possible when using seat heaters.

Persons with a diminished ability to sense temperature (e.g., persons with diabetes, lower-limb nerve damage, or paralysis) or with sensitive skin should not use seat heaters.

Do not use the seat heaters even in **LO** when the engine is off. Under such conditions, the battery may be weakened, making the engine difficult to start.

In the **LO** setting, the heater runs continuously and does not automatically turn off.

■ Rear Power Sunshade*

The rear power sunshade can be operated with the ignition switch is in ON *1.

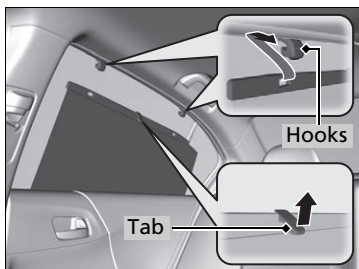


To raise: Press the button next to the shift lever.

To lower: Press the button again.

The rear power sunshade automatically goes down when you move the shift lever to **R**. If the sunshade stops while moving, check for and clear any obstacles, then push the button again.

■ Integrated Sunshades*



Pull the tab and roll up the sunshade all the way. Use the hooks to hang it.

⌘ Rear Power Sunshade*

⚠ WARNING

Opening or closing the sunshade on someone's hands or fingers may cause injury.

Make sure all hands and fingers are clear of the sunshade before opening or closing it.

⌘ Integrated Sunshades*

Use the sunshades only when the windows are fully closed. Using the shade while a window is open can unhook and blow off the shade, hitting and hurting anyone sitting near the window.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Using Vents, Heating and A/C

Mode Buttons

Change airflow.

Floor and demister vents

Floor vents

Dashboard and floor vents

Dashboard vents

Fan Control Dial

Adjusts the fan speed. Rotate the dial all the way to **OFF** to turn everything off.

Windscreen Demister Button

Turns on the A/C, selects airflow from the demister vents at the base of the windscreen, and switches the mode to fresh air.

Temperature Control Dial

Adjusts the interior temperature.


MAX A/C Button

Turns on the A/C, selects airflow from the dashboard vents, and switches the mode to recirculation.

A/C Button

Press to cool the interior or dehumidify while heating.

(Recirculation) Button

Press the  button and switch the mode depending on environmental conditions.

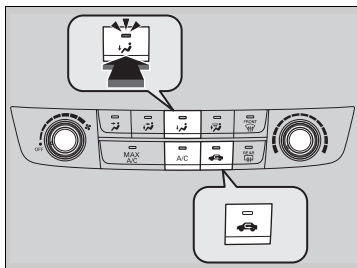
Recirculation mode (indicator on):

Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.

Fresh air mode (indicator off):

Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

■ Heating



The heater uses engine coolant to warm the air.

1. Adjust the fan speed using the fan control dial.
2. Select
3. Adjust the temperature using the temperature control dial.

■ To rapidly warm up the interior

1. Set the fan to the maximum speed.
2. Select
3. Set the temperature to maximum warm.
4. Press the button (indicator on).

■ To dehumidify the interior

When used in combination with the heater, the air conditioning system makes the interior warm and dry and can prevent the windows from fogging up.

1. Turn the fan on.
2. Press the **A/C** button to turn on the air conditioning.

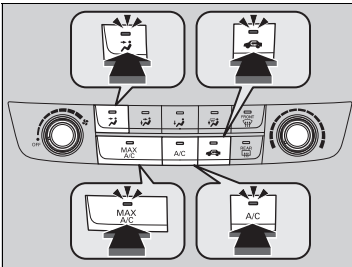
►► Heating


When you select , the mode automatically switches to fresh air.

►► To rapidly warm up the interior


Change to fresh air mode as soon as the interior gets warm enough. The windows may fog up if kept in recirculation mode.

Cooling

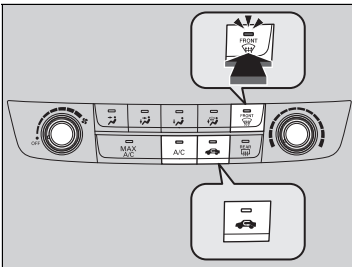



1. Adjust the fan speed using the fan control dial.
2. Select .
3. Adjust the temperature using the temperature control dial.
4. Press the **A/C** button (indicator on).

■ To rapidly cool down the interior



1. Set the fan to the maximum speed.
2. Set the temperature to maximum cool.
3. Press the  button (indicator on).

Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows



Pressing the  button turns the air conditioning system on and automatically switches the system to fresh air mode.


■ To rapidly defrost the windows

1. Set the fan to the maximum speed.
2. Press the  button.
3. Press the  button.
4. Set the temperature to maximum warm.

▶▶ To rapidly cool down the interior

If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows.

While in the ECON mode, the system has greater temperature fluctuations.

Pressing the  button bypasses the ECON mode control, and cools down the interior more rapidly.

▶▶ Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows

For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.

Do not set the temperature near the upper or lower limit.

When cold air hits the windscreen, the outside of the windscreen may fog up.

If the side windows fog up, adjust the vents so that the air hits the side windows.

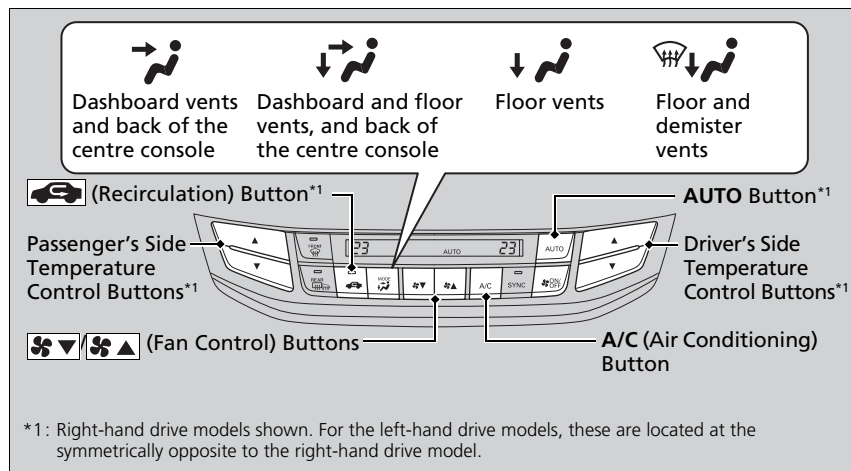
▶▶ To rapidly defrost the windows

After defrosting the windows, switch over to fresh air mode.

If you keep the system in recirculation mode, the windows may fog up from humidity. This impedes visibility.

Using Automatic Climate Control

The automatic climate control system maintains the interior temperature you select. The system also selects the proper mix of heated or cooled air that raises or lowers the interior temperature to your preference as quickly as possible.



Use the system when the engine is running.

1. Press the **AUTO** button.
2. Adjust the interior temperature using the driver's side or passenger's side control buttons.
3. Press the **ON/OFF** (On/Off) button to cancel.

Using Automatic Climate Control

If any buttons are pressed while using the climate control system in auto, the function of the button that was pressed will take priority.

The **AUTO** indicator will go off, but functions unrelated to the button that was pressed will be controlled automatically.


To prevent cold air from blowing in from outside, the fan may not start immediately when the **AUTO** button is pressed.

If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, turning the system on auto, and setting the temperature to low. Change the fresh mode to recirculation mode until the temperature cools down.

When you set the temperature to the lower or upper limit, **Lo** or **Hi** is displayed.

Pressing the **ON/OFF** button switches the climate control system between on and off. When turned on, the system returns to your last selection.

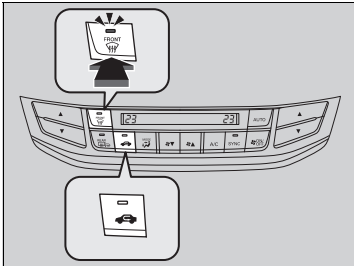
■ Switching between the recirculation and fresh air modes


Press the  (recirculation) button and switch the mode depending on environmental conditions.


Recirculation mode (indicator on): Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.

Fresh air mode (indicator off): Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

■ Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows




Pressing the  button turns the air conditioning system on and automatically switches to fresh air mode.

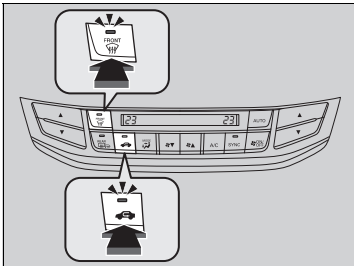
Press the  button again to turn off, the system returns to the previous settings.

Except African models

The system does not switch to fresh air mode when you press the  button.

Press the  button (indicator off) to switch to the fresh air mode.

■ To rapidly defrost the windows



1. Press the  button.
2. Press the  button.

►► Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows

For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.

Do not set the temperature near the upper or lower limit.

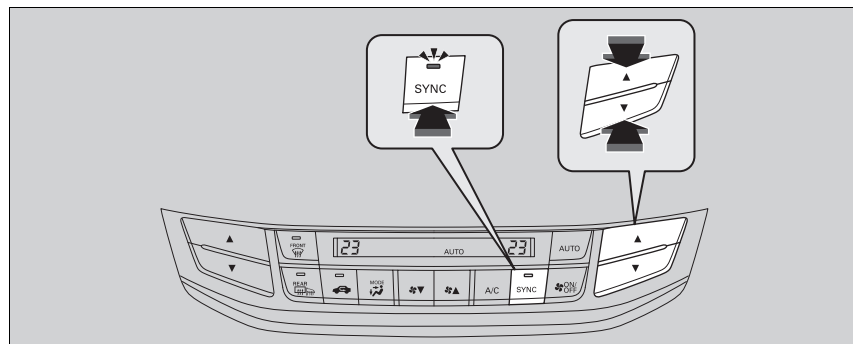
When cold air hits the windscreen, the outside of the windscreen may fog up.

If the side windows fog up, adjust the vents so that the air hits the side windows.

►► To rapidly defrost the windows

After defrosting the windows, switch over to fresh air mode. If you keep the system in recirculation mode, the windows may fog up from humidity. This impedes visibility.

Synchronized Mode



You can set the temperature synchronously for the driver side and the passenger side in synchronized mode.

1. Press the **SYNC** button.
► The system will switch to the synchronized mode.
2. Adjust the temperature using driver's side temperature control buttons.

Press the **SYNC** button to return to dual mode.

» Synchronized Mode

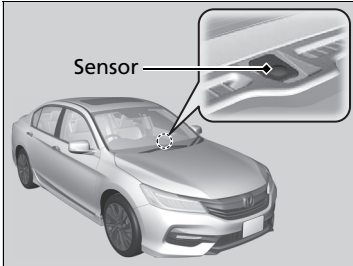
When you press the  button, the system changes to synchronized mode.

When the system is in dual mode, the driver side temperature and the passenger side temperature can be set separately.

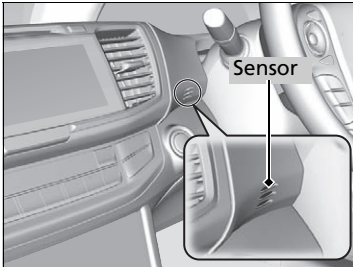
Models with navigation system

The system adjusts each temperature based on the information of the sunlight sensor and the sun position updated by the navigation system's GPS.

Automatic Climate Control Sensors



The automatic climate control system is equipped with sensors. Do not cover or spill any liquid on them.



Features

This chapter describes how to operate technology features.

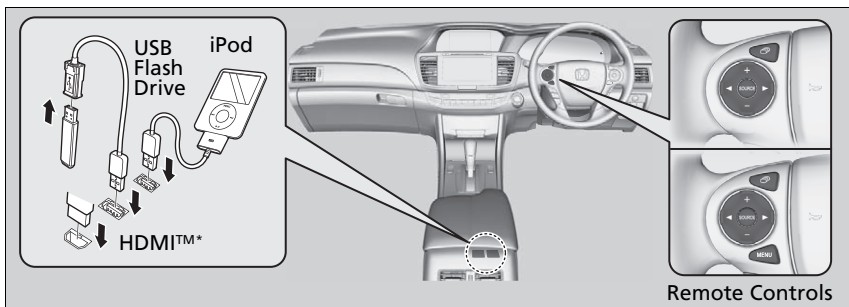
Audio System	214
USB Port(s).....	215
HDMI™ Port.....	216
Auxiliary Input Jack	217
Audio System Theft Protection *	218
Audio Remote Controls.....	219
Operating from the Rear Seats *	221
Models with one display	
Audio System Basic Operation	222

Models with display audio system	
Audio System Basic Operation	240
Audio Error Messages	297
General Information on the Audio System ...	301
Customized Features	308
Models with display audio system	
Hands-Free Telephone System	343

About Your Audio System

The audio system features AM/FM radio. It can also play audio CDs, WMA/MP3/AAC files, USB flash drives, and iPod, iPhone and *Bluetooth*® devices*.

You can operate the audio system from the buttons* and switches* on the panel, the icons on the touchscreen interface*.

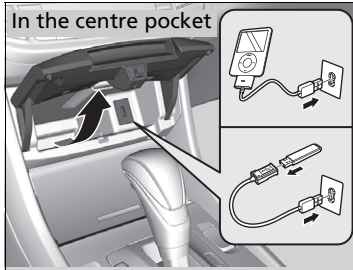


About Your Audio System

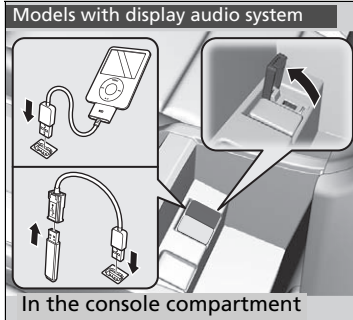
Video CDs, DVDs*, and 8-cm mini CDs are not supported.

iPod, iPhone, and iTunes are trademarks of Apple Inc.

USB Port(s)



Install the iPod dock connector or the USB flash drive to the USB port.



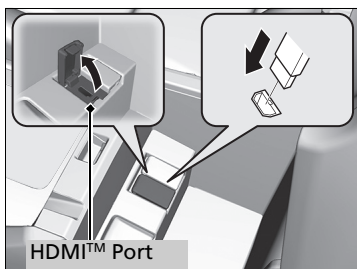
USB Port(s)

- Do not leave the iPod or USB flash drive in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- We recommend using an extension cable with the USB port.
- Do not connect the iPod or USB flash drive using a hub.
- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard disk drive, as the device or your files may be damaged.
- We recommend backing up your data before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.

If the audio system does not recognize the iPod, try reconnecting it a few times or reboot the device. To reboot, follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the iPod or visit www.apple.com/ipod.

Models with display audio system

HDMI™ Port



1. Open the cover.
2. Install the HDMI™ cable to the HDMI™ port.

HDMI™ Port

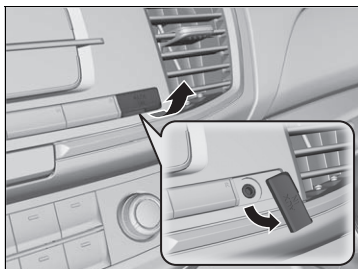
- Do not leave the HDMI™ connected device in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- We recommend your data backed up before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.

The terms HDMI and HDMI High-Definition Multimedia Interface, and the HDMI Logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing LLC in the United States and other countries.

Models with one display

Auxiliary Input Jack

Use the jack to connect standard audio devices.



1. Open the **AUX** cover.
2. Connect a standard audio device to the input jack using a 3.5 mm stereo miniplug.
 - ▶ The audio system automatically switches to the AUX mode.


▶▶ Auxiliary Input Jack

You can return to the AUX mode by pressing the **AUX** button.

Audio System Theft Protection *

The audio system is disabled when it is disconnected from the power source, such as when the battery is disconnected or goes dead. In certain conditions, the system may display a passcode input mode. If this occurs, reactivate the audio system.

■ Reactivating the audio system

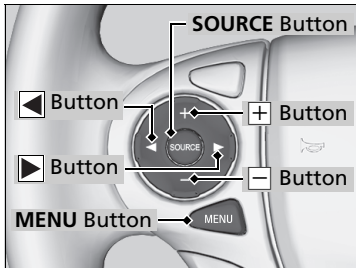
1. Turn the ignition switch to ON *1.
2. Turn on the audio system.
3. Press and hold the audio system power button for more than two seconds.
 - The audio system is reactivated when the audio control unit establishes a connection with the vehicle control unit. If the control unit fails to recognize the audio unit, you must go to a dealer and have the audio unit checked.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Audio Remote Controls

Allows you to operate the audio system while driving.



SOURCE Button

Cycles through the audio modes as follows:

Models with one display

FM→AM→CD→USB→iPod→AUX

Models with display audio system

FM→AM→CD/DVD*→USB→iPod→Apps→
Bluetooth® Audio→AUX HDMI™→
Audio Apps

+ - (Volume) Buttons

Press +: To increase the volume.

Press -: To decrease the volume.

◀ ▶ Buttons

- When listening to the radio
 - Press** ▶: To select the next preset radio station.
 - Press** ◀: To select the previous preset radio station.
 - Press and hold** ▶: To select the next strong station.
 - Press and hold** ◀: To select the previous strong station.
- When listening to a CD, iPod, USB flash drive, or Bluetooth® Audio*
 - Press** ▶: To skip to the next song.
 - Press** ◀: To go back to the beginning of the current or previous song.
- When listening to a CD, USB flash drive, or Bluetooth® Audio*
 - Press and hold** ▶: To skip to the next folder.
 - Press and hold** ◀: To go back to the previous folder.

▶▶ Audio Remote Controls

Some mode appears only when an appropriate device or medium is used.

* Not available on all models

Models with display audio system

Steering Wheel MENU Button

To choose options for the current audio device, press **MENU**, **Audio Menu**, and then **SOURCE**.

Options available to you for each audio device:

- Radio:
You can select **Scan**, **Save Preset**, **Seek Up**, or **Seek Down**.
- CD or USB flash drive:
You can select **Scan Folders**, **Scan Tracks**, **Scan***, **Repeat Folder**, **Repeat Track**, **Repeat***, **Random in Folder**, **Random All Tracks** or **Random***.
- iPod:
You can select **Play/Pause**, **Repeat Song**, **Shuffle Albums**, or **Shuffle All Songs**.
- *Bluetooth*® Audio:
You can select **Pause** or **Play**.
- DVD*:
You can select **Repeat Chapter***, **Repeat Title***, or **Play/Pause**.

To choose options for the navigation system while it is in operation, press **MENU**, select **Navi Menu**, and then **SOURCE**.

➤ Refer to the Navigation System Manual

To choose options for HFT, press **MENU**, select **Phone Menu**, and then **SOURCE**. You can select **Speed Dial**, **Call History**, or **Redial**.

To choose options for the display setting, press **MENU**, select **Display Setting**, and then **SOURCE**.

You can select **Brightness**, **Contrast**, **Black Level**, **Color**, or **Tint**.

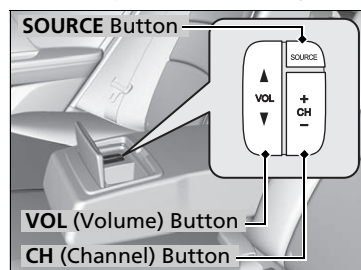
►► Audio Remote Controls

Models with display audio system

The **MENU** button is available only when the audio mode is FM, AM, CD, DVD*, USB, iPod, or *Bluetooth*® Audio.

Operating from the Rear Seats*

You can operate the audio system from the rear seats.



SOURCE Button

Cycles through the audio modes as follows:
 FM→AM→CD/DVD*→USB→iPod→Apps→
Bluetooth® Audio→AUX HDMI™→
 Audio Apps

VOL Buttons

Press ▲: To increase the volume.

Press ▼: To decrease the volume.

CH Buttons

- When listening to the radio
 - Press** [+]: To select the next preset radio station.
 - Press** [-]: To select the previous preset radio station.
 - Press and hold** [+]: To select the next strong station.
 - Press and hold** [-]: To select the previous strong station.
- When listening to a CD, iPod, USB flash drive, or *Bluetooth*® Audio
 - Press** [+]: To skip to the next song.
 - Press** [-]: To go back to the beginning of the current or previous song.
- When listening to a CD, USB flash drive, or *Bluetooth*® Audio
 - Press and hold** [+]: To skip to the next folder.
 - Press and hold** [-]: To go back to the previous folder.

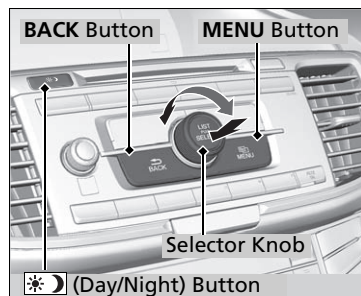
Operating from the Rear Seats*

Some mode appears only when an appropriate device or medium is used.


* Not available on all models

Models with one display

To use the audio system function, the ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY **I** or ON **II**.




Use the selector knob or **MENU** button to access some audio functions.


Press  to switch between the normal and extended display for some functions.


Selector knob: Rotate left or right to scroll through the available choices. Press to set your selection.

MENU button: Press to select any mode. The available mode includes **Change Source**, **Station List**, **Save Preset**, **Music Search**, and play modes. Play modes can be also selected from **Scan**, **Random/Repeat**, and so on.

BACK button: Press to go back to the previous display.

 **button:** Press to change the audio/information screen brightness.


Press  once and make an adjustment.

- Each time you press , the mode switches between the daytime mode, nighttime mode and **OFF** mode.

» Audio System Basic Operation

These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.

Rotate  to select.

Press  to enter.

Audio Menu Items

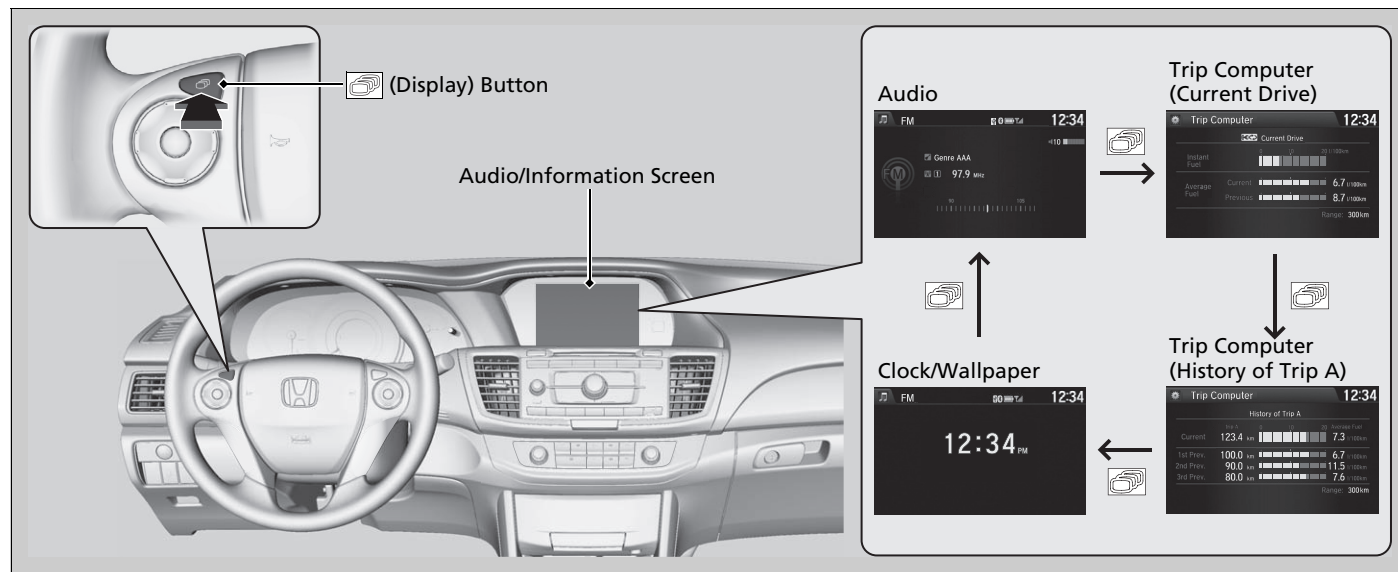
- **Station List** P. 230
- **Music Search** P. 232, 235, 238
- **Scan** P. 230, 233, 239
- **Random/Repeat** P. 233, 236, 239

Audio/Information Screen

Displays the audio status and wallpaper. From this screen, you can go to various setup options.

Switching the Display

Press the  (display) button to change the display.



■ Audio

Shows the current audio information.

■ Trip computer (Current Drive)

Shows the range, and instant and average fuel economy of the current trip, as well as the average fuel economy from your last trip.

■ Trip computer (History of Trip A)

Shows the range, average fuel economy and distance travelled for the current trip, as well as the average fuel economy and distances travelled during the last three driving cycles.

Each time you reset the trip meter A, the information on the display updates. The history of the previous three driving cycles is kept.

■ Clock/Wallpaper

Shows a clock screen or an image you import.

Wallpaper Setup

You can change, store, and delete the wallpaper on the audio/information screen.

Import wallpaper

You can import up to three images, one at a time, for wallpaper from a USB flash drive.









1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port.
▶ **USB Port(s)** P. 215
2. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
3. Rotate to select **System Settings**, then press .
- ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Clock, Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then **Wallpaper**.
4. Rotate to select **Add New Wallpaper**, then press .
- ▶ The preview of the imported data is displayed.
5. Rotate to select a desired picture.
▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
6. Press to save the data.
▶ The confirmation message will appear. Then the display will return to the wallpaper list.









Wallpaper Setup

- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive's root directory. Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be fewer than 64 characters.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- The individual file size limit is 2 MB.
- The maximum image size is 1,680 x 936 pixels. If the image size is less than 420 x 234 pixels, the image is displayed in the middle of the screen with the extra area appearing in black.
- Up to 255 files can be selected.
- If the USB flash drive does not have any pictures, the **No files detected** message appears.



■ Select wallpaper

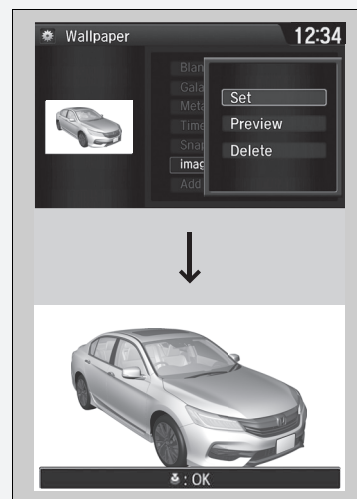
1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate  to select **System Settings**, then press .
 - ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Clock, Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then **Wallpaper**.
 - ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
3. Rotate  to select a desired wallpaper, then press .
 - ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
4. Rotate  to select **Set**, then press .


■ Delete wallpaper

1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate  to select **System Settings**, then press .
 - ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Clock, Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then **Wallpaper**.
 - ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
3. Rotate  to select a wallpaper that you want to delete, then press .
 - ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
4. Rotate  to select **Delete**, then press .
 - ▶ The confirmation message will appear.
5. Rotate  to select **OK**, then press  to delete completely.

▶▶ Wallpaper Setup

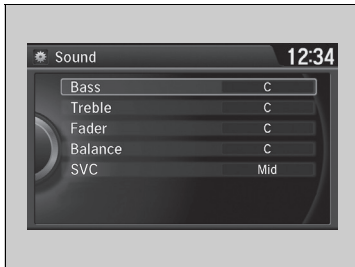
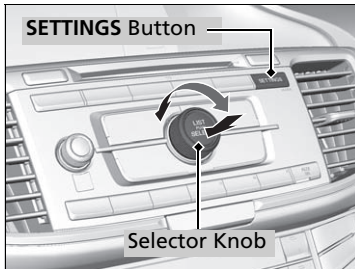
From the pop-up menu, rotate  to select **Preview** and press  to see a preview at full-size screen.



To go back to the previous screen, press  to select **OK**, or press the **BACK** button.

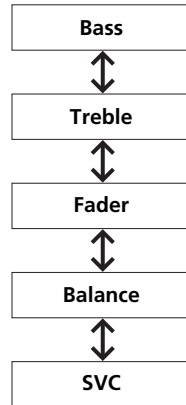
When the file size is large, it takes a while to be previewed.

Adjusting the Sound



1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **Audio Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Sound**, then press .

Rotate to scroll through the following choices:



Speed-sensitive
Volume
Compensation

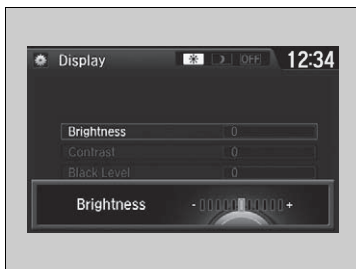
▶▶ Adjusting the Sound

The SVC has four modes: **Off**, **Low**, **Mid**, and **High**. SVC adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

Display Setup

You can change the brightness or colour theme of the audio/information screen.

■ Changing the Screen Brightness



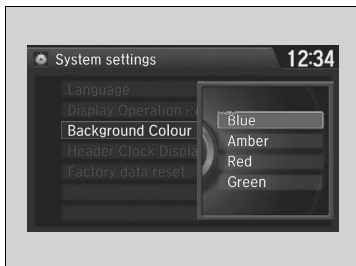
1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **System Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Brightness**, then press .
4. Rotate to adjust the setting, then press .

► Repeat the procedure to select **Display**.

▣ Changing the Screen Brightness

You can change the **Contrast** and **Black level** settings in the same manner.

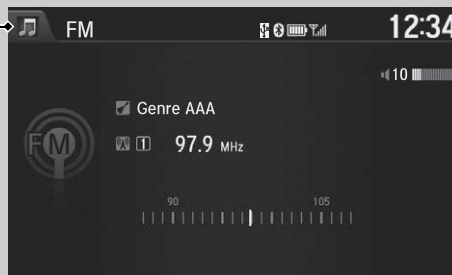
■ Changing the Screen's Colour Theme



1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **System Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Background Colour**, then press .
4. Rotate to select the setting you want, then press .

Playing AM/FM Radio

Audio/Information Screen



AM Button

FM Button

Press to select a band.

VOL/⏻ (Power/volume) Knob

Press to turn the audio system on and off.

Turn to adjust the volume.

BACK Button

Press to go back to the previous display or cancel a setting.

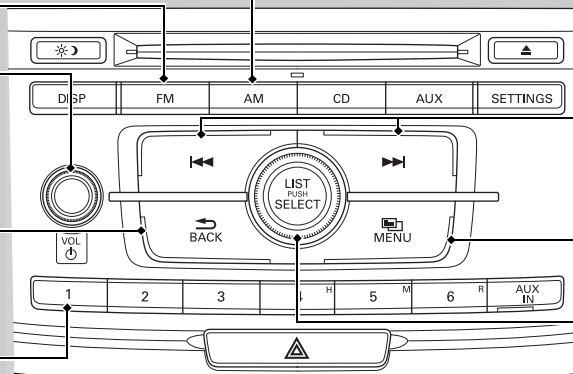
Preset Buttons (1-6)

To store a station:

Tune to the selected station.

Pick a preset button and hold it until you hear a beep.

To listen to a stored station, select a band, then press the preset button.



Seek/Skip Buttons

Press ◀◀ and ▶▶ to search up and down the selected band for a station with a strong signal.

MENU Button

Press to display the menu items.

Selector Knob

Turn to tune the radio frequency. Press and turn to select an item, then press to set your selection.

■ Station List

Lists the strongest stations on the selected band.

1. Press the **MENU** button while listening to a station.
2. Rotate  to select **Station List**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select the Station, then press .

FM mode

■ Automatic update

Automatically updates your available station.

FM or AM mode

■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.

1. Press the **MENU** button while listening to a station.
2. Rotate  to select **Station List**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **Refresh**, then press .

■ Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Scan**, then press .

To turn off scan, press  to select **Stop**, or press the **BACK** button.

▶▶ Playing AM/FM Radio

The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts.

Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.

Switching the Audio Mode

Press the **SOURCE** button on the steering wheel.

▶ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 219

You can also switch the mode by pressing the **MENU** button and selecting **Change Source** on the **MENU** screen.

You can store six AM stations and twelve FM stations into the preset memory.

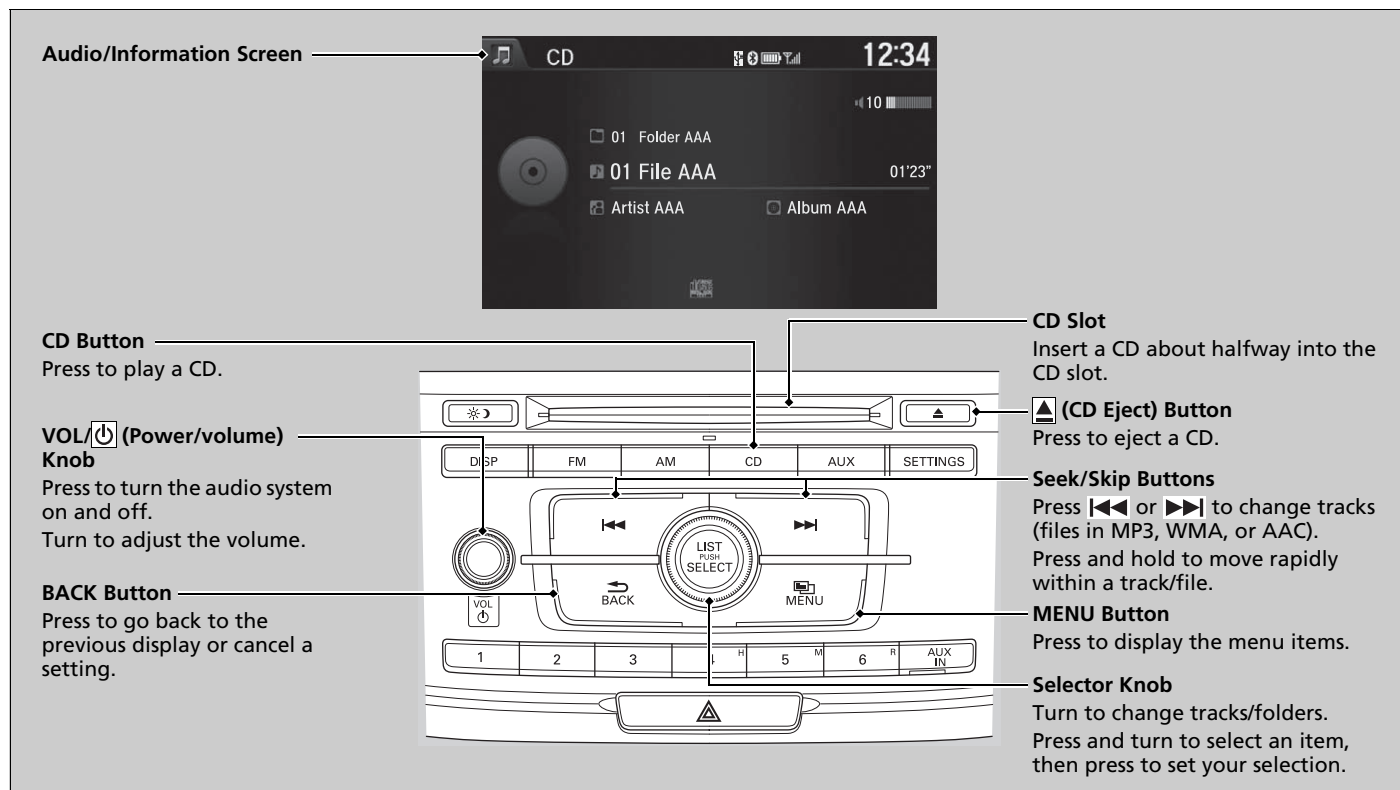
▶▶ Automatic update

You can turn the Automatic update feature on and off.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 308

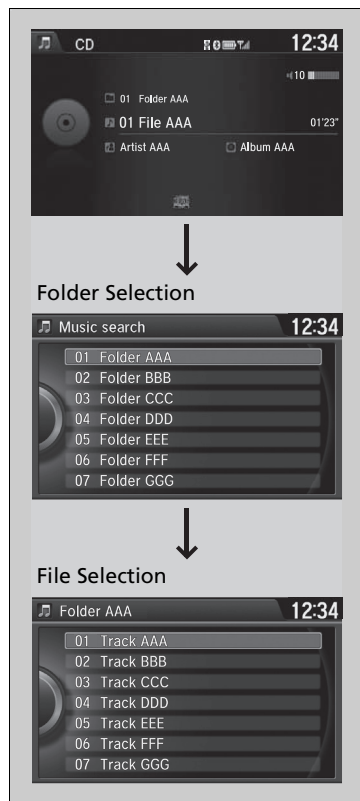
Playing a CD

Your audio system supports audio CDs, CD-Rs and CD-RWs in either MP3, WMA, or AAC*1 format. With the CD loaded, press the **CD** button.



*1:Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

How to Select a File from the Music Search List (MP3/WMA/AAC)



1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select **Music Search**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a folder.
4. Press to change the display to a list of files in that folder.
5. Rotate to select a file, then press .

▶▶ Playing a CD

NOTICE

Do not use CDs with adhesive labels. The label can cause the CD to jam in the unit.

WMA files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.

The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, then skips to the next file.

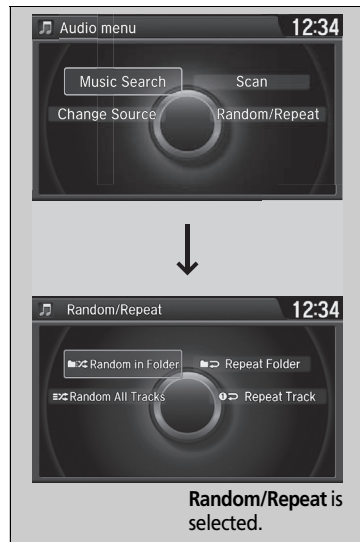
Text data appears on the display under the following circumstances:

- When you select a new folder, file, or track.
- When you change the audio mode to CD.
- When you insert a CD.

If you eject the CD but do not remove it from the slot, the system reloads the CD automatically after several seconds.

How to Select a Play Mode

You can select scan, repeat, and random modes when playing a track or file.



1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select **Scan** or **Random/Repeat**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a mode, then press .

To turn off a play mode

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select the mode you want to turn off, then press .

How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

Scan

Scan Folders (MP3/WMA/AAC): Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

Scan Tracks: Provides 10-second sampling of all tracks on the CD (all files in the current folder in MP3, WMA, or AAC).

Random/Repeat

Repeat Folder (MP3/WMA/AAC): Repeats all files in the current folder.

Repeat Track: Repeats the current track/file.

Random in Folder (MP3/WMA/AAC): Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

Random All Tracks: Plays all tracks/files in random order.

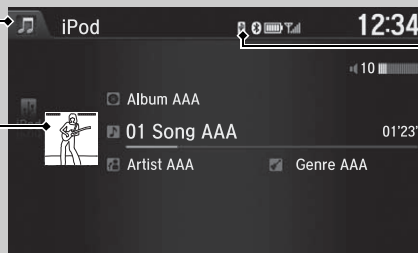
Playing an iPod

Connect the iPod using your dock connector to the USB Port, then press the **AUX** button.

➡ **USB Port(s)** P. 215

Audio/Information Screen

Album Art



USB Indicator

Appears when an iPod is connected.

AUX Button

Press to select iPod (if connected).

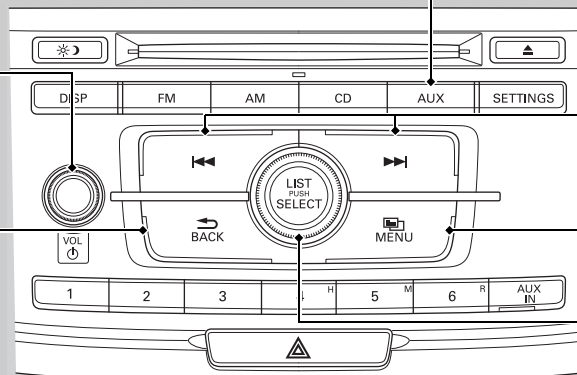
VOL/⏻ (Power/volume) Knob

Press to turn the audio system on and off.

Turn to adjust the volume.

BACK Button

Press to go back to the previous display or cancel a setting.



Seek/Skip Buttons

Press ◀◀ or ▶▶ to change songs. Press and hold to move rapidly within a song.

MENU Button







Press to display the menu items.

Selector Knob

Turn to change songs. Press and turn to select an item, then press to set your selection.

How to Select a Song from the Music Search List




1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Music Search**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select a menu.
4. Press  to display the items on that menu.
5. Rotate  to select an item, then press .

▶▶ Playing an iPod

Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

 **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 298

Continued

■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and shuffle modes when playing a file.



1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select **Shuffle/Repeat**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a mode, then press .

■ To turn off a play mode

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select the mode you want to turn off, then press .

▶▶ How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

Repeat Song: Repeats the current file.

Shuffle Album: Plays all available albums in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, or composers) in random order.

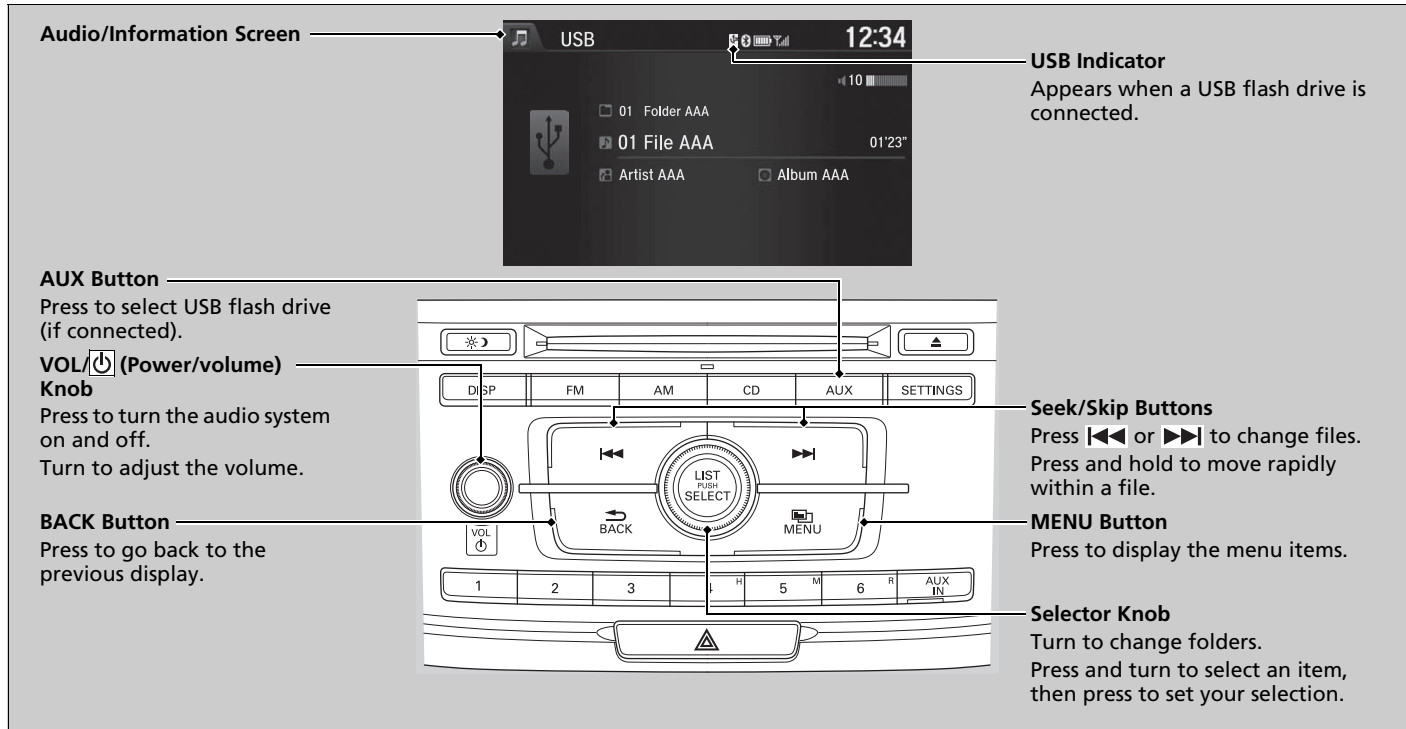
Shuffle All Songs: Plays all available files in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, or composers) in random order.

Playing a USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays sound files on a USB flash drive in either MP3, WMA or AAC*1 format.

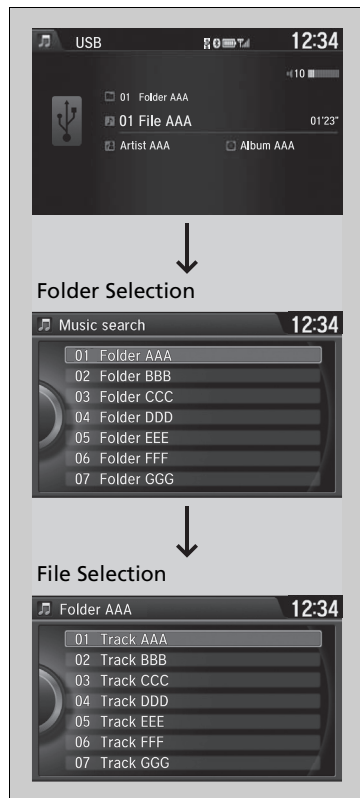
Connect your USB flash drive to the USB port, then press the **AUX** button.

🔌 **USB Port(s)** P. 215



*1: Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

How to Select a File from the Music Search List



1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select **Music Search**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a folder.
4. Press to change the display to a list of files in that folder.
5. Rotate to select a file, then press .

▶▶ Playing a USB Flash Drive

Use the recommended USB flash drives.

▶ **General Information on the Audio System**
P. 301

WMA files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.

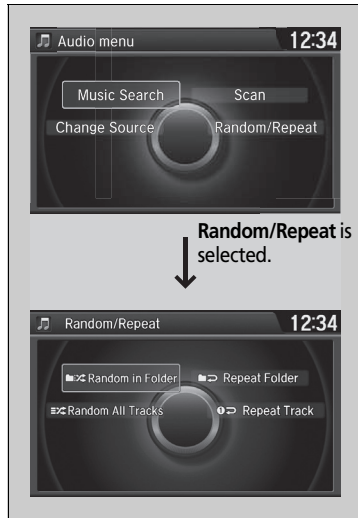
The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, and then skips to the next file.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

▶ **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 298

How to Select a Play Mode

You can select scan, repeat, and random modes when playing a file.



1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select **Scan** or **Random/Repeat**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a mode, then press .

■ To turn off a play mode

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select the mode you want to turn off, then press .

▶▶ How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

Scan

Scan Folders: Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

Scan Tracks: Provides 10-second sampling of all files in the current folder.

Random/Repeat

Repeat Folder: Repeats all files in the current folder.

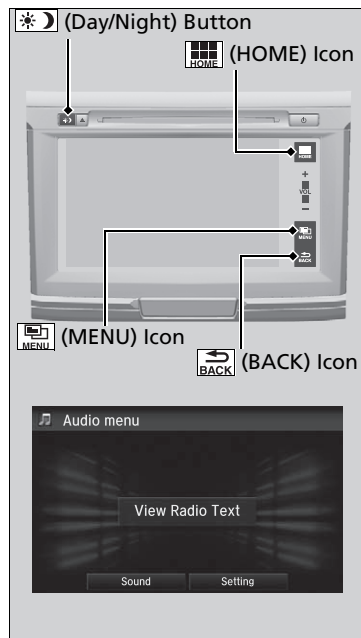
Repeat Track: Repeats the current file.

Random in Folder: Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

Random All Tracks: Plays all files in random order.

Models with display audio system

To use the audio system function, the ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY **I** or ON **II***1.



HOME : Select to go to the home screen.

Switching the Display P. 241

MENU : Select to display any mode.

The available modes include **Sound, View Radio Text, Music Search**, and play modes.

BACK : Select to go back to the previous display when it is displayed.

Day/Night button : Press to change the audio/information touch screen brightness.

Press **Day/Night button** once and select **-** or **+** to make an adjustment.

- ▶ Each time you press **Day/Night button**, the mode switches among the daytime mode, nighttime mode and Off mode.

Audio System Basic Operation

Audio Menu Items

- ▶ **Station List*** P. 261, 262
- ▶ **Music Search** P. 264, 267, 270, 273
- ▶ **Scan*** P. 261, 262, 265, 271,
- ▶ **Play Mode** P. 265, 268, 271

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

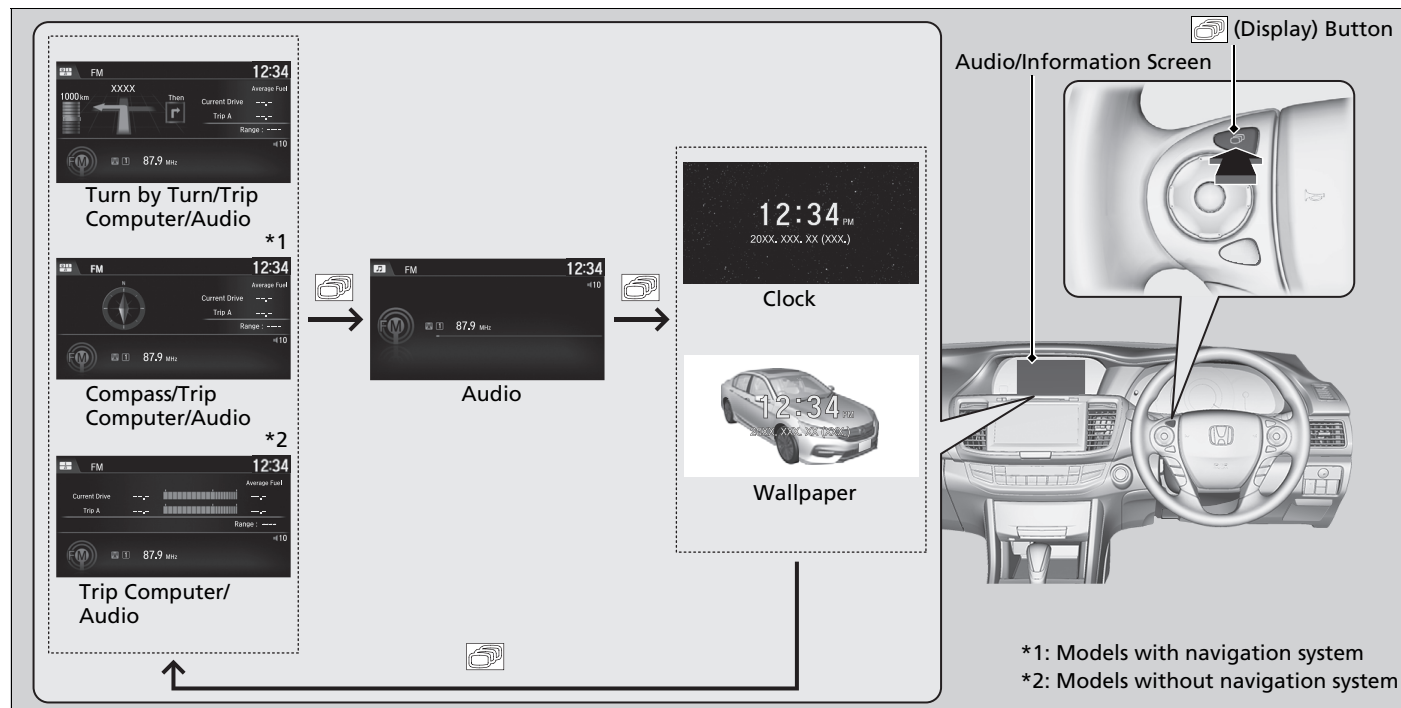
* Not available on all models

Audio/Information Screen

Displays the audio status, trip computer, compass/Turn by Turn*, and clock/wallpaper.

Switching the Display

Press the  (display) button to change the display.



* Not available on all models

■ Turn by Turn*

Displays the Turn by Turn screen.

■ Audio

Displays the current audio information.

■ Trip computer (Current Drive and Trip A)

Displays the range, average fuel economy, and distance travelled* of the current trip, as well as the average fuel economy and distance travelled* from your last trip.

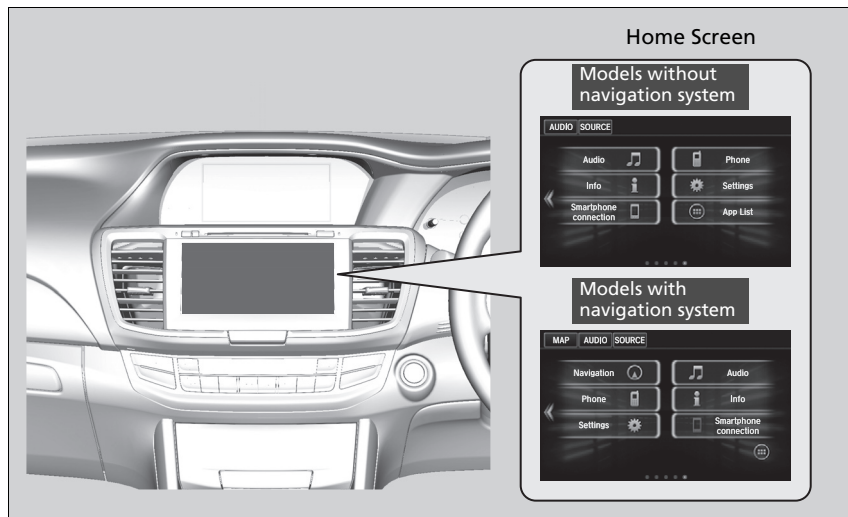
■ Clock/Wallpaper


Displays a clock screen.

Audio/Information Touch Screen

Displays the audio status and wallpaper. From this display, you can go to various setup options.

Switching the Display



Select  to go to the home screen.

Select **Phone**, **Info**, **Audio**, **Settings**, **Smartphone connection**, **App List**, or **Navigation***.

Phone

Displays the HFT information.

 **Hands-Free Telephone System** P. 343

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Info

Displays **Trip Computer**. To see all available information, **Trip Computer**, or **System/Device Information**, select  on the **Info Menu** screen.

Trip Computer:

- **Current Drive** tab: Displays the current trip information.
- **History of Trip A** tab: Displays information for the three previous drives. The information is stored every time you reset Trip A.
To delete the history manually, select **Delete History** on the **History of Trip A** tab. The confirmation message appears on the screen, then select **Yes**.

System/Device Information:

- **System Info**: Displays the software version of the audio system.
- **USB Info**: Displays the memory usage of the USB device.

■ Audio

Displays the current audio information.

■ Settings

Enters the customizing menu screen.

- **Customized Features** P. 308

■ Smartphone connection

Connects with your smartphone and some Apps on your smartphone can be used on the audio system.

📱 **Apple CarPlay** P. 289

📱 **Android Auto** P. 293

■ App List

Adds or removes App or Widget on the home screen.

📱 **Home Screen** P. 249

■ Navigation*


Displays the navigation screen.

📱 **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

* Not available on all models

■ Changing the Home Screen Icon Layout



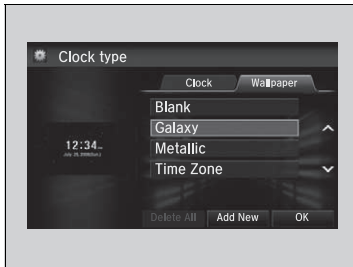
1. Select .
2. Select and hold an icon.
 - The screen switches to the customization screen.
3. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
4. Select **OK**.
 - The screen will return to the home screen.

Wallpaper Setup

You can change, store, and delete the wallpaper on the audio/information touch screen.

Import wallpaper

You can import up to five images, one at a time, for wallpaper from a USB flash drive.



1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port.
 USB Port(s) P. 215
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Clock/Info**.
4. Select **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then the **Wallpaper** tab.
5. Select **Add New**.
 The picture name is displayed on the list.
6. Select a desired picture.
 The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
7. Select **Start Import** to save the data.
 The display will return to the wallpaper list.


Wallpaper Setup

- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive's root directory. Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be fewer than 256 characters.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- The individual file size limit is 5 MB.
- The maximum image size is 4,096 × 4,096 pixels. If the image size is less than 800 × 480 pixels, the image is displayed in the middle of the screen with the extra area appearing in black.
- If the USB flash drive does not have any pictures, the **No files detected** message appears.

■ Select wallpaper

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Clock/Info**.
3. Select **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then the **Wallpaper** tab.
 - ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
4. Select a desired wallpaper.
 - ▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
 - ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
5. Select **Set**.
 - ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper list.

■ To view wallpaper once it is set

Press the  (display) button to change the audio/information screen until the wallpaper is displayed.

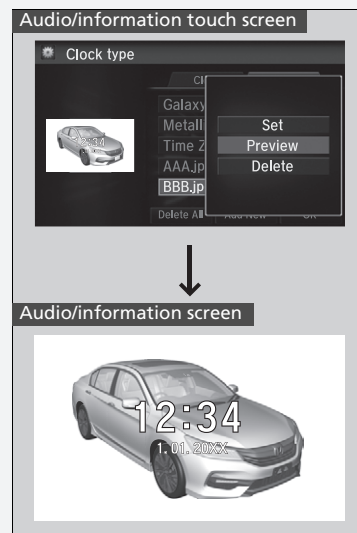
➡ **Switching the Display** P. 223


■ Delete wallpaper

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Clock/Info**.
3. Select **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then the **Wallpaper** tab.
 - ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
4. Select a wallpaper that you want to delete.
 - ▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
 - ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
5. Select **Delete**.
 - ▶ The confirmation message will appear.
6. Select **Yes** to delete completely.
 - ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper list.

▶▶ Wallpaper Setup

From the pop-up menu, select **Preview** to see a preview at full-size screen.



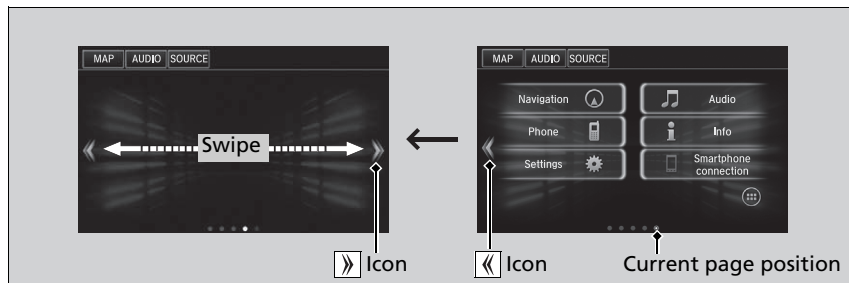
To go back to the previous screen, select **OK**, or .

When the file size is large, it takes a while to be previewed.

To delete all wallpapers you add, select **Delete All**, then **Yes**.

■ Home Screen

■ To change to a next screen



Selecting or , or swiping the screen left or right changes to the next screen.

▶▶ Home Screen

The home screen has 5 pages (fixed). You cannot add any more pages.

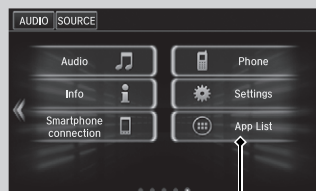
■ To use apps or widgets

Models with navigation system

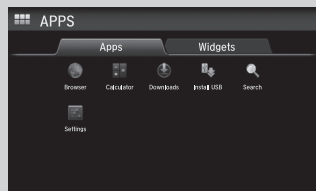



App List

Models without navigation system



App List



1. Select .
2. Select **App List**.
▶ The **APPS** screen appears.
3. Select the app or widget you want to use.

Preinstall app list:

- **Browser:** Displays the web browser utilized by smartphone and Wi-Fi connection.
- **Calculator:** Displays Calculator.
- **Downloads:** Displays the data downloaded from the web browser and so on.
- **Install USB:** Installs and updates apps stored in the USB flash drive.
- **Search:** Displays various retrieval screens.
- **Settings:** Displays the Android setting screen.

▶▶ To use apps or widgets

Select and hold a selected app or widget to add that app's or widget's shortcut on the home screen.

Pre-installed apps may not start up normally. If this occurs, you need to reset the system.

▶ **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 342


If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it may reset all the settings to their factory default.

▶ **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 342

In case those apps still do not startup normally even after **Factory Data Reset**, contact your dealer.

There is a possibility that a browser is shut down in the situation of the use. In that situation, the screen will return to before the browser startup.

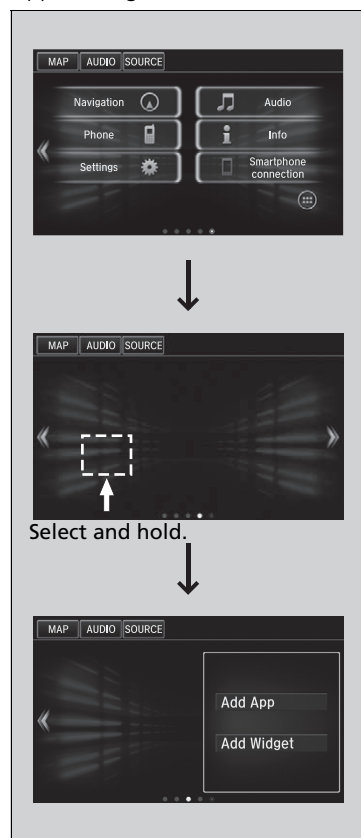
You can delete user installed apps by the following procedure.



1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Others** tab.
5. Select **Detail Information**.
6. Select an App that you want to delete.
7. Select **Delete**.

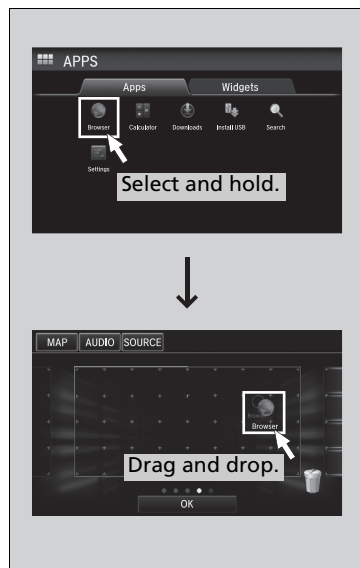
Pre-installed apps cannot be deleted.

■ To add app or widget icons on the home screen

App or widget icons can be added on the home screen.



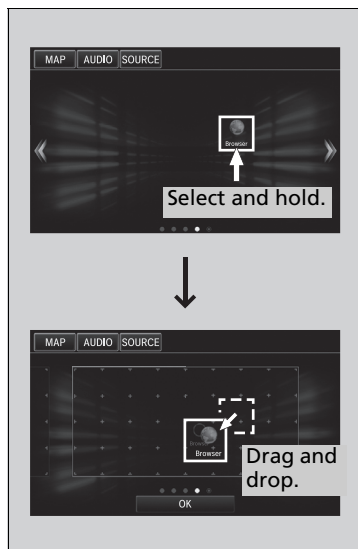
1. Select .
2. Select .
3. Select and hold empty space on the home screen.
▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
4. Select **Add App** or **Add Widget**.
▶ The **APPS** or **WIDGETS** screen appears.



5. Select and hold an app or widget icon you want to add.
 - ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
6. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
7. Select **OK**.
 - ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

■ To move icons on the home screen

You can change location on the home screen.



1. Select and hold an icon.
▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
2. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
3. Select **OK**.
▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

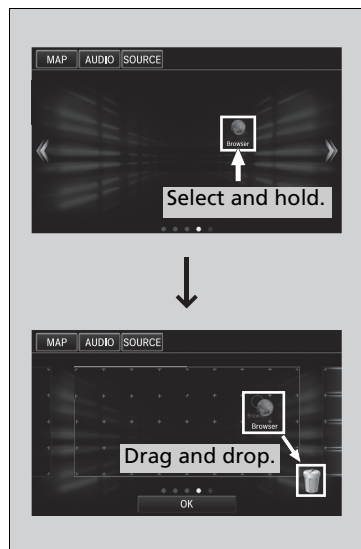
▶▶ To move icons on the home screen

You can also move the **Phone, Info, Audio, Settings, Smartphone connection, App List, and Navigation*** icons in the same manner.

* Not available on all models

■ To remove icons on the home screen

You can remove the icons on the home screen.



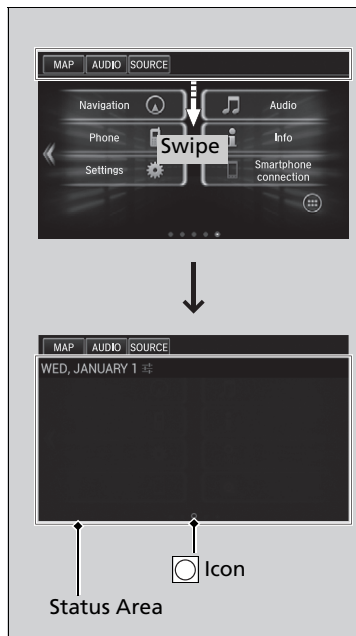
1. Select and hold an icon.
 - ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
2. Drag and drop the icon you want to remove to the trash icon.
 - ▶ The icon is removed from the home screen.
3. Select **OK**.
 - ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.



▶▶ To remove icons on the home screen

You cannot delete the **Phone, Info, Audio, Settings, Smartphone connection, App List, and Navigation** * icons.

Apps or widgets will not be deleted by deleting the icon on the home screen.

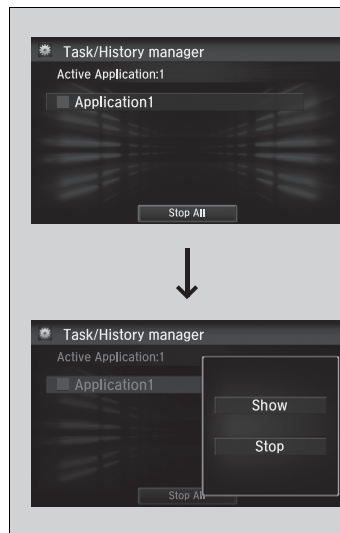
Status Area




1. Swipe the upper area of the screen.
▶ The status area appears.
2. Select an item to see the details.
3. Select  or swipe up the  icon to close the area.

■ Closing Apps

You can close specific apps running in the background on the system.



1. Select and hold .
2. Select an app you want to close.
3. Select **Stop**.
 - ▶ The display will return to the app list.

» Closing Apps

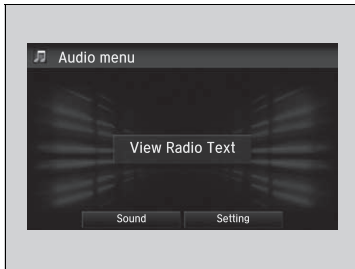
If you leave the apps used open in the background, some apps may stop operating properly next time using them.

If this happens close unused apps.

To close all apps on the system, select **Stop All**, then **Yes**.

You cannot close the app of Garmin*.

Adjusting the Sound



1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Audio**.
3. Select **Sound**.

Select the tabs to adjust the following choices:
BASS, TREBLE, FADER, BALANCE, SUBW*
 (Subwoofer), **SVC** (Speed-sensitive Volume Compensation).



Adjusting the Sound

The SVC has four modes: **Off, Low, Mid, and High**. SVC adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

You can also adjust the sound by the following procedure.

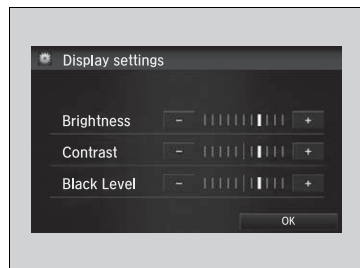
1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Audio**.
4. Select **Sound**.


* Not available on all models

Display Setup

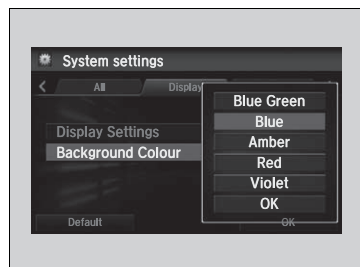
You can change the brightness or colour theme of the audio/information touch screen.


■ Changing the Screen Brightness



1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Display** tab.
5. Select **Display Settings**.
6. Select the setting you want.
7. Select **OK**.

■ Changing the Screen's Colour Theme

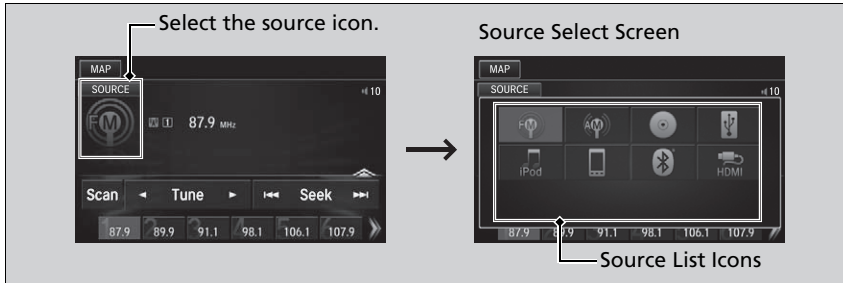


1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Display** tab.
5. Select **Background Colour**.
6. Select the setting you want.
7. Select **OK**.

✕ Changing the Screen Brightness

You can change the **Contrast** and **Black Level** settings in the same manner.

■ Selecting an Audio Source



Select the current source icon, then select an icon on the source list to switch the audio source.

■ Limitations for Manual Operation

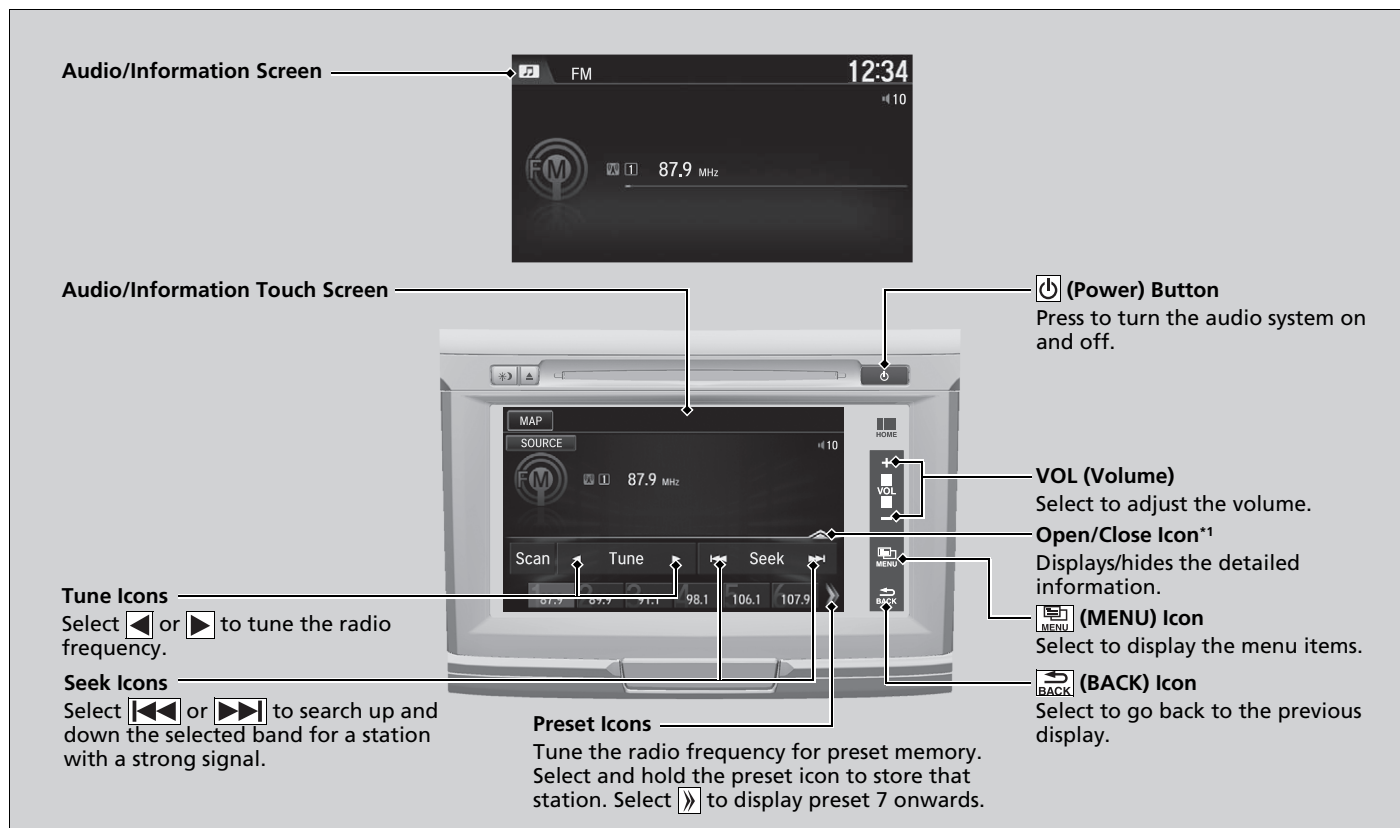
Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a greyed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

▶▶ Selecting an Audio Source

If you startup preinstalled audio apps, **AUDIO Apps** is displayed on the upper portion of the screen. These preinstalled apps cannot be displayed on the source select screen.

You can startup those audio apps from **AUDIO Apps**.

Playing AM/FM Radio



*1: Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

■ Preset Memory

To store a station:

1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Select and hold the preset number for the station you want to store.

You can also store a preset station by the following procedure.

1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Select the open/close icon to display a list.
3. Select **Preset** tab.
4. Select and hold the preset number for the station you want to store.

■ Station List *

Lists the strongest stations on the selected band.

1. Select the open/close icon to display a list.
2. Select **Station List** tab.
3. Select the station.


■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.

1. Select the open/close icon to display a list.
2. Select **Station List** tab.
3. Select **Refresh**.

■ Scan *

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.

To turn off scan, select **Cancel** or .


▶▶ Playing AM/FM Radio

The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts.

Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.

Switching the Audio Mode

Press the **SOURCE** button on the steering wheel or select **SOURCE** on the screen.

 **Audio Remote Controls** P. 219

You can store 6 AM stations and 12 FM stations into the preset memory.

■ Radio Data System (RDS)*

Provides text data information related to your selected RDS-capable FM station.

■ To find an RDS station from Station List

1. Select the open/close icon to display a list while listening to an FM station.
2. Select the **Station List** tab.
3. Select a station.

■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.

1. Select the open/close icon to display a list while listening to an FM station.
2. Select the **Station List** tab.
3. Select **Refresh**.


■ Radio text

Displays the radio text information of the selected RDS station.

1. Select .
2. Select **View Radio Text**.

■ Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.

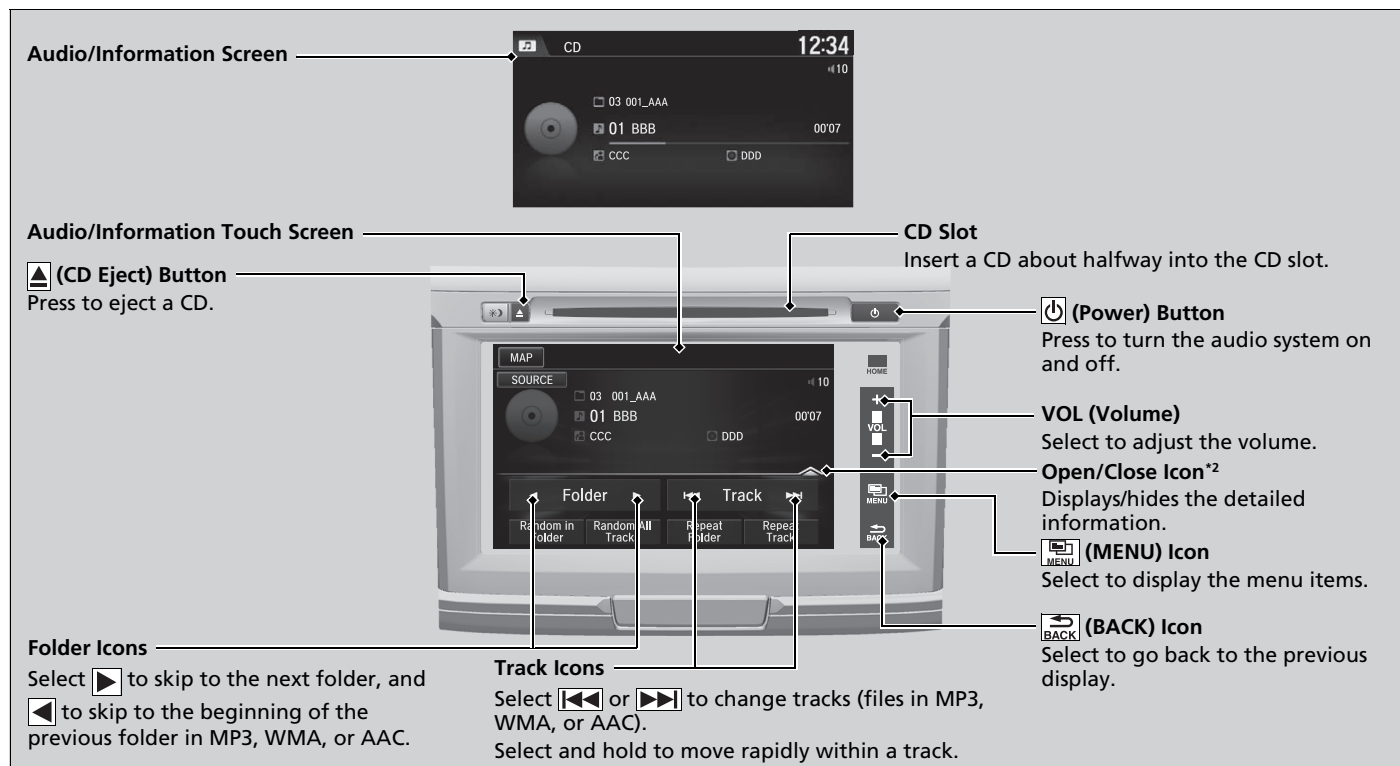
To turn off scan, select **Cancel** or .

▶▶ Radio Data System (RDS)*

When you select an RDS-capable FM station, the RDS automatically turns on, and the frequency display changes to the station name. However, when the signals of that station become weak, the display changes from the station name to the frequency.

Playing a CD

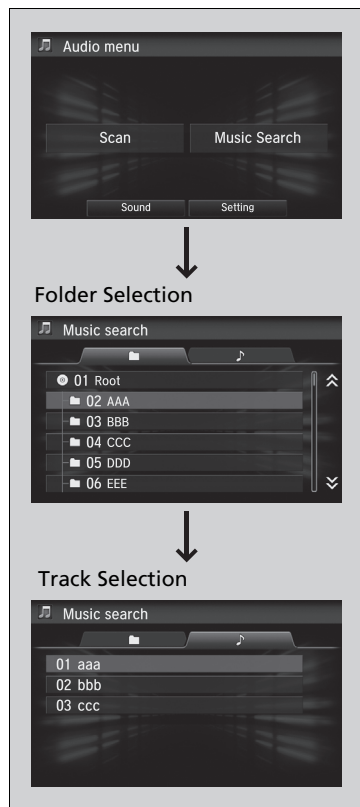
Your audio system supports audio CDs, CD-Rs and CD-RWs in either MP3, WMA, or AAC*1 format. With the CD loaded, select the CD mode.



*1:Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

*2:Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

How to Select a File from the Music Search List (MP3/WMA/AAC)



1. Select  and select **Music Search**.

2. Select a folder.

3. Select a track.

▶▶ Playing a CD

NOTICE

Do not use CDs with adhesive labels. The label can cause the CD to jam in the unit.

WMA files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.

The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, then skips to the next file.

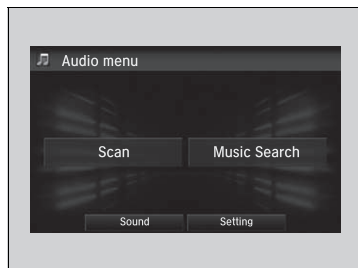
Text data appears on the display under the following circumstances:

- When you select a new folder, file, or track.
- When you change the audio mode to CD.
- When you insert a CD.

If you eject the CD but do not remove it from the slot, the system reloads the CD automatically after several seconds.

How to Select a Play Mode

You can select scan, repeat, and random modes when playing a track or file.

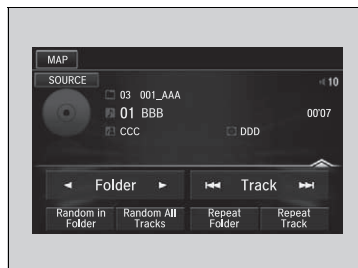


■ Scan

1. Select .
2. Select **Scan**.
3. Select a play mode.

■ Random/Repeat

Select a play mode.



■ To turn off a play mode

Select the mode you want to turn off.

How to Select a Play Mode

Play mode menu items

Scan

Scan Folders (MP3/WMA/AAC): Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

Scan Tracks: Provides 10-second sampling of all tracks on the CD (all files in the current folder in MP3, WMA, or AAC).

Random/Repeat

Repeat Folder (MP3/WMA/AAC): Repeats all files in the current folder.

Repeat/Repeat Track (MP3/WMA/AAC): Repeats the current track/file.

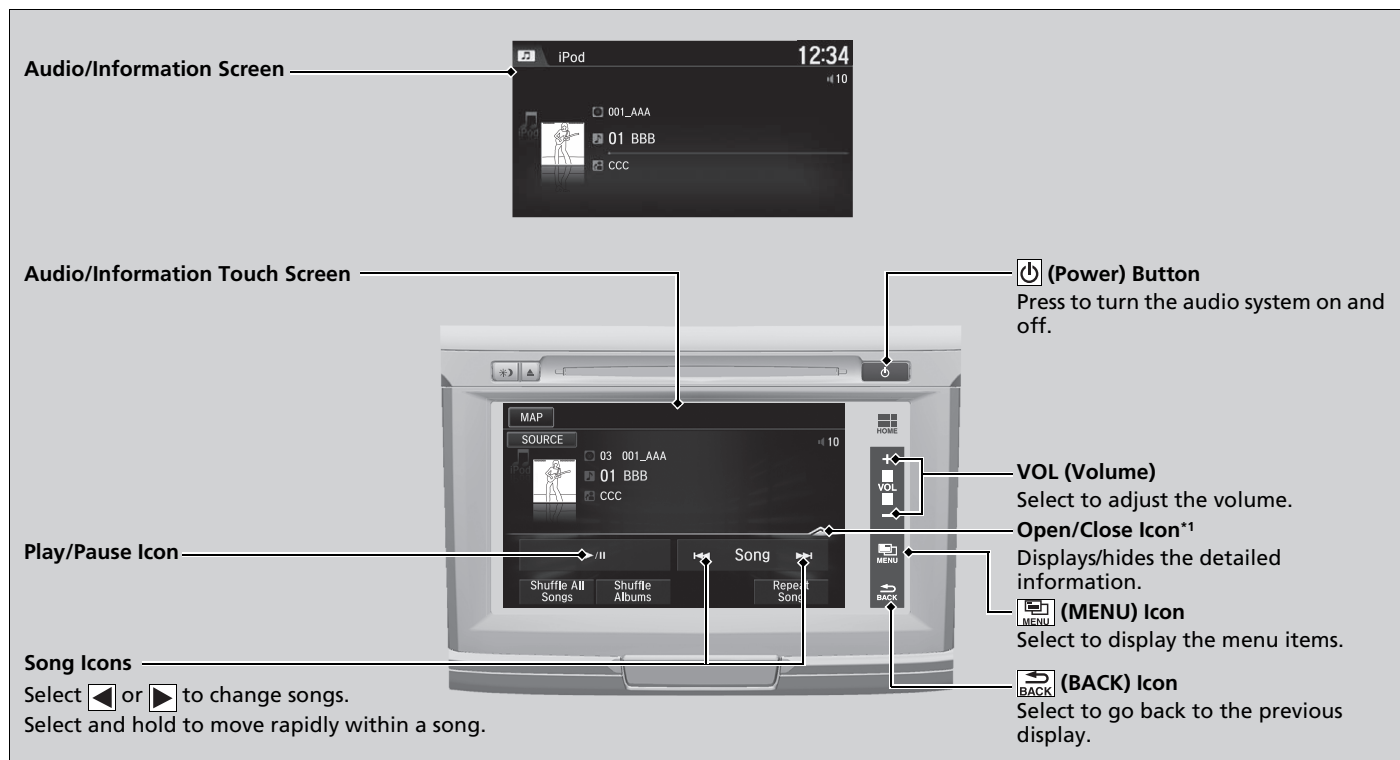
Random in Folder (MP3/WMA/AAC): Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

Random/Random All Tracks (MP3/WMA/AAC): Plays all tracks/files in random order.

Playing an iPod


Connect the iPod using your dock connector to the USB port, then select the iPod mode.

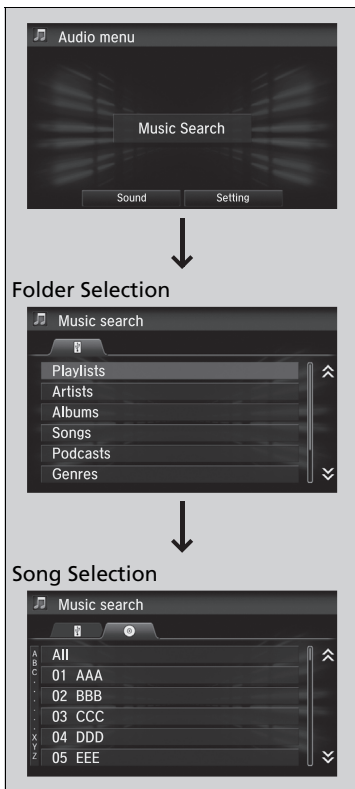
➡ **USB Port(s)** P. 215



*1: Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

How to Select a Song from the Music Search List


1. Select  and select **Music Search**.
2. Select the items on that menu.



How to Select a Song from the Music Search List

Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information touch screen.

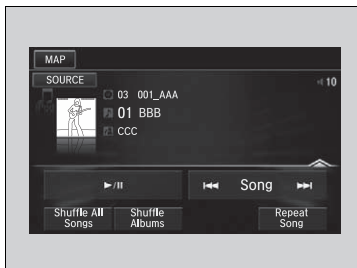
 **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 298

If you operate the music app on your iPhone/iPod while the phone is connected to the display audio system, you may no longer be able to operate the same app on the display audio. Reconnect the device if necessary.

If an iPhone is connected via Apple CarPlay, the iPod/USB source is unavailable and audio files on the phone can only be played within Apple CarPlay.

■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and shuffle modes when playing a file.
Select a play mode.



■ To turn off a play mode

Select the mode you want to turn off.

▶▶ How to Select a Play Mode

Play mode menu items

Repeat Song: Repeats the current file.

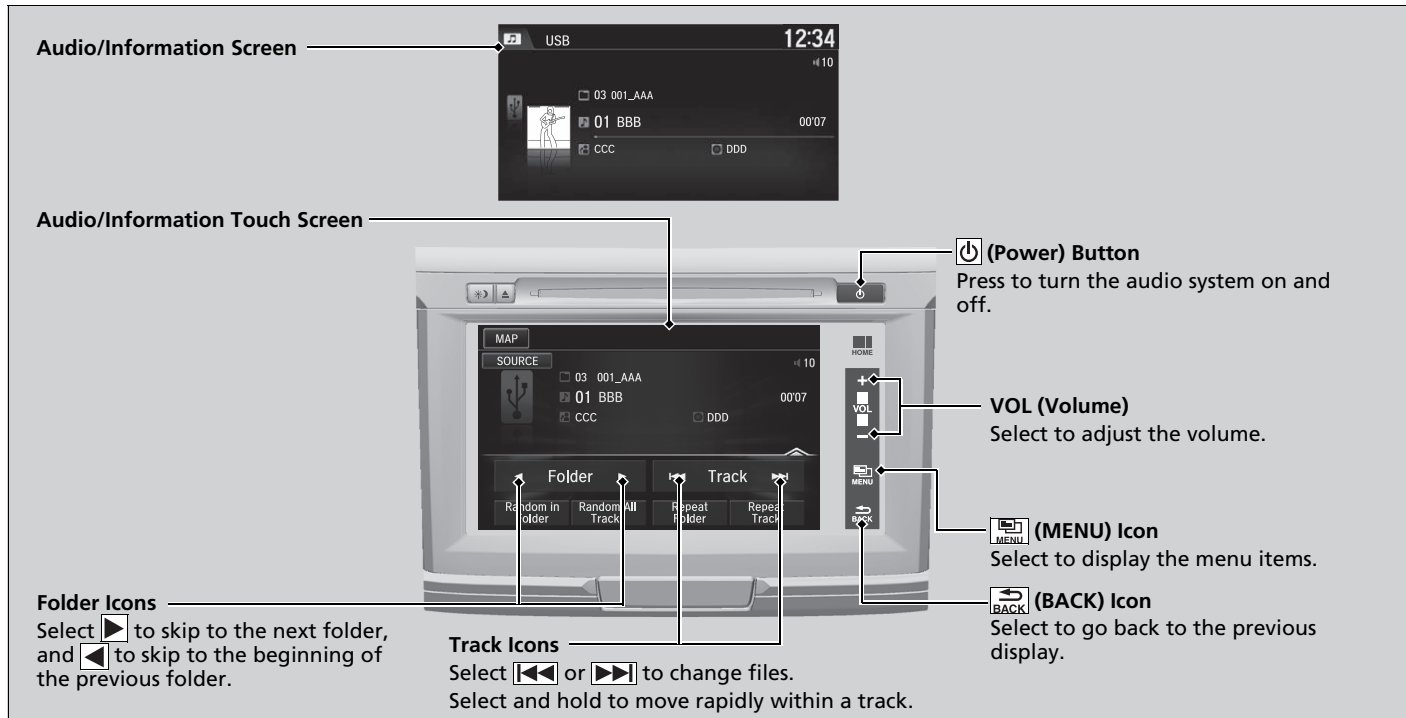
Shuffle Albums: Plays all available albums in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, podcasts, genres, composers, or audiobooks) in random order.

Shuffle All Songs: Plays all available files in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, podcasts, genres, composers, or audiobooks) in random order.

Playing a USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays sound files in either MP3, WMA or AAC*1 format, and video files* in MP4 format on a USB flash drive. Connect your USB flash drive to the USB port, then select the USB mode.

🔌 **USB Port(s)** P. 215

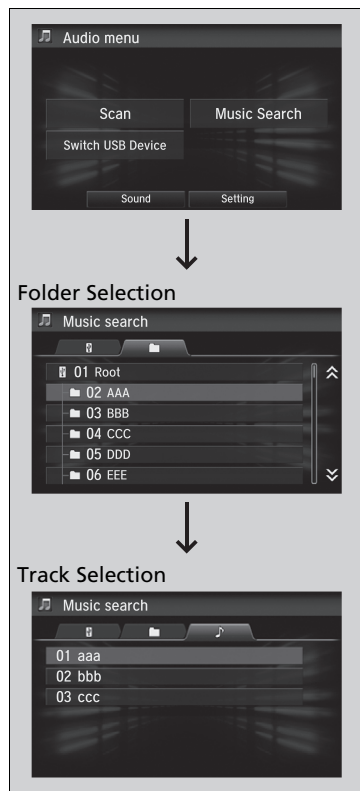



*1: Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

*2: Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

* Not available on all models

How to Select a File from the Music Search List




1. Select  and select **Music Search**.
2. Select **Music** or **Movie***.

3. Select a folder.

4. Select a track.

▶▶ Playing a USB Flash Drive

Use the recommended USB flash drives.

 **General Information on the Audio System**
P. 301

Files in WMA format protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.
The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, and then skips to the next file.

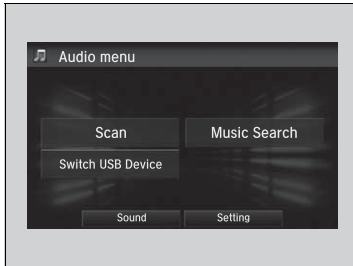
If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information touch screen.

 **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 298

Select **Switch USB Device** in the **Audio menu** to switch another USB device.

How to Select a Play Mode

You can select scan, repeat, and random modes when playing a track or file.

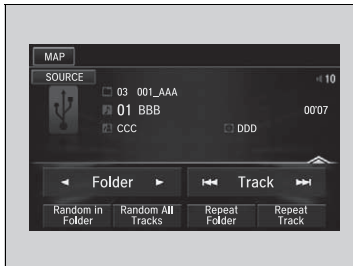


■ Scan

1. Select .
2. Select **Scan**.
3. Select a play mode.

■ Random/Repeat

Select a play mode.



■ To turn off a play mode

Select the mode you want to turn off.

How to Select a Play Mode

Play mode menu items

Scan

Scan Folders: Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

Scan Tracks: Provides 10-second sampling of all files in the current folder.

Random/Repeat

Repeat Folder: Repeats all files in the current folder.

Repeat Track: Repeats the current file.

Random in Folder: Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

Random All Tracks: Plays all files in random order.

When playing a video file:

Play/Pause: Pauses or resumes the movie.

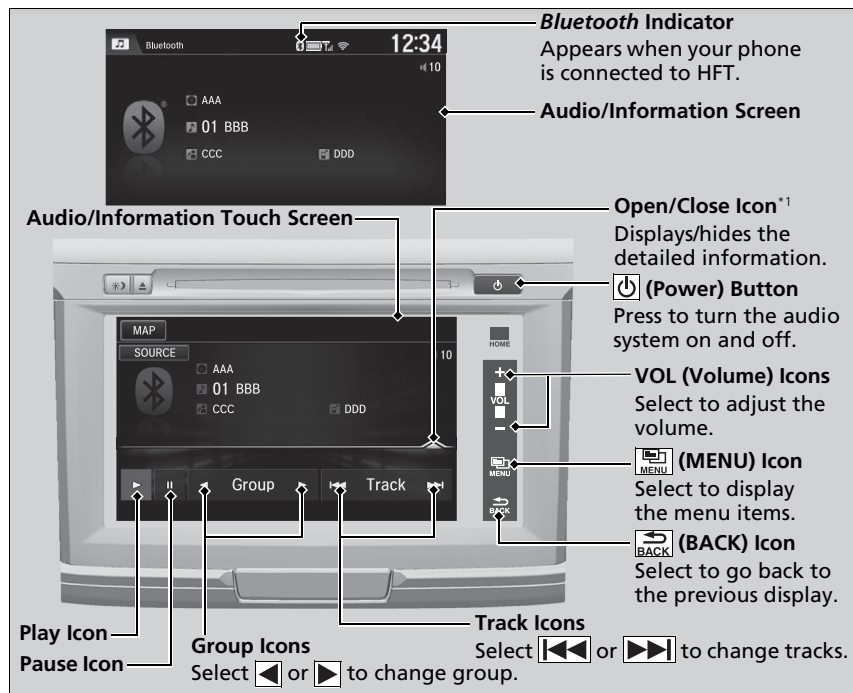
Stop: Stops the movie.

Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

🔧 **Phone Setup** P. 349



*1: Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

▶▶ Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Not all *Bluetooth*-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible. To check if your phone is compatible, ask a dealer.

It may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

Only one phone can be used with HFT at a time. When there are more than two paired phones in the vehicle, the first paired phone the system finds is automatically linked.

The connected phone for *Bluetooth*® Audio can be different.

If more than one phone is paired to the HFT system, there may be a delay before the system begins to play.

In some cases, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.

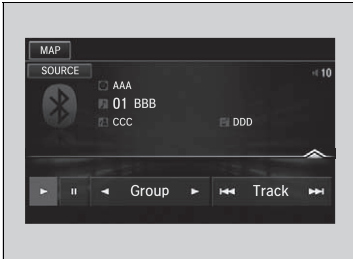
A **No Device Connected** message may be displayed if:

- The phone is not linked to HFT.
- The phone is not turned on.
- The phone is not in the vehicle.
- An incompatible phone is connected.

The following functions may not be available on some devices:

- Pause function
- Group selection

To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files



1. Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to the system.

▶ **Phone Setup** P. 349

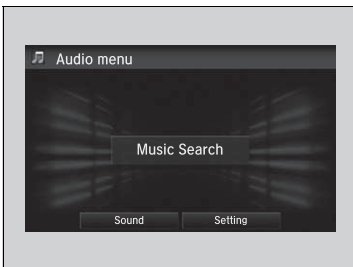
2. Select the *Bluetooth*® Audio mode.

If the phone is not recognized, another HFT-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*® Audio, may already be connected.

■ To pause or resume a file

Select the play icon or pause icon.

Searching for Music



1. Select .


2. Select **Music Search**.

3. Select a search category (e.g., Albums).

4. Select an item.

▶ The selection begins playing.

▶▶ Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

If a phone is currently connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, *Bluetooth*® Audio from that phone is unavailable. However, a second previously paired phone can stream *Bluetooth*® Audio by selecting **Connect**  from the **Bluetooth Device List**.

▶ **Phone Setup** P. 349

▶▶ To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

You can change the connected phone in the *Bluetooth*® settings on the **Audio menu** screen by the following procedure.

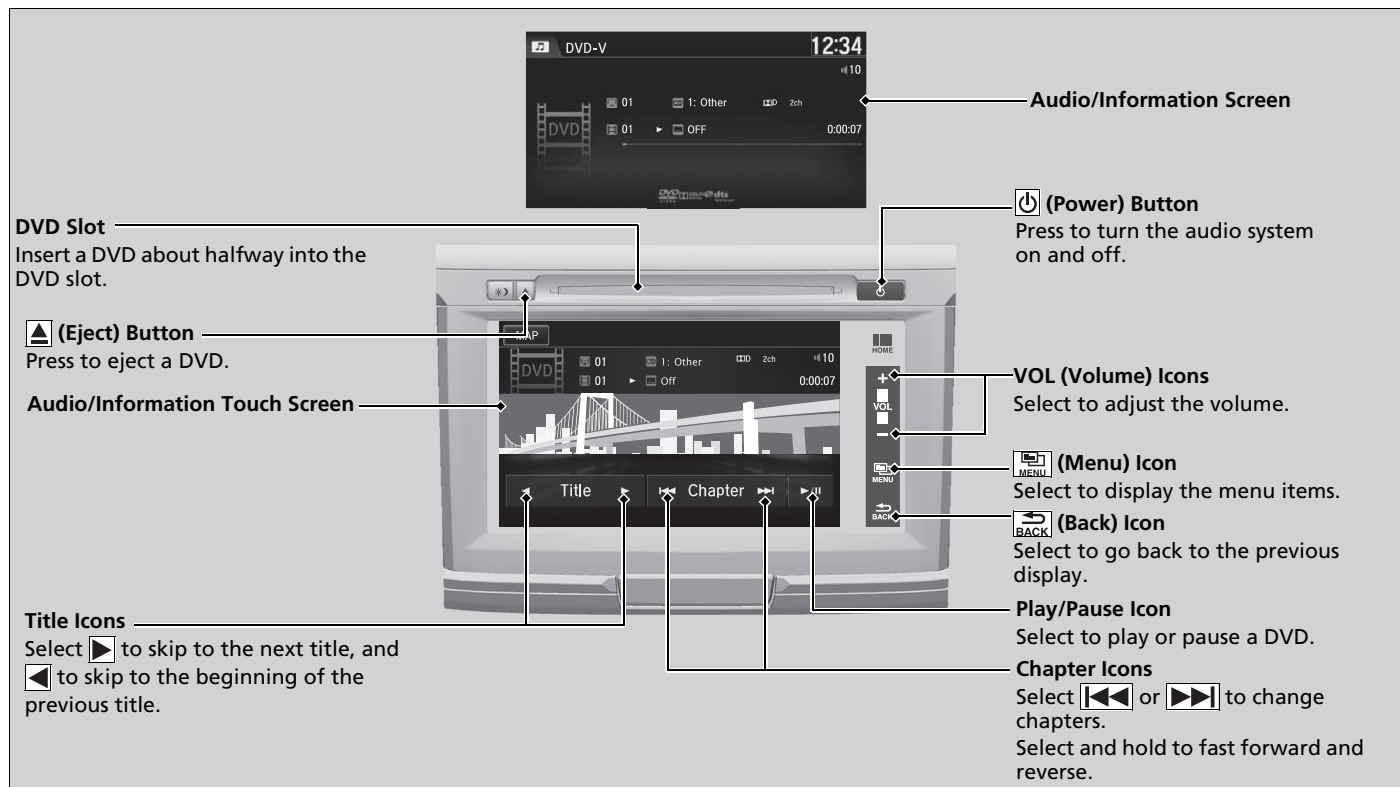
1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.

▶▶ Searching for Music

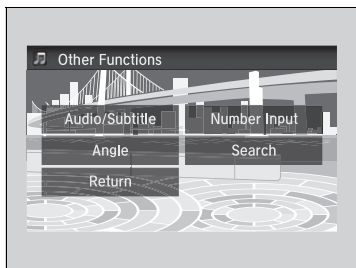
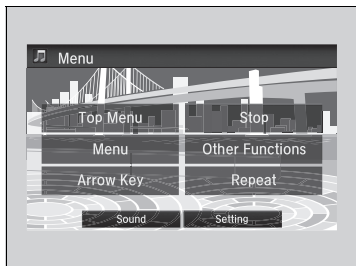
Depending on the *Bluetooth* device you connect, some or all of the lists may not be displayed.


Playing a DVD *

Your audio/video system supports DVD-VIDEO, and DVD-VR. With the DVD loaded, select DVD mode.



DVD Menu



Select  while a DVD is playing.

- ▶ Select **Other Function** to display additional menu entries.

▶▶ Playing a DVD*

You can change the settings for DVD function.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 308

You can confirm the playable disc types.

▶ **Playable Disc Types** P. 278

You can confirm the recommended discs.

▶ **Recommended Discs** P. 280

The following items are available on the front screen:

- **Top Menu:** Displays the top menu.
- **Menu:** Displays the menu.
- **Arrow Key:** Displays the arrow icons to select items.
- **Stop:** Stop the playback.
- **Repeat:** Repeats the current title/chapter.
- **Audio/Subtitle:** Selects the language of the DVD audio and DVD subtitle.
- **Number Input** (only for DVD-V): Enters a number of a title or chapter to skip.
- **Search:** Skips to a title or chapter on the screen.
- **Return** (only for DVD-V): Hides the DVD menu.
- **Change Order** (only for DVD-VR): Changes the order of the program or playlist.
- **Audio Channel:** Changes the audio channel.
- **Angle:** Changes the angle.

■ Playable Discs

The discs that come with these labels can be played in your vehicle's audio/video system.

Also look for the region code of , ,  or ALL on the package or jacket on the disc.

DVD-RAMs are not playable in this unit.

The disc packages or jackets should have one of these marks.



Also includes:



▶▶ Playable Discs

This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights.


Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorised by Rovi Corporation, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorised by Rovi Corporation. Reverse engineering and disassembly are prohibited.

For DTS patents, see <http://patents.dts.com>.
Manufactured under license from DTS Licensing Limited. DTS, the Symbol, & DTS and the Symbol together are registered trademarks, and DTS 2.0 Channel is trademark of DTS, Inc. © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

■ Playable Disc Types

This unit is compatible with NTSC and PAL colour TV systems. Use discs that are labelled as NTSC or PAL. Capability of this unit to play discs other than NTSC or PAL TV system (SECAM) is not guaranteed.










Type and symbol of playable disc	Size/Playable Side	Max. play time
	12 cm/single-sided	Single layer
		Dual layer
	12 cm/Double-sided	Single layer
		Dual layer
		<MPEG 2 standard>
		133 min.
		242 min.
		266 min.
		484 min.

▶▶ Playable Disc Types

Some discs may not function as expected. Also read the instruction book which comes with the disc.

Disc Symbols

The following symbols appear on DVD discs or packing.

Symbol	Description
	Number of available soundtracks
	Number of available subtitles
	Number of angles
	Selectable screen aspect ratios (TV screen's horizontal to vertical ratio)
	16:9: Widescreen 4:3: Normal screen
	Selectable region codes ALL: Region free A number: Particular region code
	
	
	

■ Playable Disc Region Codes

Some DVD discs have a region code such as **2**, **3**, **4** and this number shows the region the disc can be played in. Playable disc regions are restricted depending on the map coverage areas. If you play other discs, **Check Disc** message is displayed. In addition, some discs that do not have a region code number may still have a region restriction and may not be played on this unit.

▶▶ Playable Disc Types

For Dual Disc (double sided disc with both a DVD layer and a non-DVD layer), the DVD layer can be played as a Video DVD if the disc has the mark displayed on the right. Discs without the mark and the non-DVD layer are not supported, and operation cannot be guaranteed. In addition, the discs may be scratched when they are inserted or ejected.



■ Recommended Discs

Compression video not supported, Compression audio specification are following.

Media		CD-R/CD-RW DVD-R/DVD-RW DVD+R/DVD+RW DVD-R (DL)/DVD+R (DL)		
Disc format		CD-ROM Mode1 CD-ROM Mode2 Form1 DVD-ROM		
File format		ISO9660 Level 1 & 2 Romeo, Joliet UDF Bridge/UDF1.5/UDF2.0		
Audio format		MP3	WMA	AAC
Audio format specification		MPEG-1 AUDIO LAYER3 MPEG-2 AUDIO LAYER3 MPEG-2.5 AUDIO LAYER3	Microsoft Windows Media Audio Ver7,8,9 Lossless, Voice and Professional for Audio Ver9 are not supported.	MPEG4-AAC m4a files created by iTunes (Apple)
Sampling frequency [kHz]		MPEG-1: 32/44.1/48 MPEG-2: 16/22.05/24 MPEG-2.5: 8/11.025/12	8/11.025/16/22.05/32/44/44.1/48	11.025/16/22.05/24/32/44.1/48
Bit rate [kbps]		MPEG1: 32/40/48/56/64/80/96/112/128/160/192/224/256/320 MPEG2: 8/16/24/32/40/48/56/64/80/96/112/128/144/160 MPEG2.5: 8/16/24/32/40/48/56/64/80/96/112/128/144/160	5/6/8/10/12/16/20/22/32/40/48/64/80/96/128/160/192/256/320	8/16/20/24/28/32/40/48/56/64/80/96/112/128/160/192/224/256/320
File extension*1		.mp3/.MP3	.wma/.WMA	.m4a/.M4A

*1: A mixed-case file extensions are playable.

▶▶ Recommended Discs

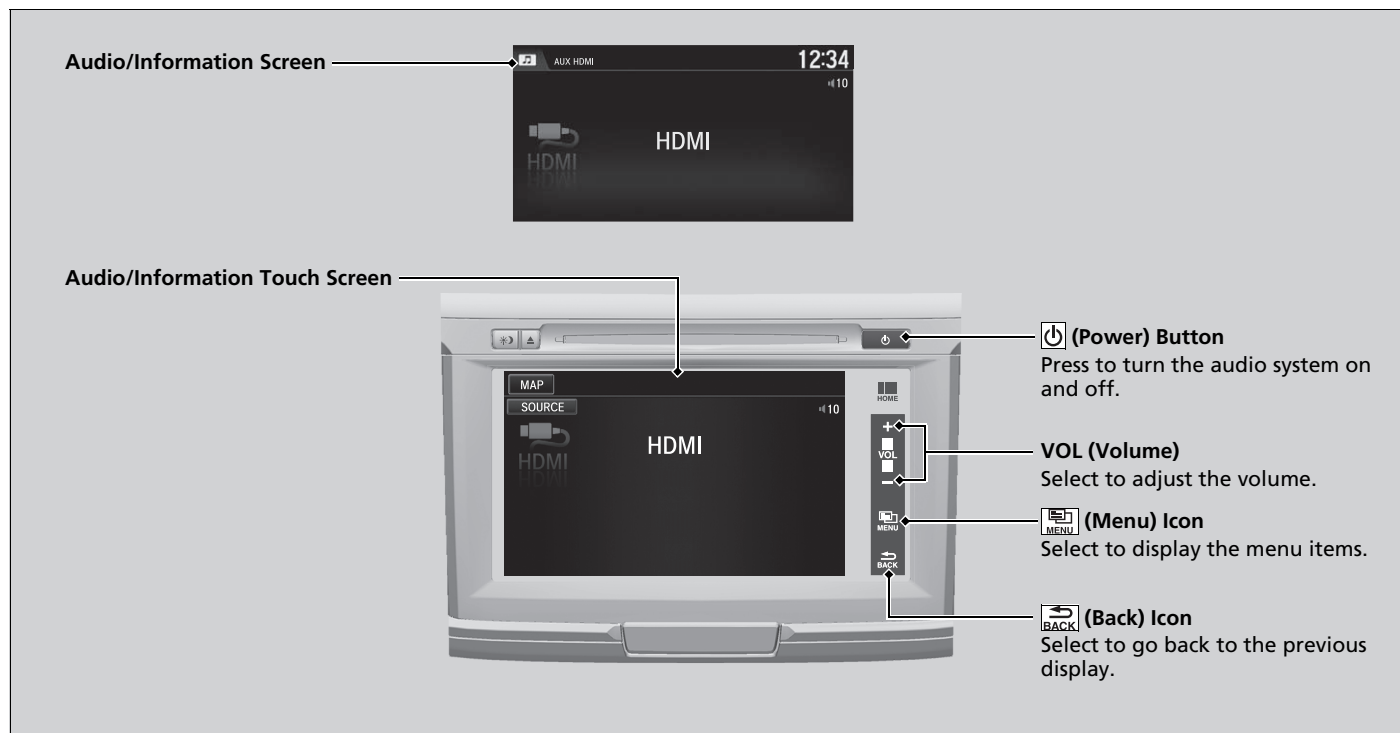
Large files may take longer to change audio or fast-forward/fast-rewind.

Some CD-R/CD-RW/DVD-R/DVD-RW may not be read due to the discs' encoding properties. Use discs recorded with disc-at-once or track-at-once for this unit.

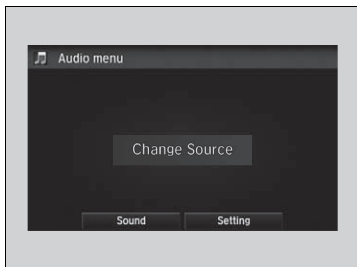
Playing a Video Using the HDMI™


Your audio system allows you to play videos from an HDMI™-compatible device.
Connect the device, using an HDMI™ cable, then select the HDMI™ mode.

 **HDMI™ Port** P. 216



■ Changing the Screen Aspect



1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Aspect Ratio Adjustment**.
4. Select the setting you want.
5. Select **OK**.

▶▶ Playing a Video Using the HDMI™

This feature is limited while driving. To play videos, stop your vehicle and apply the parking brake.

Switching the audio mode
You can switch the mode by selecting **Change Source** on the screen.

Smartphone Connection

Some of your smartphone apps can be displayed and operated on the audio/information touch screen when the phone is connected to the audio system. You can connect your phone using a cable.

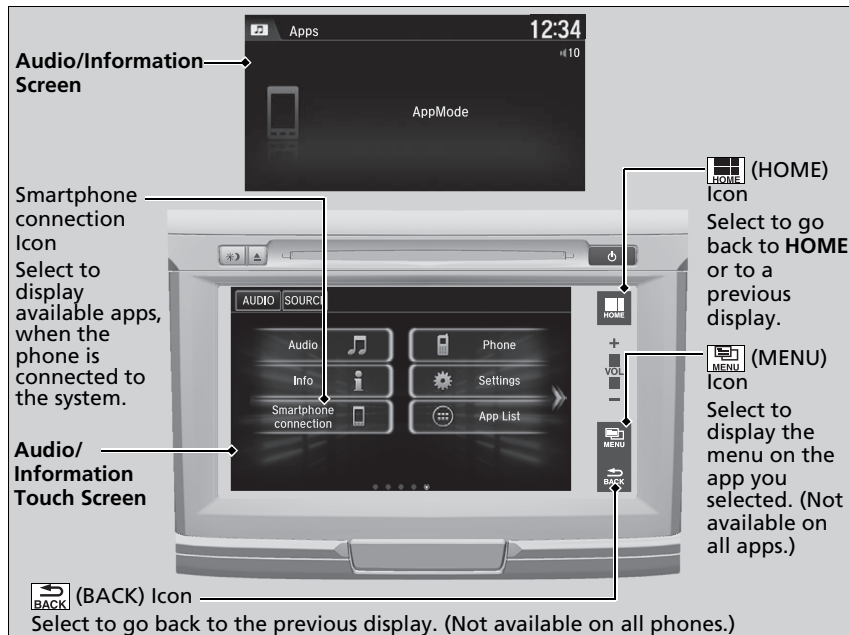
➤ **Connecting Your iPhone** P. 284

Except iPhone

➤ **Connecting Your Smartphone** P. 285

To use smartphone connection, you need to first pair your smartphone to the audio system via *Bluetooth*®.

➤ **Phone Setup** P. 349



Continued

Smartphone Connection

Park in a safe place before connecting your phone and while operating the displayed apps.

Not all phones are compatible with the system. The system does not display all the available apps on smartphone, and some apps need to be preinstalled. Ask a dealer for details.

You need to switch the *Bluetooth* connection to your smartphone if another electronic device is connected.

➤ **To change the currently paired phone**
P. 350

The following may vary by phone type:

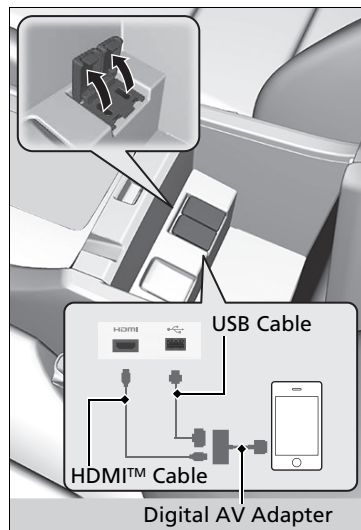
- Connection methods.
- Apps that can be operated on the screen.
- How to connect a smartphone to the system.
- Display response time/update time.

We do not support every app operation on the audio system.

Ask the app provider for any queries on the app's features.

Do not get drawn into the display while operating a vehicle.

■ Connecting Your iPhone



1. Connect your phone to the display audio via *Bluetooth®*.

▶ **Phone Setup** P. 349

2. Plug in the digital AV adapter to the HDMI™ jack.
3. Connect the digital AV adapter to your iPhone.
4. Select **Smartphone connection** to display the available smartphone apps on the audio/information touch screen.
 - ▶ You may need to operate from the phone.
5. Select an app you want to operate from the audio/information touch screen.
 - ▶ To go back to the previous screen, select



▶ Connecting Your iPhone

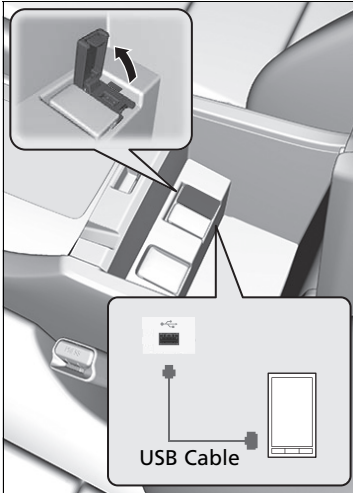
Make sure to plug in the digital AV adapter to the HDMI™ jack first. If not, smartphone connection may not work properly.


To recharge your phone, connect it to the USB jack, too.

Contact a dealer for the digital AV adapter or HDMI™ cable purchasing information.

Except iPhone

Connecting Your Smartphone



1. Connect your phone to the display audio via *Bluetooth*®.
 ▶ **Phone Setup** P. 349
2. Plug in your phone to the USB jack.
 ▶ You may need to operate from the phone.
3. Select **Smartphone connection** to display the available smartphone apps on the audio/information touch screen.
4. Select an app you want to operate from the audio/information touch screen.
 ▶ To go back to the previous screen, select .

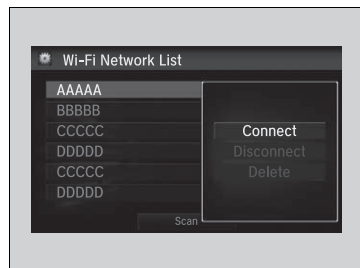
Connecting Your Smartphone



The phone is rechargeable while being connected to the USB jack. However, if the phone is overloaded with many operational tasks, the battery level may get lowered.

Wi-Fi Connection *

You can connect the display audio to the Internet using Wi-Fi and browse websites or use online services on the audio/information touch screen. If your phone has mobile hotspot capabilities, the system can be tethered to the phone. Use the following steps to setup.

Wi-Fi mode (setting for the first time)




1. Select **Settings** from the home screen.
2. Select **Bluetooth/Wi-Fi**.
 - ▶ Open the **Wi-Fi** tab.
3. Select **Wi-Fi On/Off Status**, then **On**.
4. Select **Wi-Fi Network List**.
 - ▶ Make sure your phone's Wi-Fi setting is in access point (tethering) mode.
 - ▶ Select the phone you want to connect to the system.
 - ▶ If you do not find the phone you want to connect in the list, select **Scan**.
5. Select **Connect**.
 - ▶ Enter a password set for your phone, and select **OK**.
 - ▶ When the connection is successful, the  icon is displayed on the list.
6. Select  to go back to the home screen.

Wi-Fi mode (setting for the first time)

You cannot go through the setting procedure while a vehicle is moving. Park in a safe place to setup the Wi-Fi connection.

Some mobile phone carriers charge for tethering and smartphone data use. Check your phone's data subscription package.

Check your phone manual to find out if the phone has Wi-Fi connectivity.

You can confirm whether Wi-Fi connection is on or off with the  icon on **Wi-Fi Network List**. Transmission speed and others will not be displayed on this screen.

■ Wi-Fi mode (after the initial setting has been done)


Make sure your phone's Wi-Fi setting is in access point (tethering) mode.

» Wi-Fi mode (after the initial setting has been done)

iPhone users

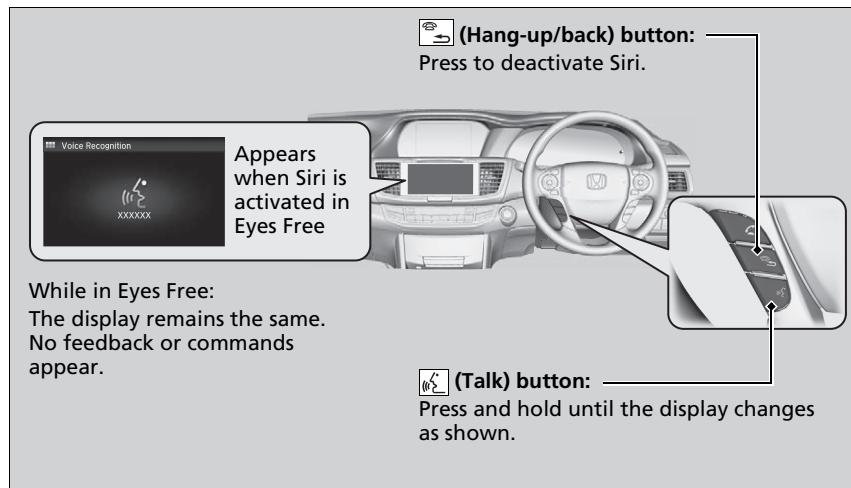
You may need to go through an initial setup for Wi-Fi connection again after you boot your phone.

Siri Eyes Free

You can talk to Siri using the  (Talk) button on the steering wheel when your iPhone is paired to Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

➡ **Phone Setup** P. 349

■ Using Siri Eyes Free



▶ Siri Eyes Free

Siri is a trademark of Apple Inc.

Check Apple Inc, website for features available for Siri.

When operating the vehicle, only use Siri through the Talk button.

▶ Using Siri Eyes Free

Some commands work only on specific phone features or apps.

Apple CarPlay

If you connect an Apple CarPlay-compatible iPhone to the system via USB, you can use the Display Audio screen, instead of the iPhone display, to make a phone call, listen to music, view maps (navigation), and access messages.

📶 **USB Port(s)** P. 215

📶 Apple CarPlay

Only iPhone5 or newer versions with iOS 8.4 or later are compatible with Apple CarPlay.

Park in a safe place before connecting your iPhone to Apple CarPlay and when launching any compatible apps.

To use Apple CarPlay, connect the USB cable to the front USB port. The USB port located in the centre console storage will not enable Apple CarPlay operation.

📶 **USB Port(s)** P. 215

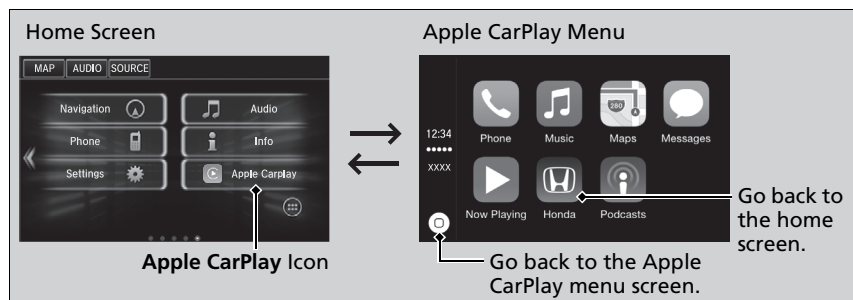
To directly access the Apple CarPlay phone function, select **Phone** on the home screen. While connected to Apple CarPlay, calls are only made through Apple CarPlay. If you want to make a call with Hands-Free Telephone, turn Apple CarPlay OFF or detach the USB cable from your iPhone.

📶 **Setting Up Apple CarPlay** P. 291

When your iPhone is connected to Apple CarPlay, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*® Audio or Hands-Free Telephone System. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth*® while Apple CarPlay is connected.

📶 **Phone Setup** P. 349

■ Apple CarPlay Menu



■ Phone

Access the contact list, make phone calls, or listen to voice mail.

■ Messages

Check and reply to text messages, or have messages read to you.

■ Music

Play music stored on your iPhone.

■ Maps

Display Apple CarPlay map and use the navigation function just as you would on your iPhone.

Models with navigation system

Only one navigation system (pre-installed navigation or Apple CarPlay) can give directions at a time. When you are using one system, directions to any prior destination set on the other system will be cancelled, and the system you are currently using will direct you to your destination.

▶ Apple CarPlay

For details on countries and regions where Apple CarPlay is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Apple homepage.

Apple CarPlay Operating Requirements & Limitations

Apple CarPlay requires a compatible iPhone with an active mobile connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

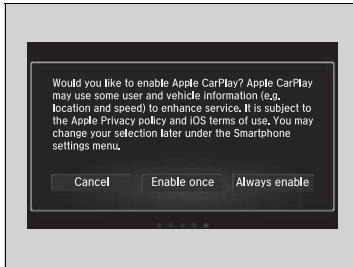
Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Apple CarPlay functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Apple CarPlay functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Apple CarPlay performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Apple CarPlay. Refer to the Apple homepage for information on compatible apps.

■ Setting Up Apple CarPlay

After you have connected your iPhone to the system via USB, use the following procedure to set up Apple CarPlay. Use of Apple CarPlay will result in the transmission of certain user and vehicle information (such as vehicle location, speed, and status) to your iPhone to enhance the Apple CarPlay experience. You will need to consent to the sharing of this information on the Display Audio screen.


■ Enabling Apple CarPlay



- **Enable Once:** Allows only once. (Prompt shows again next time.)
- **Always Enable:** Allows anytime. (Prompt does not show again.)
- **Cancel:** Does not allow this consent.

You may change the consent settings under the **Smartphone** settings menu.

▶▶ Setting Up Apple CarPlay

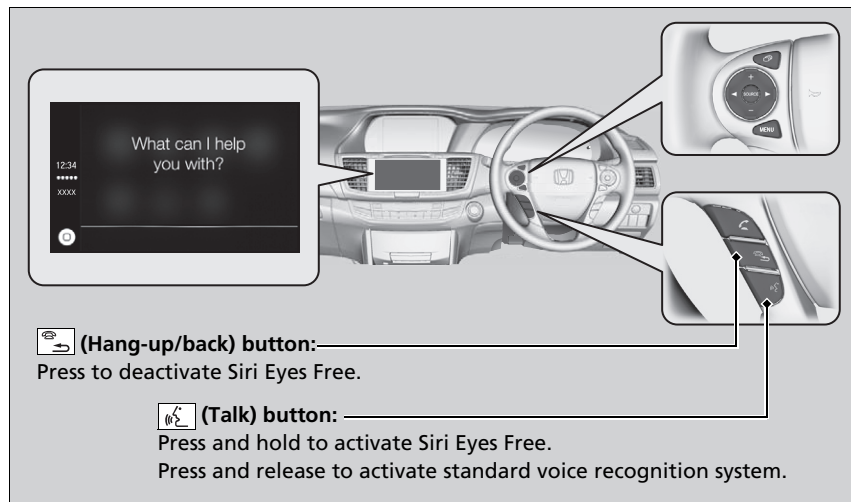
You can also use the method below to set up Apple CarPlay:
Select  → Settings → Smartphone → Apple CarPlay.

Use of user and vehicle information

The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your iPhone by Apple CarPlay is governed by the Apple iOS terms and conditions and Apple's Privacy Policy.

■ Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri Eyes Free

Press and hold the talk button to activate Siri Eyes Free.



▶▶ Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri Eyes Free

Below are examples of questions and commands for Siri Eyes Free.

- What movies are playing today?
- Call dad at work.
- What song is this?
- How's the weather tomorrow?
- Read my latest email.

For more information, please visit www.apple.com/ios/siri.

Android Auto

When you connect an Android phone to the Display Audio system via USB, Android Auto is automatically initiated. When connected via Android Auto, you can use the Display Audio screen to access the Phone, Google Maps (Navigation), Google Play Music, and Google Now functions. When you first use Android Auto, a tutorial will appear on the screen. We recommend that you complete this tutorial while safely parked before using Android Auto.

📌 **USB Port(s)** P. 215

📌 **Auto Pairing Connection** P. 295

NOTE :

Android Auto may not be available in your country or region. For details about Android Auto, please refer to the Google support site.

Android Auto

To use Android Auto, you need to download the Android Auto app from Google Play to your smartphone.

Only Android 5.0 (Lollipop) or later versions are compatible with Android Auto. Bluetooth A2DP cannot be used with Android Auto phone.

Park in a safe place before connecting your Android phone to Android Auto and when launching any compatible apps.

To use Android Auto, connect the USB cable to the front USB port. The USB port located in the centre console storage will not enable Android Auto operation.

📌 **USB Port(s)** P. 215

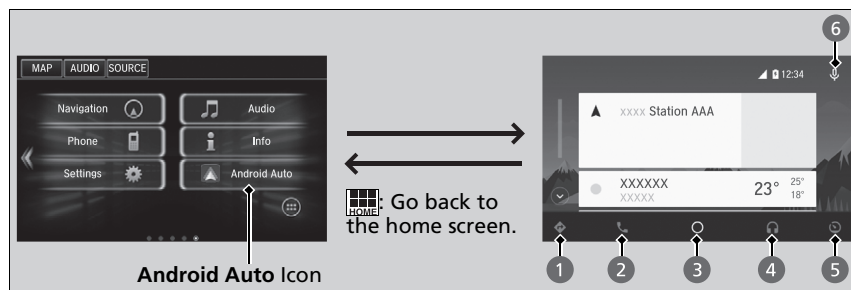
To directly access the Android Auto phone function, select **Phone** on the home screen. While connected to Android Auto, calls are only made through Android Auto. If you want to make a call with Hands-Free Telephone, turn Android Auto OFF or detach the USB cable from your Android phone.

📌 **Auto Pairing Connection** P. 295

When your Android phone is connected to Android Auto, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth®* Audio or Hands-Free Telephone System. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth®* while Android Auto is connected.

📌 **Phone Setup** P. 349

Android Auto Menu



1 Maps (Navigation)

Display Google Maps and use the navigation function just as you would with your Android phone. When the vehicle is in motion, it is not possible to make keyboard entries. Stop the vehicle in a safe location to undertake a search or provide other inputs.

2 Phone (Communication)

Make and receive phone calls as well as listen to voicemail.

3 Google Now (Home screen)

Display useful information organized by Android Auto into simple cards that appear just when they're needed.

4 Music and audio

Play Google Play Music and music apps that are compatible with Android Auto. To switch between music apps, press this icon.

5 Go back to the home screen

6 Voice

Operate Android Auto with your voice.

Android Auto

For details on countries and regions where Android Auto is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Android Auto homepage.

Android Auto Operating Requirements & Limitations

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Android Auto functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Android Auto functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Android Auto performance or functionality.

Android Auto requires a compatible Android phone with an active mobile connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Android Auto. Refer to the Android Auto homepage for information on compatible apps.

Models with navigation system

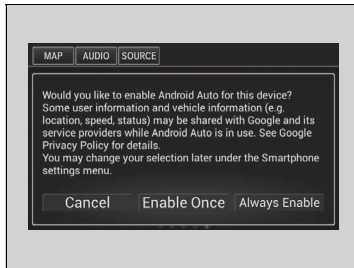
Only one navigation system (pre-installed navigation or Android Auto) can give directions at a time. When you are using one system, directions to any prior destination set on the other system will be cancelled, and the system you are currently using will direct you to your destination.

The audio/information screen shows you turn-by-turn driving directions to your destination.

■ Auto Pairing Connection

When you connect an Android phone to the unit via USB, Android Auto is automatically initiated.

■ Enabling Android Auto




- **Enable Once:** Allows only once. (Prompt shows again next time.)
- **Always Enable:** Allows anytime. (Prompt does not show again.)
- **Cancel:** Does not allow this consent.

You may change the consent settings under the **Smartphone** settings menu.

▶▶ Auto Pairing Connection

Only initialize Android Auto when you are safely parked. When Android Auto first detects your phone, you will need to set up your phone so that auto pairing is possible. Refer to the instruction manual that came with your phone.

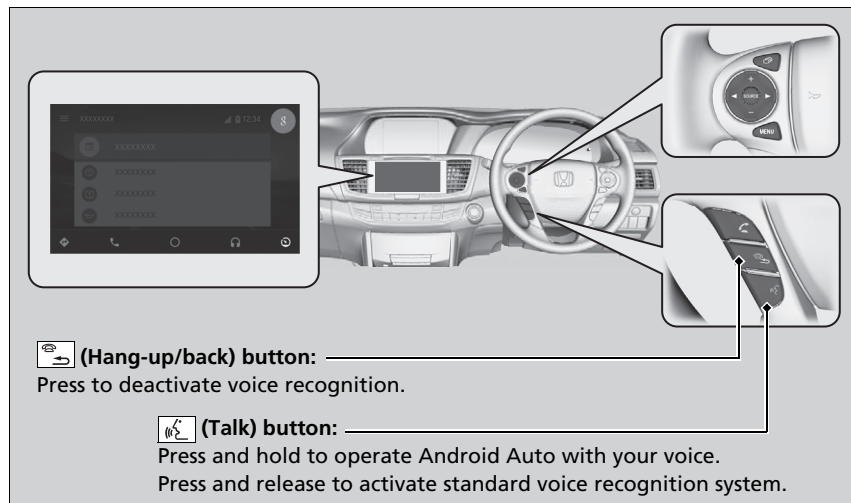
You can use the method below to change Android Auto settings after you have completed the initial setup:
Select  → Settings → Smartphone → Android Auto.

Use of user and vehicle information

The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your phone by Android Auto is governed by Google's Privacy Policy.

■ Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

Press and hold the talk button to operate Android Auto with your voice.




▶▶ Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

Below are examples of commands you can give with voice recognition:






- Reply to text.
- Call my wife.
- Navigate to Honda.
- Play my music.
- Send a text message to my wife.
- Call flower shop.

For more information, please refer to the Android Auto homepage.

You can also activate the voice recognition function by pressing the  icon in the upper-right corner of the screen.

CD Player

If a disc error occurs, you may see the following error messages.

Error Message	Cause	Solution
Unplayable File	Track/file format not supported	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Current track/file will be skipped. The next supported track/file plays automatically.
Bad Disc Please Check Owner's Manual Push Eject^{*1} Bad Disc Please Check Owner's Manual Please push eject button^{*2}	Mechanical error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press the  (eject) button and remove the disc, and check that the error message is cleared. Check that the disc is not damaged or deformed, and insert the disc again.  Protecting CDs P. 302 If the error message reappears, press the  button, and pull out the disc. Insert a different disc. If the new disc plays, there is a problem with the first disc. If the error message repeats, or the disc cannot be removed, contact a dealer. Do not try to force the disc out of the player.
Mecha Error		
Bad Disc Please Check Owner's Manual	Servo error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check that the disc is not damaged or deformed.  Protecting CDs P. 302
Check Disc	Disc error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check that the disc is not damaged or deformed.  Protecting CDs P. 302
Heat Error	High temperature	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Turn the audio system off and allow the player to cool down until the error message is cleared.

*1:Models with one display

*2:Models with display audio system

iPod/USB Flash Drive

If an error occurs while playing an iPod or USB flash drive, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Error Message	Solution
USB Error	Appears when there is a problem with the USB adapter unit. Check if the device is compatible with the USB adapter unit.
Incompatible USB Device Please Check Owner's Manual* ¹ The connected USB device has a problem. See Owner's Manual* ²	Appears when an incompatible device is connected. Disconnect the device. Then turn the audio system off, and turn it on again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error.
Unsupported Version	Appears when an unsupported iPod is connected. If it appears when a supported iPod is connected, update the iPod software to the newer version.
Connect Retry	Appears when the system does not acknowledge the iPod. Reconnect the iPod.
Unplayable File	Appears when the files in the USB flash drive are DRM or an unsupported format. This error message appears for about three seconds, then plays the next song.
No Data	iPod Appears when the iPod is empty. USB flash drive Appears when the USB flash drive is empty or there are no MP3, WMA, or AAC files in the USB flash drive. iPod and USB flash drive Check that compatible files are stored on the device.
Unsupported	Appears when an unsupported device is connected. If it appears when a supported device is connected, reconnect the device.

*1:Models with one display
*2:Models with display audio system

Models with display audio system

Android/Apps

If an error occurs while using the audio system or apps, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.



Error Message*1	Solution
Unfortunately, **** has stopped.	Error has occurred within app, select OK on the screen to close the app.
**** is not responding. Would you like to close it?	App is not responding. Select Wait if you can wait for a response from app a little longer. If it does not respond even if you keep waiting, select OK to close the app and start it up. If the error message continues, perform Factory Data Reset . ➤ Defaulting All the Settings P. 342

*1:****part is variable characters, and will change depending upon where an error occurs.

Models with display audio system

DVD Player*

If a disc error occurs, you may see the following error messages.

Error Message	Cause	Solution
Unsupported DISC ERROR	Track/file format not supported	Current track/file will be skipped. The next supported track/file plays automatically.
DRM file access		
ERROR file access		
MECHA ERROR	Mechanical error	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Press the  (eject) button and remove the disc, and check that the error message is cleared.• Check that the disc is not damaged or deformed, and insert the disc again. ▶ Protecting CDs P. 302• If the error message reappears, press the  button, and pull out the disc.• Insert a different disc. If the new disc plays, there is a problem with the first disc.• If the error message repeats, or the disc cannot be removed, contact a dealer. Do not try to force the disc out of the player.
EJECT RETRY ERROR	Disc error	Check that the disc is not damaged or deformed. ▶ Protecting CDs P. 302
FOCUS ERROR		
HEAT ERROR	High temperature	Turn the audio system off and allow the player to cool down until the error message is cleared.

Recommended CDs

- Use only high-quality CD-R or CD-RW discs labelled for audio use.
- Use only CD-R or CD-RW discs on which the recordings are closed.
- Play only standard round-shaped CDs.

The CD packages or jackets should have one of these marks.



CDs with MP3, WMA, or AAC files

- Some software files may not allow for audio play or text data display.
- Some versions of MP3, WMA, or AAC formats may be unsupported.

Recommended CDs

A Dual-disc cannot play on this audio unit. If recorded under certain conditions, a CD-R or CD-RW may not play either.

■ Protecting CDs

Follow these precautions when handling or storing CDs:

- Store a CD in its case when it is not being played.
- When wiping a CD, use a soft clean cloth from the centre to the outside edge.
- Handle a CD by its edge. Never touch either surface.
- Never insert foreign objects into the CD player.
- Keep CDs out of direct sunlight and extreme heat.
- Do not place stabilizer rings or labels on the CD.
- Avoid fingerprints, liquids, and felt-tip pens on the CD.

►► Protecting CDs

NOTICE

Do not insert a damaged CD. It may be stuck inside and damage the audio unit.

Examples:

- Bubbled, wrinkled, labelled, and excessively thick CDs



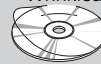
Bubbled/
Wrinkled



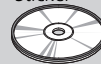
With Label/
Sticker



Using
Printer Label
Kit

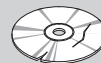


Sealed

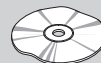


With Plastic Ring

- Damaged CDs



Chipped/
Cracked



Warped



Burrs

- Small CDs



8-cm
CD

- Poor quality CDs

Compatible iPod, iPhone, and USB Flash Drives

■ iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

Model
iPod (5th generation)
iPod classic 80GB/160GB (launch in 2007)
iPod classic 120GB (launch in 2008)
iPod classic 160GB (launch in 2009)
iPod nano (1st to 7th generation) launch in 2010
iPod touch (1st to 5th generation) launch in 2012* ¹
iPod touch (1st to 4th generation) launch in 2010* ²
iPhone 3G/iPhone 3GS/iPhone 4/iPhone 4s/iPhone 5, iPhone 5c* ² /iPhone 5s* ²

*1: Models with one display

*2: Models with display audio system

■ USB Flash Drives

- A USB flash drive of 256 MB or higher is recommended.
- Some digital audio players may not be compatible.
- Some USB flash drives (e.g., a device with security lockout) may not work.
- Some software files may not allow for audio play or text data display.
- Some versions of MP3, WMA, or AAC formats may be unsupported.

⌘ iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

This system may not work with all software versions of these devices.

⌘ USB Flash Drives

Files on the USB flash drive are played in their stored order. This order may be different from the order displayed on your PC or device.

■ Recommended Devices*

Media	USB Flash Drive	
Profile (MP4 version)	Baseline Level 3 (MPEG4-AVC), Simple Level 5 (MPEG4)	
File extension (MP4 version)	.mp4/.m4v	
Compatible audio codec	MPEG4-AVC (H.264)	MPEG4 (ISO/IEC 14496 Part.2)
Bit rate	10 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	8 Mbps (MPEG4)
Maximum image	720 X 576 pixels	

Models with display audio system

Legal Information on Apple CarPlay/Android Auto

OWNER'S MANUAL LICENSE/LIABILITY STATEMENTS

USE OF APPLE CARPLAY IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE, WHICH ARE INCLUDED AS PART OF THE APPLE iOS TERMS OF USE. IN SUMMARY, THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF CARPLAY, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE APPLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING APPLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY CARPLAY.

USE OF ANDROID AUTO IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE WHICH MUST BE AGREED TO WHEN THE ANDROID AUTO APPLICATION IS DOWNLOADED TO YOUR ANDROID PHONE. IN SUMMARY, THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF ANDROID AUTO, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE GOOGLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING GOOGLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY ANDROID AUTO.

■ DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTIES; LIMITATION ON LIABILITY


YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF APPLE CARPLAY OR ANDROID AUTO ("THE APPLICATIONS") IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, AND THAT THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE," WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND HONDA HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ACCURACY, QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY HONDA OR AN AUTHORISED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY. AS EXAMPLES, AND WITHOUT LIMITATION, HONDA DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTY REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF DATA PROVIDED BY THE APPLICATIONS, SUCH AS THE ACCURACY OF DIRECTIONS, ESTIMATED TRAVEL TIME, SPEED LIMITS, ROAD CONDITIONS, NEWS, WEATHER, TRAFFIC, OR OTHER CONTENT PROVIDED BY APPLE, GOOGLE, THEIR AFFILIATES, OR THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE AGAINST LOSS OF APPLICATION DATA, WHICH MAY BE LOST AT ANY TIME; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE THAT THE APPLICATIONS OR ANY SERVICES PROVIDED THROUGH THEM WILL BE PROVIDED AT ALL TIMES OR THAT ANY OR ALL SERVICES WILL BE AVAILABLE AT ANY PARTICULAR TIME OR LOCATION. FOR EXAMPLE, SERVICES MAY BE SUSPENDED OR INTERRUPTED WITHOUT NOTICE FOR REPAIR, MAINTENANCE, SECURITY FIXES, UPDATES, ETC., SERVICES MAY BE UNAVAILABLE IN YOUR AREA OR LOCATION, ETC. IN ADDITION, YOU UNDERSTAND THAT CHANGES IN THIRD PARTY TECHNOLOGY OR GOVERNMENT REGULATION MAY RENDER THE SERVICES AND/OR APPLICATIONS OBSOLETE AND/OR UNUSABLE.

TO THE EXTENT NOT PROHIBITED BY LAW, IN NO EVENT SHALL HONDA OR ITS AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR PERSONAL INJURY, OR ANY INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF PROFITS, CORRUPTION OR LOSS OF DATA, FAILURE TO TRANSMIT OR RECEIVE ANY DATA, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR ANY OTHER COMMERCIAL DAMAGES OR LOSSES, ARISING OUT OF OR RELATED TO THE APPLICATIONS OR YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE APPLICATIONS OR INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, HOWEVER CAUSED, REGARDLESS OF THE THEORY OF LIABILITY (CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE) AND EVEN IF HONDA WERE ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. SOME REGIONS AND JURISDICTIONS MAY DISALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF LIABILITY FOR DAMAGES, SO THESE LIMITATIONS AND EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. THE FOREGOING LIMITATIONS WILL APPLY EVEN IF THE ABOVE STATED REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE.

Models with display audio system

About Open Source Licences




To see the open source license information, follow these steps.

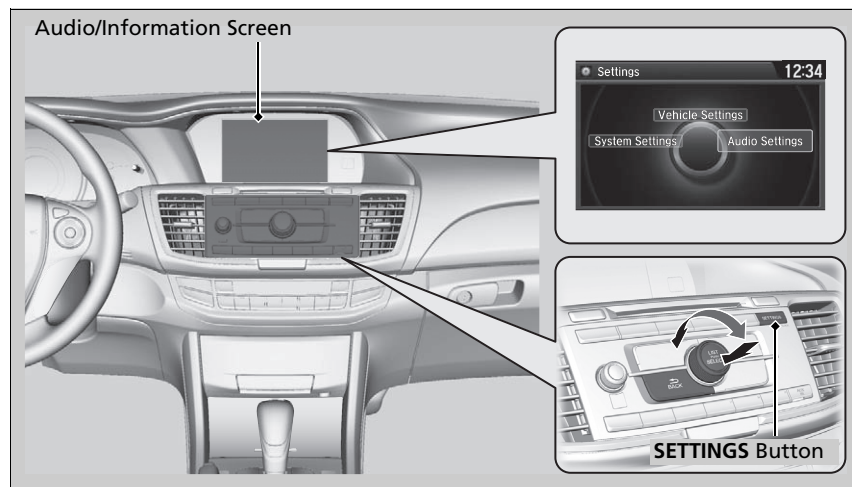
1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**, then open the **Other** tab.
4. Select **Detail Information**.
5. Select **About phone**.
6. Select **Legal information**.
7. Select **Open source licenses**.

Models with one display

Use the audio/information screen to customize certain features.

■ How to customize

With the ignition switch in ON , press the **SETTINGS** button, rotate  to select a setting item, and press .



Customized Features

When you customize settings:

- Make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop and shift to **P**.

How to customize

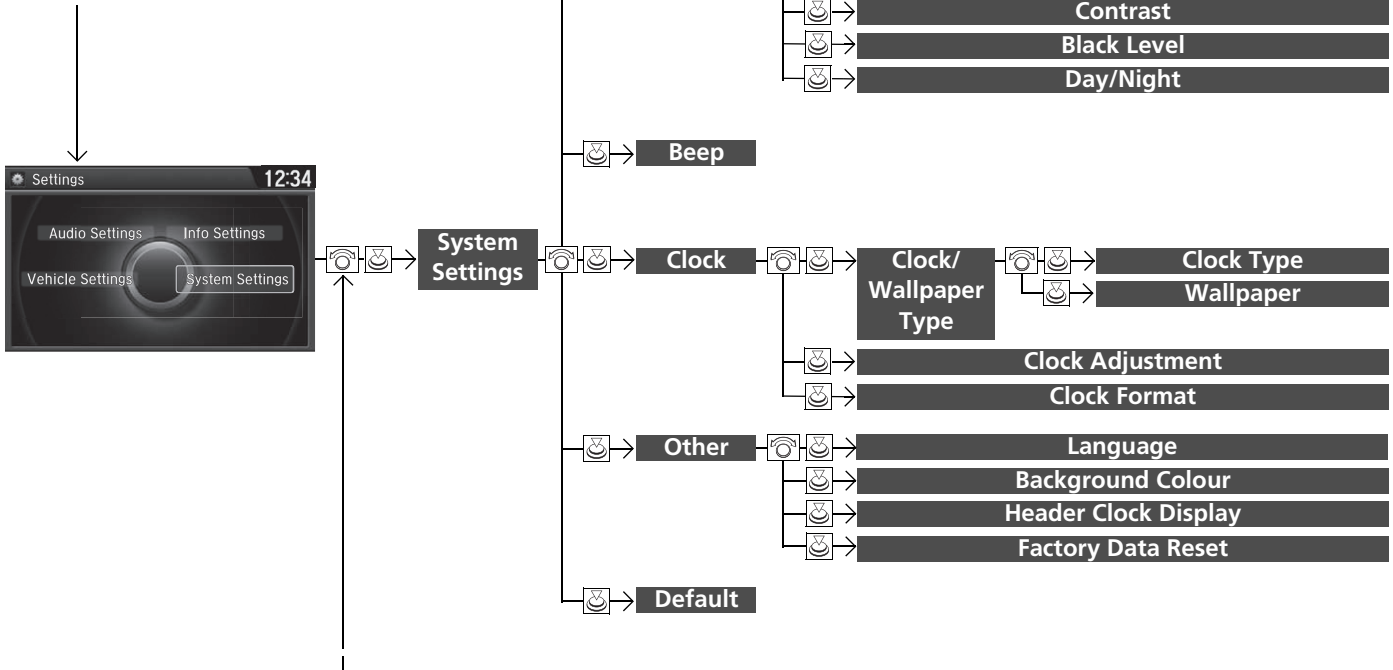
To customize other features, rotate , and press .

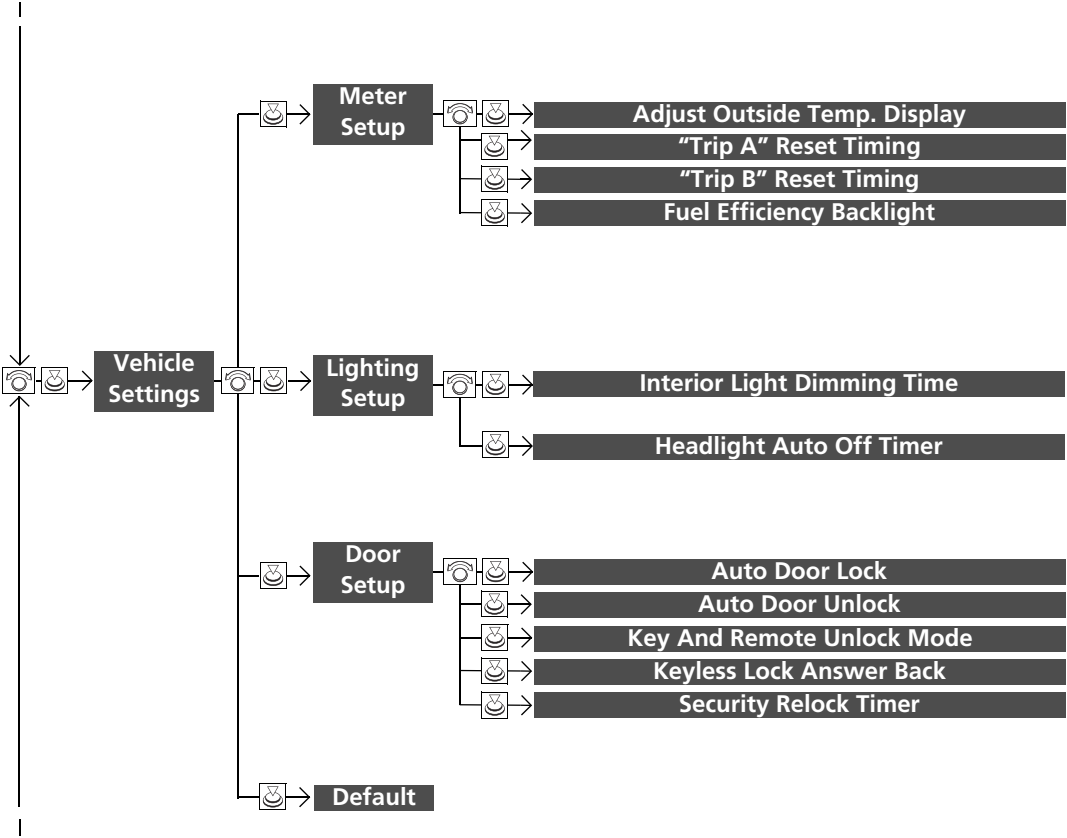
➤ **List of customizable options** P. 312

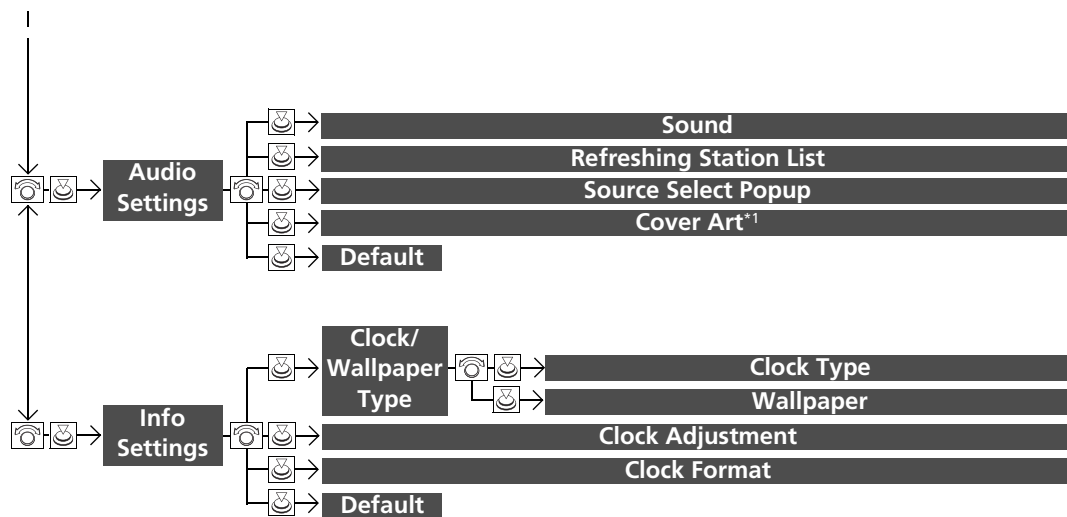
Models with one display

■ Customization flow

Press the **SETTINGS** button.










*1: May change depending on your currently selected source.

Models with one display

■ List of customizable options

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
System Settings	Display	Brightness	Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen. —
		Contrast	Changes the contrast of the audio/information screen. —
		Black Level	Changes the black level of the audio/information screen. —
		Day/Night	Changes the brightness mode of the audio/information screen. Auto^{*1}/Day/Night
	Beep	Selects whether a beeper sounds when you operate the selector knob. On^{*1}/Off	

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
System Settings	Clock	Clock Type	Changes the clock display type.	Analog/Digital ^{*1} / Small Digital/Off
		Clock/ Wallpaper Type	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Changes the wallpaper type. Imports an image file for a new wallpaper. Deletes an image file for a wallpaper.  Wallpaper Setup P. 225	Blank/Galaxy ^{*1} / Metallic/Add New Wallpaper
		Clock Adjustment	Adjusts Clock.  Clock P. 128	—
		Clock Format	Selects the digital clock display from 12H to 24H.	12H ^{*1} /24H
	Other	Language	Changes the display language.	English/French/ Spanish
		Background Colour	Changes the background colour of the audio/ information screen.	Blue ^{*1} /Amber/Red/ Green
		Header Clock Display	Selects whether the clock display comes on.	On ^{*1} /Off
		Factory Data Reset	Resets all the settings to their factory default.  Defaulting All the Settings P. 341	Yes/No
	Default	Cancels /Resets all customized items in the System Settings group as default.		Yes/No

^{*1}:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle Settings	Meter Setup	Adjust Outside Temp. Display	Adjusts the temperature reading by a few degrees. -3°C ~ ±0°C*¹ ~ +3°C
		“Trip A” Reset Timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter A and average fuel economy A. With Refuel/IGN Off/ Manually Reset*¹
		“Trip B” Reset Timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter B and average fuel economy B. With Refuel/IGN Off/ Manually Reset*¹
	Lighting Setup	Fuel Efficiency Backlight	Turns the ambient meter feature on and off. On*¹/Off
		Interior Light Dimming Time	Changes the length of time the interior lights stay on after you close the doors. 60seconds/ 30seconds*¹/ 15seconds
		Headlight Auto Off Timer	Changes the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door. 60seconds/ 30seconds*¹/ 15seconds*¹/ 0seconds

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle Settings	Door Setup	Auto Door Lock	Changes the setting for when the doors automatically lock. With Vehicle Speed*¹/Shift from P/Off
		Auto Door Unlock	Changes the setting for when the doors unlock automatically. Driver Door with Shift to P*¹/ All Doors with Shift to P/ Driver Door with IGN Off/All Doors with IGN Off/Off
		Key And Remote Unlock Mode	Sets up either the driver's door or all doors to unlock on the first push of the remote. Driver Door*¹/All Doors
		Keyless Lock Answer Back	LOCK/UNLOCK- The exterior lights flash. On*¹/Off
		Security Relock Timer	Changes the time it takes for the doors to relock and the security system to set after you unlock the vehicle without opening any door. 90seconds/60seconds/ 30seconds*¹
	Default	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Vehicle Settings group as default.	Yes/No

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Audio Settings	Sound	Adjusts the settings of the audio speaker's sound. ▶ Adjusting the Sound P. 227	-6 ~ C* ¹ ~ +6 (Bass and Treble), -9 ~ C* ¹ ~ +9 (Fader, Balance), Off/Low/Mid* ¹ /High (SVC)
	Refreshing Station List	Selects whether the FM station list automatically updates.	On/Off* ¹
	Source Select Popup	Selects whether the list of selectable audio sources comes on when the AUDIO button is pressed.	On/Off* ¹
	iPod®, USB mode Cover Art	Turns on and off the cover art display.	On* ¹ /Off
	Default	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Audio Settings group as default.	Yes/No


*1: Default Setting

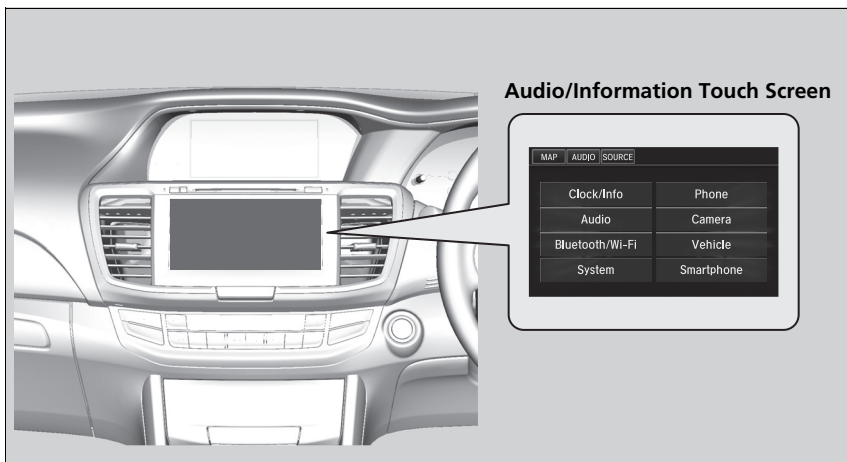
Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Info Settings	Clock/ Wall- paper type	Clock Type	See System Settings on P. 312 to P. 313	
		Wallpaper		
		Clock Adjustment		
		Clock Format		
	Default		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Info Settings group as default.	Yes/No

Models with display audio system

Use the audio/information touch screen to customize certain features.

■ How to customize

While the vehicle is at a complete stop with the ignition switch in ON *1, select **Settings**, then select a setting item.



► Customized Features

When you customize settings:

- Make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop.
- Shift to **P**.

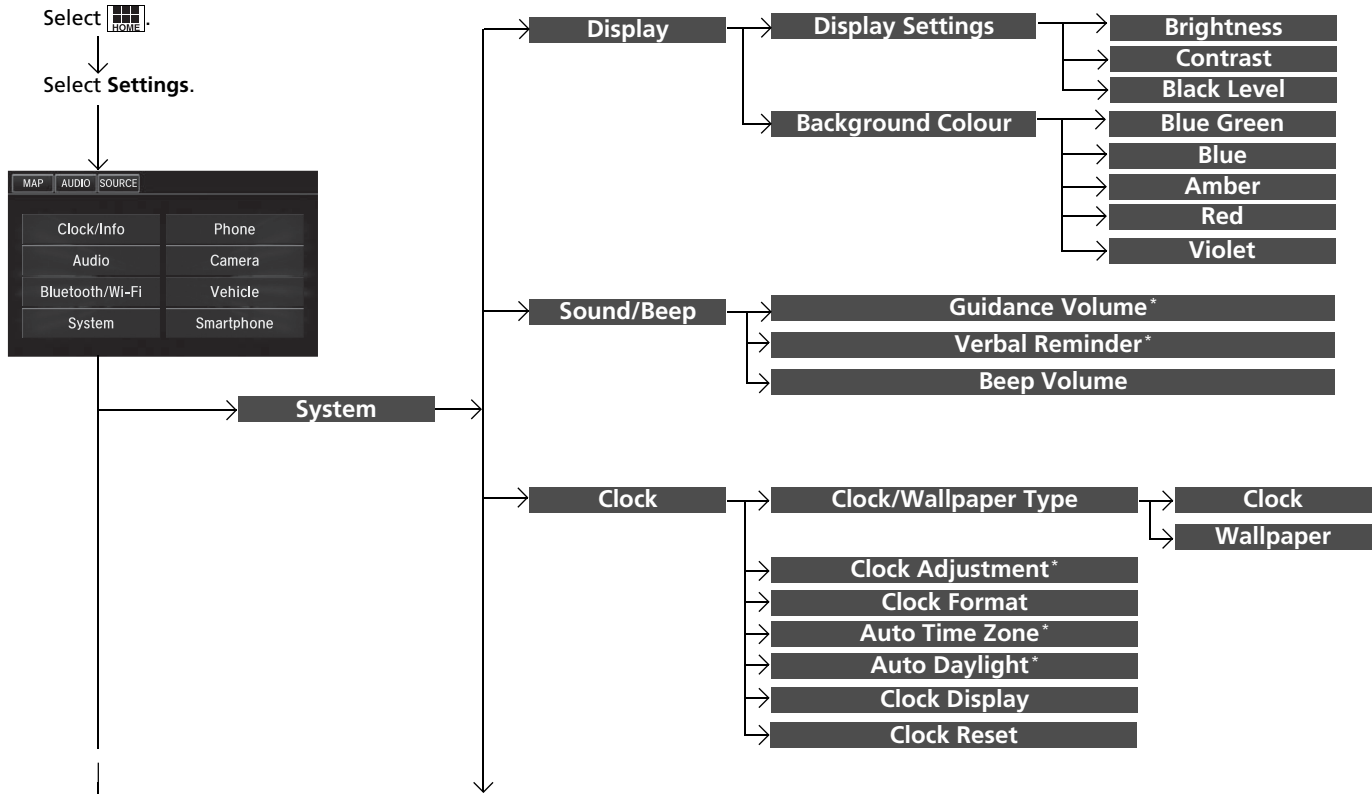
► How to customize

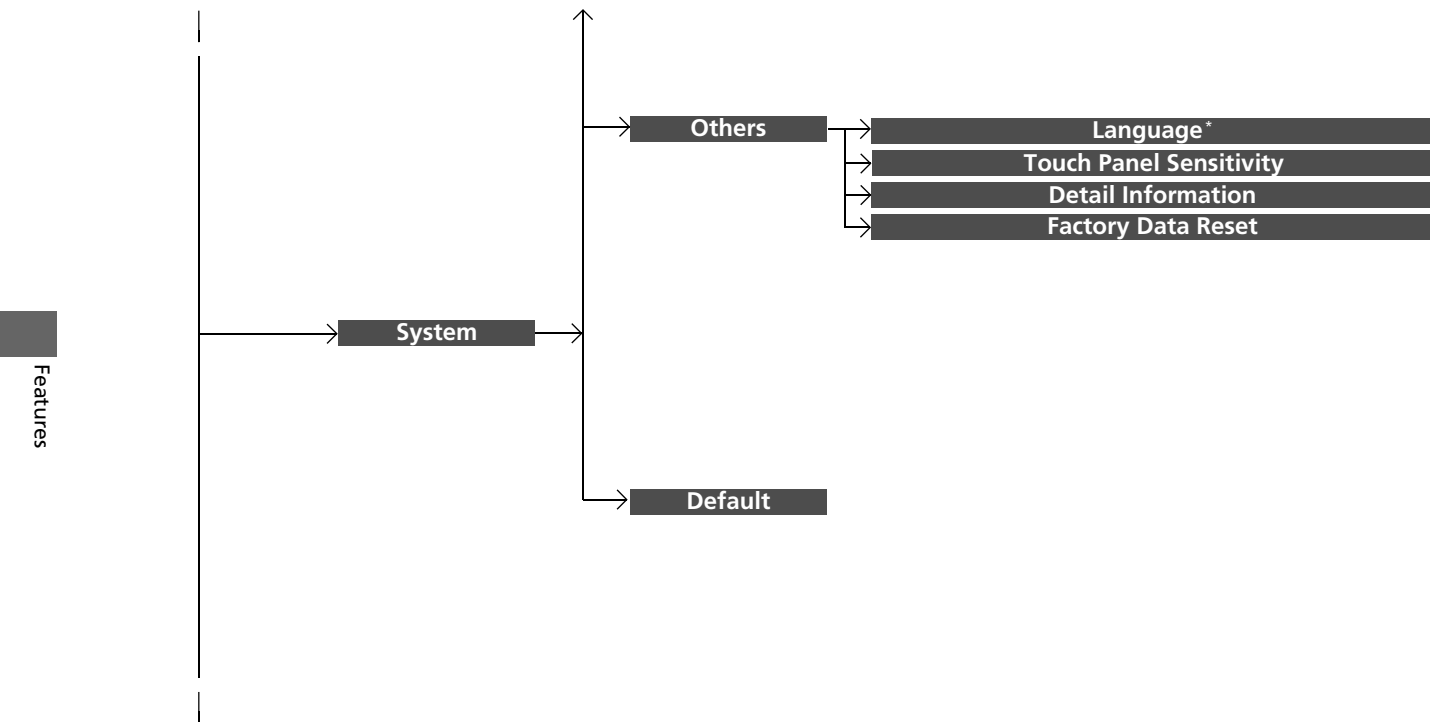
To customize other features, select **Settings**.

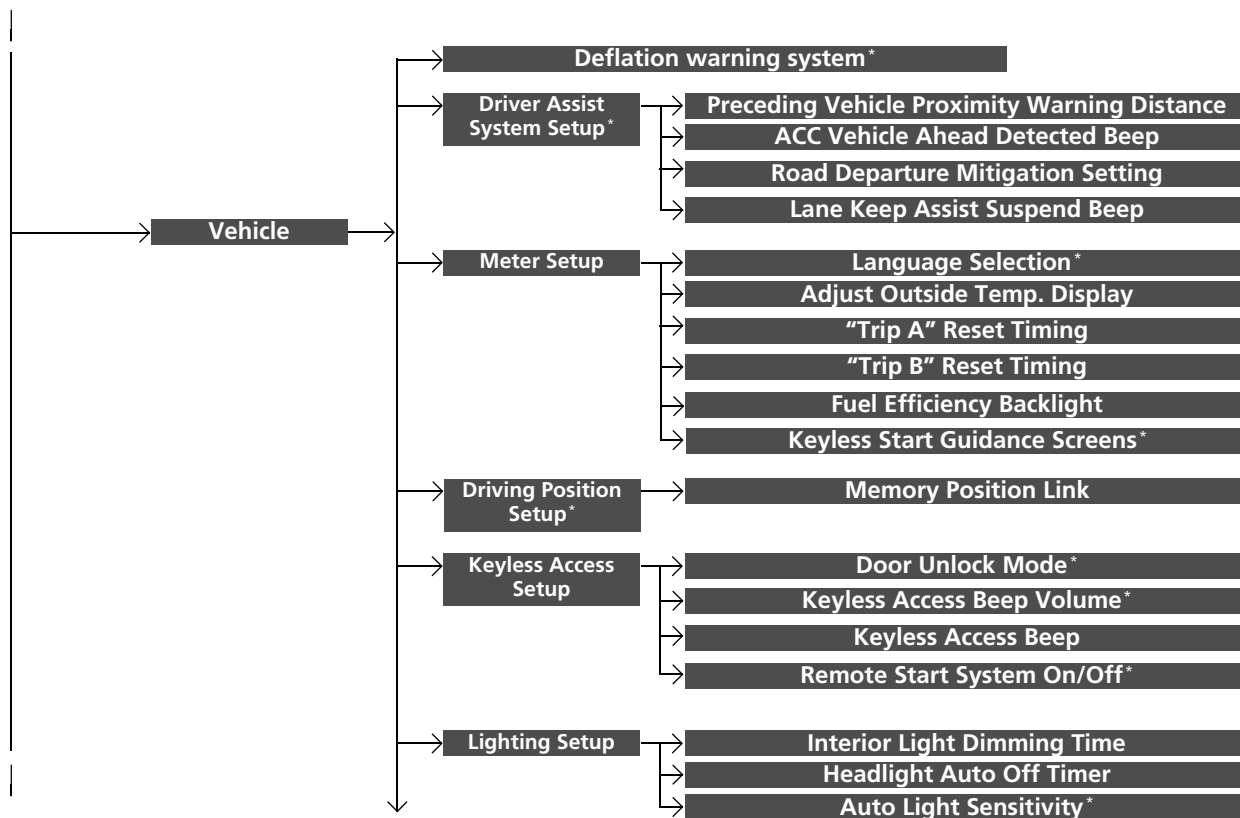
➤ **List of customizable options** P. 327

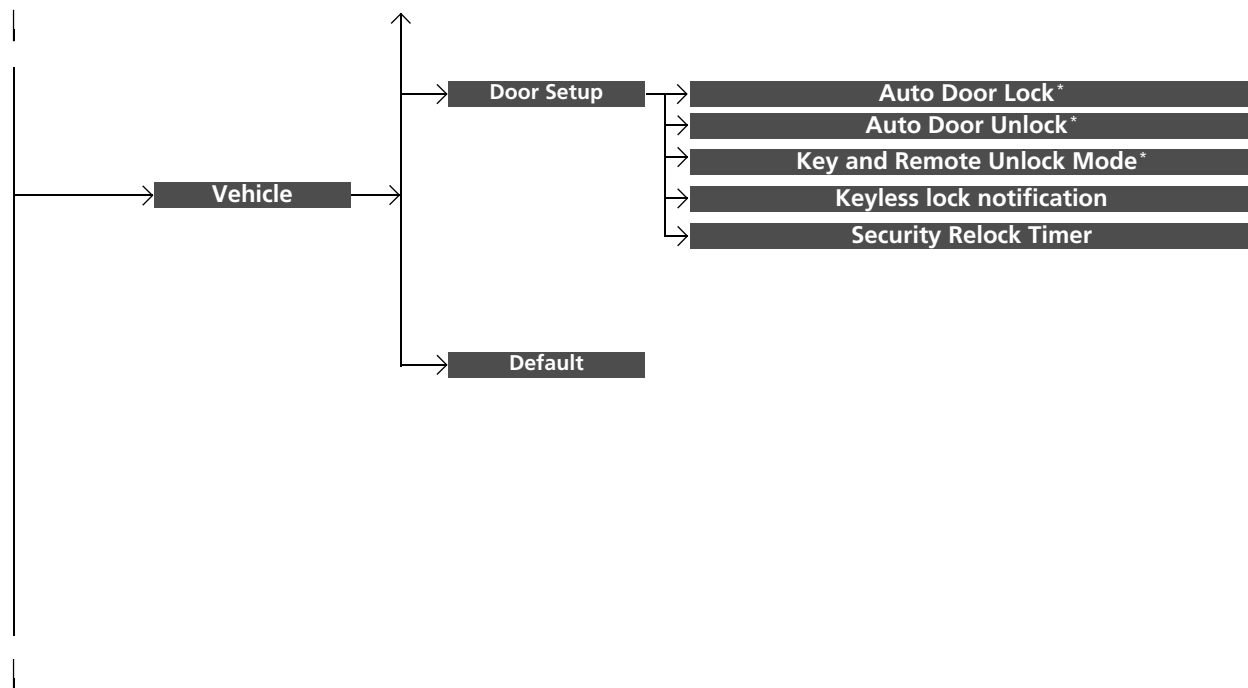
*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

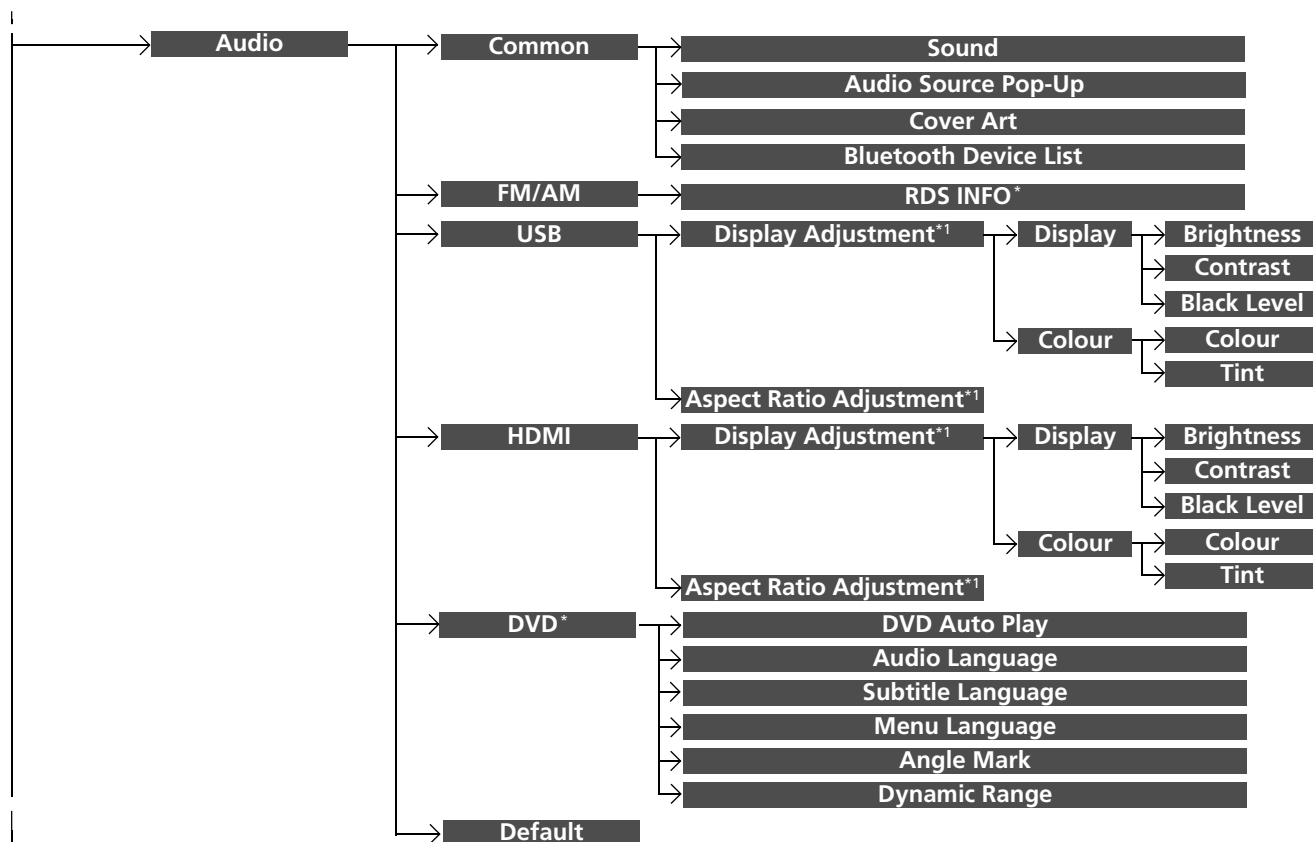
■ Customization flow





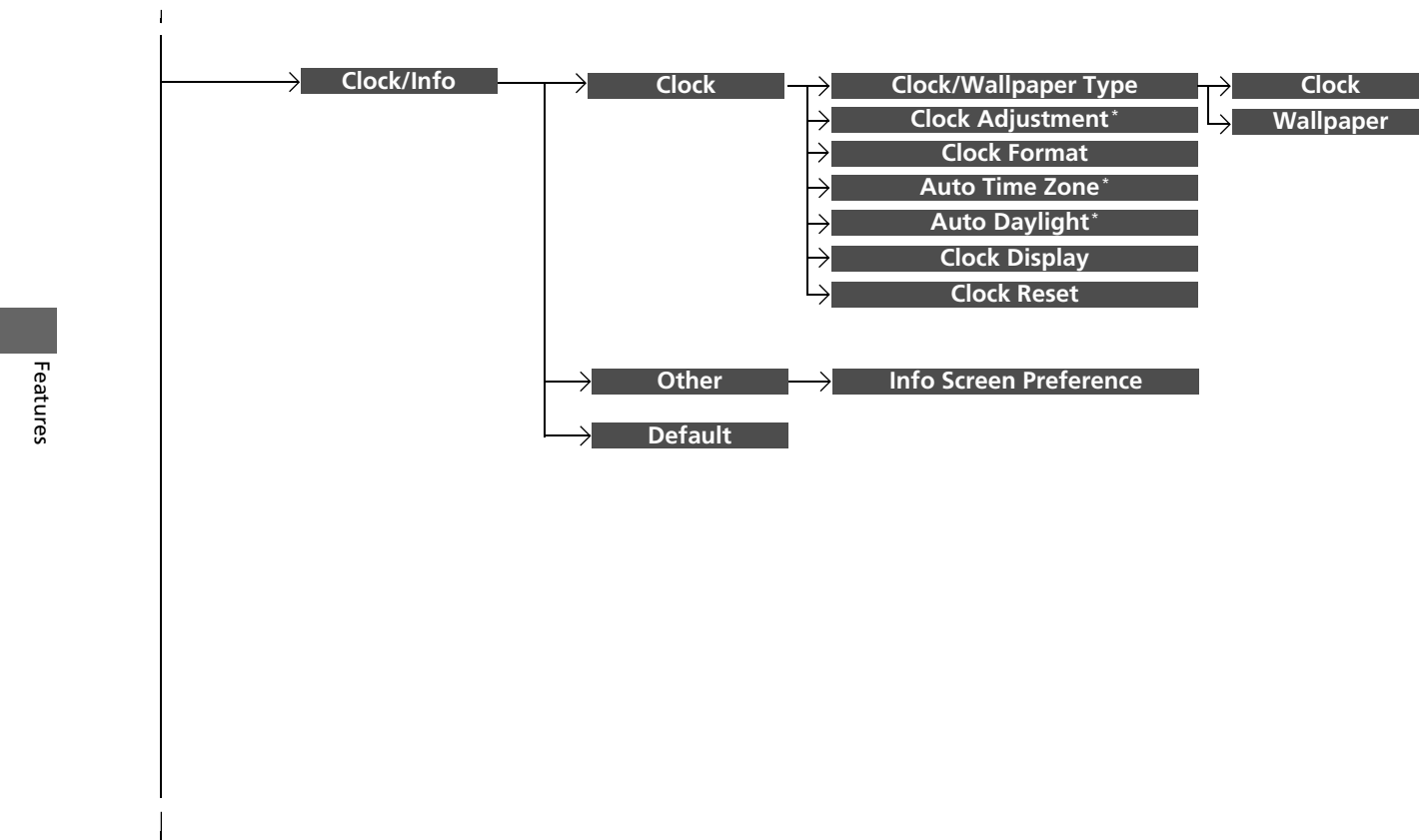


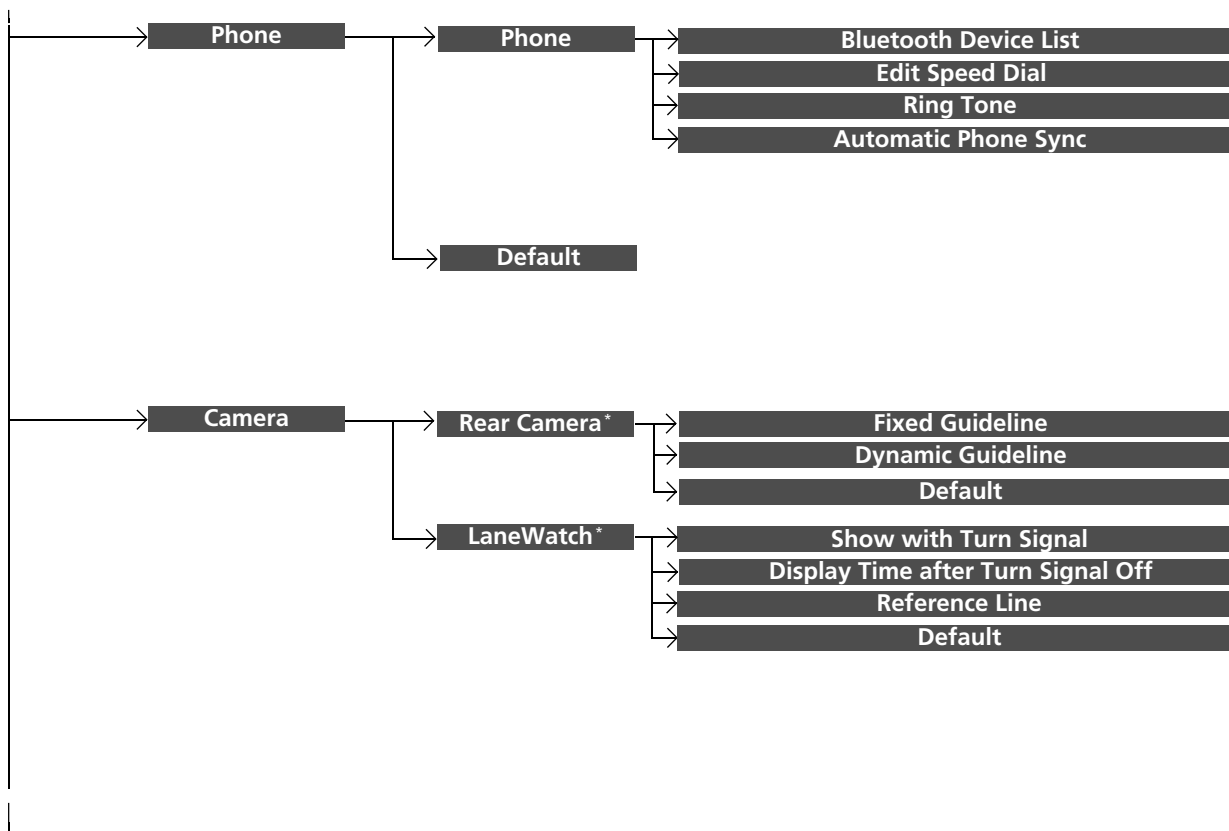




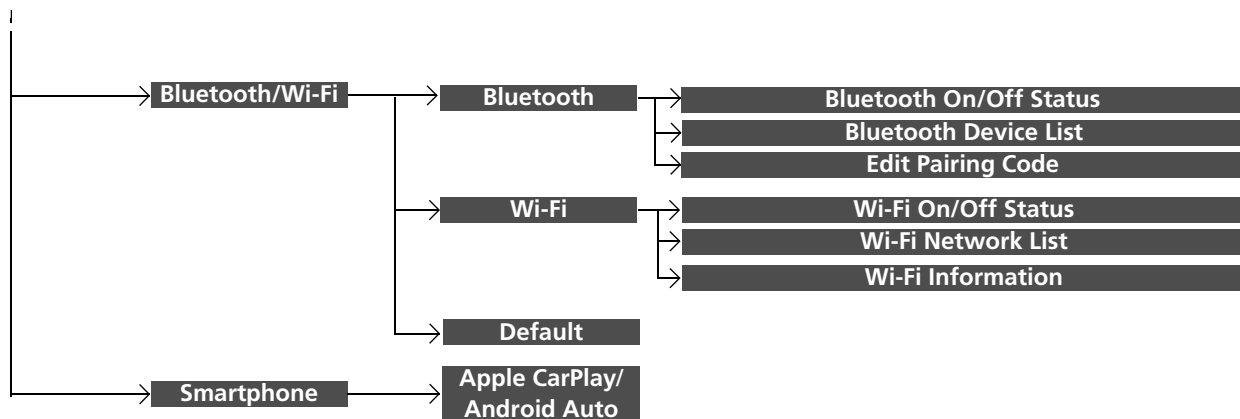
*1: You can customize settings only when playing a video file.

* Not available on all models





* Not available on all models



■ List of customizable options

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
System	Display	Brightness	Changes the brightness of the audio/information touch screen.	—
		Contrast	Changes the contrast of the audio/information touch screen.	—
		Black Level	Changes the black level of the audio/information touch screen.	—
	Background Colour		Changes the background colour of the audio/information touch screen.	Blue Green ^{*1} /Blue/Amber/Red/Violet
	Sound/Beep	Guidance Volume [*]	Changes the sound volume. Adjusts the guidance volume of the navigation system.	1~6 ^{*1} ~11
		Verbal Reminder [*]	Turns the verbal reminders on and off.	On ^{*1} /Off
		Beep Volume	Changes the beep volume.	Off/1/2 ^{*1} /3

^{*1}:Default Setting

^{*} Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
System	Clock	Clock	Changes the clock display type.	Analog/Digital ^{*1} /Small Digital/Off
		Clock/ Wallpaper Type	Wallpaper <ul style="list-style-type: none">Changes the wallpaper type.Imports an image file for a new wallpaper.Deletes an image file for a wallpaper.	Galaxy ^{*1} /Metallic/Blank
		Clock Adjustment [*]	Adjusts clock.	—
		Clock Format	Selects the digital clock display from 12H to 24H.	12H ^{*1} /24H
		Auto Time Zone [*]	Automatically adjust the clock when driving through different time zones.	On ^{*1} /Off
		Auto Daylight [*]	Select On to have the GPS automatically adjust the clock to daylight savings time. Select Off to cancel this function.	On ^{*1} /Off
		Clock Display	Selects whether the clock display comes on.	On ^{*1} /Off
		Clock Reset	Resets the clock settings to the factory default.	Yes/No

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
System	Others	Language*	English/French/Spanish
			Arabic/English
			Thai/English/Malay/Indonesian
			English/Malay/Thai
	Touch Panel Sensitivity	Sets the sensitivity of the touch panel screen.	High/Low* ¹
	Detail Information	Displays the Android setting items.	—
	Factory Data Reset	Resets all the settings to their factory default. 🔍 Defaulting All the Settings P. 342	Yes/No
	Default	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the System settings group as default.	Yes/No

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle	Deflation warning system *	Initialises the deflation warning system.	Cancel/Initialise
	Preceding Vehicle Proximity Warning Distance	Changes distance CMBS alerts.	Far/Normal*¹/Near
	ACC Vehicle Ahead Detected Beep	Causes the system to beep when the system detects a vehicle, or when the vehicle goes out of the ACC range.	On/Off*¹
	Road Departure Mitigation Setting	Changes the setting for the road departure mitigation system.	Normal*¹/Delayed/Warning Only
	Lane Keep Assist Suspend Beep	Causes the system to beep when LKAS is suspended.	On/Off*¹

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle	Meter Setup	Language Selection*	Changes the displayed language on the multi-information display.	English ^{*1} /French/Spanish
		Adjust Outside Temp. Display	Adjusts the temperature reading by a few degrees.	-3°C ~ ±0°C ^{*1} ~ +3°C
		"Trip A" Reset Timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter A and, average fuel economy A.	When Refueled/When Ignition Is Turned Off/Manual Reset ^{*1}
		"Trip B" Reset Timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter B and, average fuel economy B.	When Refueled/When Ignition Is Turned Off/Manual Reset ^{*1}
		Fuel Efficiency Backlight	Turns the ambient meter feature on and off.	On ^{*1} /Off
		Keyless Start Guidance Screens*	Displays the push button start guidance when conditions are met to change power mode.	On ^{*1} /Off
	Driving Position Setup*	Memory Position Link	Turns the driving position memory system on and off.	On ^{*1} /Off

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle	Keyless Access Setup	Door Unlock Mode*	Changes which doors unlock when you grab the driver's door handle. Driver Door Only*¹/ All Doors
		Keyless Access Beep Volume*	Changes the beep tone that sounds when you have a keyless remote and grab a front door handle. High*¹/Low
		Keyless Access Beep	Causes the beeper to sound when you unlock/ lock the doors. On*¹/Off
	Lighting Setup	Remote Start System On/ Off*	Turns the remote engine start feature on and off. On*¹/Off
		Interior Light Dimming Time	Changes the length of time the interior lights stay on after you close the doors. 60 sec/30 sec*¹/15 sec
		Headlight Auto Off Timer	Changes the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door. 60 sec/30 sec/15 sec*¹/0 sec
		Auto Light Sensitivity*	Changes the timing for the headlights to come on. Max/High/Mid*¹/ Low/Min

*1: Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle	Door Setup	Auto Door Lock*	Changes the setting for the automatic locking feature. With Vehicle Speed*¹/Shift from P/Off
		Auto Door Unlock*	Changes the setting for when the doors unlock automatically. Except African models All Doors with Driver's Door Opens*¹/All Doors with Shift to P/All Doors with IGN Off/Off African models Driver Door with Shift to P*¹/All Doors with Shift to P/Driver Door with IGN Off/All Doors with IGN Off/Off
		Key And Remote Unlock Mode*	Sets up either the driver's door or all doors to unlock on the first push of the remote or built-in key. Driver Door*¹/All Doors
		Keyless lock notification	LOCK/UNLOCK- The exterior lights flash. On*¹/Off
		Security Relock Timer	Changes the time it takes for the doors to relock and the security system to set after you unlock the vehicle without opening any door. 90 sec/60 sec/30 sec*¹
	Default	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Vehicle group as default.	Yes/No

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Audio	Common	Sound Adjusts the settings of the audio speakers' sound. ▶ Adjusting the Sound P. 257	-6 ~ 0*1 ~ +6 (BASS and TREBLE), RR9~0*1 ~ FR9 (FADER), L9~*1 0~R9 (BALANCE), -6 ~ 0*1 ~ +6 (Subwoofer), Off/Low/Mid*1/High (Speed Volume Compensation)
		Audio Source Pop-Up Selects whether the list of selectable audio source comes on when Audio is selected on the home screen.	On/Off*1
		<div>iPod or USB mode</div> [Your selected media] Cover Art Turns the cover art display on and off.	On*1/Off
		Bluetooth Device List Pairs a new phone to HFT, edits or deletes a paired phone. ▶ Phone Setup P. 349	—
	<div>FM/AM mode</div> FM/AM	RDS INFO* Turns on and off the RDS information.	On*1/Off

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Audio	USB mode USB	Display Adjustment	Brightness	See System on P. 327
			Contrast	
			Black Level	
		Colour	Colour	—
			Tint	—
		Aspect Ratio Adjustment		Normal/ Full* ¹ /Zoom
	HDMI™ mode HDMI	Display Adjustment	Brightness	See System on P. 327
			Contrast	
			Black Level	
		Colour	Colour	—
			Tint	—
		Aspect Ratio Adjustment		Normal/ Full* ¹ /Zoom

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Audio	DVD mode DVD* DVD Auto Play	Turns on and off to automatically to play a DVD disc.	On^{*1}/Off
	Audio Language	Changes the language of a DVD disc.	English, French, Spanish, German, Italian, Dutch, Chinese, Korean, Thai, Japanese, Other, and Auto^{*1}.
	Subtitle Language	Changes the subtitle language of a DVD disc.	English, French, Spanish, German, Italian, Dutch, Chinese, Korean, Thai, Japanese, Other, and Auto^{*1}.
	Menu Language	Changes the menu language of a DVD disc.	English, French, Spanish, German, Italian, Dutch, Chinese, Korean, Thai, Japanese, Other, and Auto^{*1}.
	Angle Mark	Turns on and off the angle setting.	On^{*1}/Off
	Dynamic Range	Turns on and off the dynamic range function only while playing the Dolby Digital audio.	On^{*1}/Off
	Default	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Audio settings group as default.	Yes/No

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Clock/ Info	Clock	Clock/Wallpaper Type	Clock Wallpaper	
		Clock Adjustment*		
		Clock Format		
		Auto Time Zone*		
		Auto Daylight*		
		Clock Display		
		Clock Reset		
			See System on P. 327	
	Other	Info Screen Preference	Changes the information screen type.	Info Top/Info Menu/Off* ¹
	Default		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Clock/Info settings group as default.	Yes/No

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Phone	Phone	Bluetooth Device List Pairs a new phone to HFT, connects or disconnects a paired phone. ➡ Phone Setup P. 349	—
		Edit Speed Dial Edits, adds or deletes a speed dial entry. ➡ Speed Dial P. 354	—
		Ring Tone Selects the ring tone.	Fixed/Mobile Phone *1
		Automatic Phone Sync Sets phonebook and call history data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFT.	On *1/ Off
	Default	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Phone settings group as default.	Yes/No

* 1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Camera	Rear Camera *	Fixed Guideline Selects whether the fixed guidelines come on the rear camera monitor. ▶ Multi-View Rear Camera * P. 444	On^{*1}/Off
		Dynamic Guideline Selects whether the dynamic guidelines come on the rear camera monitor. ▶ Multi-View Rear Camera * P. 444	On^{*1}/Off
		Default Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Rear Camera setting group as default.	Yes/No
	LaneWatch *	Show with Turn Signal Selects whether the LaneWatch display comes on when you move the turn signal lever to indicate a right turn.	On^{*1}/Off
		Display Time after Turn Signal Off Changes the length of time the LaneWatch display stays on after the turn signal lever returns to the centre.	0 second^{*1}/2 seconds
		Reference Line Selects whether the reference lines come on the LaneWatch monitor.	On^{*1}/Off
		Default Cancels/Resets all customized items in the LaneWatch group as default.	Yes/No

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

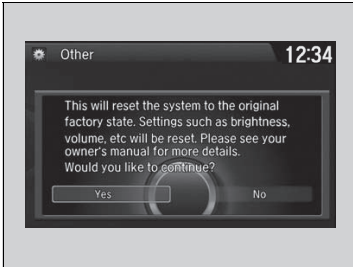
Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Bluetooth/ Wi-Fi	Bluetooth	Bluetooth On/Off Status	Selects to change the <i>Bluetooth</i> ® status.	On* ¹ /Off
		Bluetooth Device List	Pairs a new phone to HFT, edits or deletes a paired phone. 📱 Phone Setup P. 349	—
		Edit Pairing Code	Edits a pairing code. 📱 To change the pairing code setting P. 350	Random/Fixed* ¹
	Wi-Fi	Wi-Fi On/Off Status	Changes the Wi-Fi mode.	On/Off* ¹
		Wi-Fi Network List	Connects, disconnects, or deletes the Wi-Fi device.	—
		Wi-Fi Information	Shows the Wi-Fi information of the device.	—
	Default	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Bluetooth/Wi-Fi group as default.		Yes/No
Smartphone	Apple CarPlay/Android Auto		Sets up the Apple CarPlay/Android Auto connection.	Enable Once/ Always Enable/ Cancel

*1:Default Setting

Models with one display

Defaulting All the Settings

Reset all the menu and customized settings as the factory defaults.



1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **System Settings**, then press .
 - Repeat the procedure to select **Other**, then **Factory data reset**.
 - The confirmation message will appear.
3. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press to reset the settings.
4. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press again to reset the settings.
 - The confirmation message will appear. Press to select **OK**.

►► Defaulting All the Settings

When you transfer the vehicle to a third party, reset all settings to default and delete all personal data.

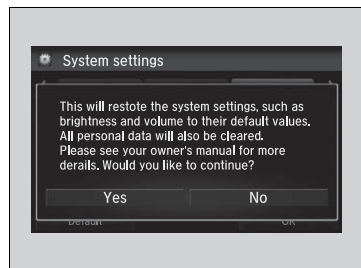
The following settings will be reset:


- Audio preset settings
- Phonebook entries
- Other display and each item settings.

Models with display audio system

Defaulting All the Settings

Reset all the menu and customized settings as the factory defaults.



1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Others** tab.
5. Select **Factory Data Reset**.
 - The confirmation message will appear.
6. Select **Yes**.
 - The confirmation message will appear.
7. Select **Yes** again to reset the settings.
 - After selecting **Yes**, the system will reboot.

►► Defaulting All the Settings

When you transfer the vehicle to a third party, reset all settings to default and delete all personal data.

If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it will reset the preinstalled apps to their factory default.

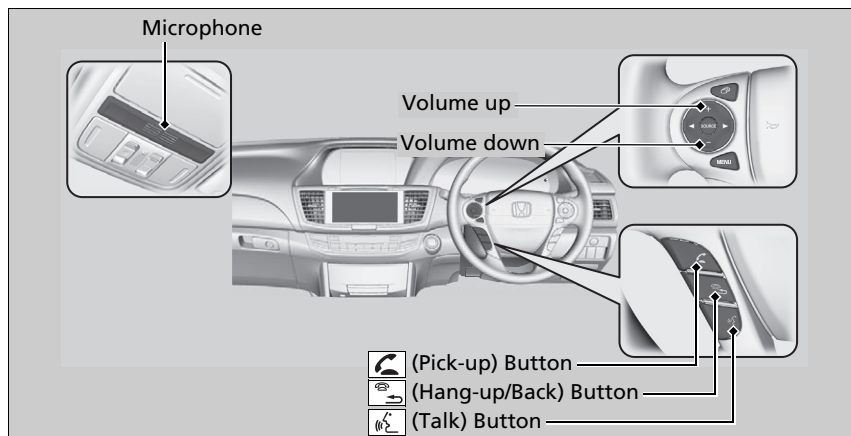
Hands-Free Telephone System


Models with display audio system


HFT (Hands-Free Telephone) System allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your mobile phone.


Using HFT

HFT Buttons



 **(Pick-up) button:** Press to answer an incoming call.

 **(Hang-up/back) button:** Press to end a call, go back to the previous command, or cancel a command.

 **(Talk) button:** Press to call a number with a stored voice tag.

MENU button: Press to display **Speed Dial**, **Call History**, or **Redial** on the phone screen.


Hands-Free Telephone System

To use HFT, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities, ask a dealer or your local Honda.

To use the system, the **Bluetooth On/Off Status** setting must be **On**.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 308

Voice control tips

- Aim the vents away from the ceiling and close the windows, as noise coming from them may interfere with the microphone.
- Press and release the  button when you want to call a number using a stored voice tag. Speak clearly and naturally after a beep.
- If the microphone picks up voices other than yours, the command may be misinterpreted.
- To change the volume level, select the audio system's **VOL** (Volume) or use the remote audio controls on the steering wheel.



Up to five speed dial entries can be displayed among a total of 20 that can be entered. If there is no entries in the system, Speed Dial is disabled.

➤ **Speed Dial** P. 354

Up to five call histories can be displayed. If there is no call histories, Call History is disabled.

Continued

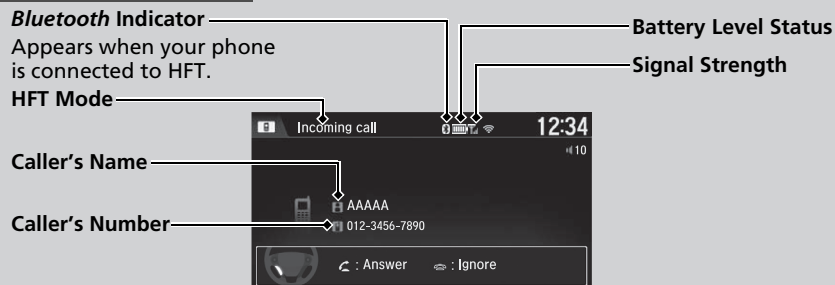
To go to the **Phone menu** screen:

1. Select .
2. Select **Phone** to switch the display to the phone screen.
3. Select .

HFT Status Display

The audio/information screen and audio/information touch screen notify you when there is an incoming call.

Audio/information screen



Audio/information touch screen



Hands-Free Telephone System

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology

The *Bluetooth®* word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under licence. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

HFT Limitations

An incoming call on HFT will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

HFT Status Display

The information that appears on the audio/information screen and audio/information touch screen varies between phone models.

Except African right-hand drive models

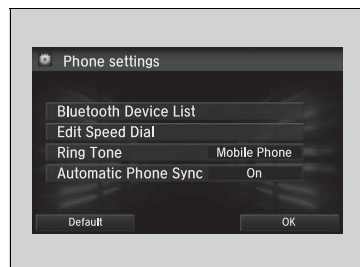
You can change the system language.

 **Customized Features** P. 308

HFT Menus

The ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY  or ON *¹ to use the system.

■ Phone settings screen

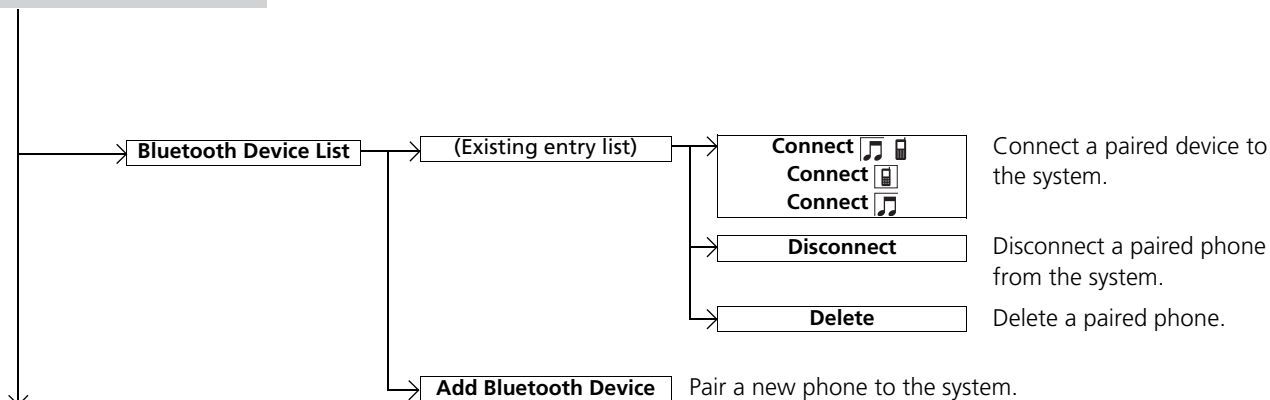


1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Phone**.

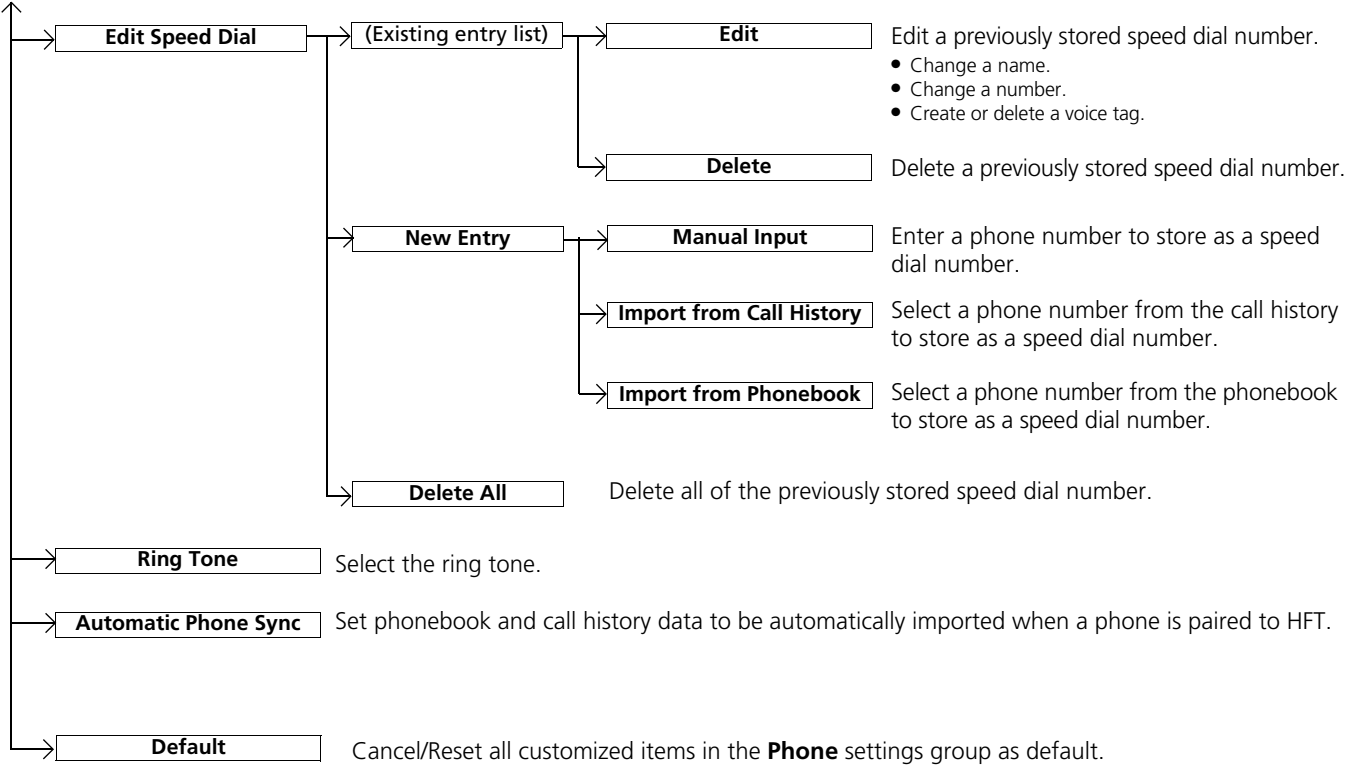
⌘ HFT Menu

To use HFT, you must first pair your *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone to the system while the vehicle is parked.

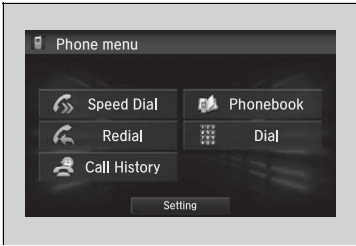
Some functions are limited while driving.



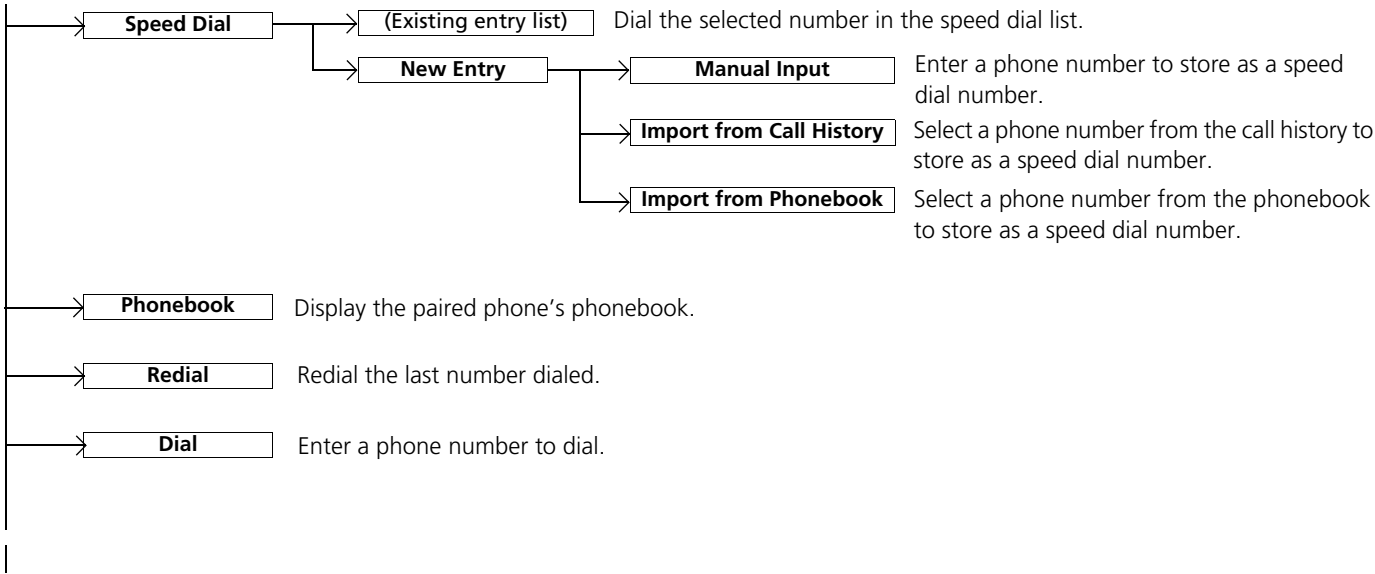
*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

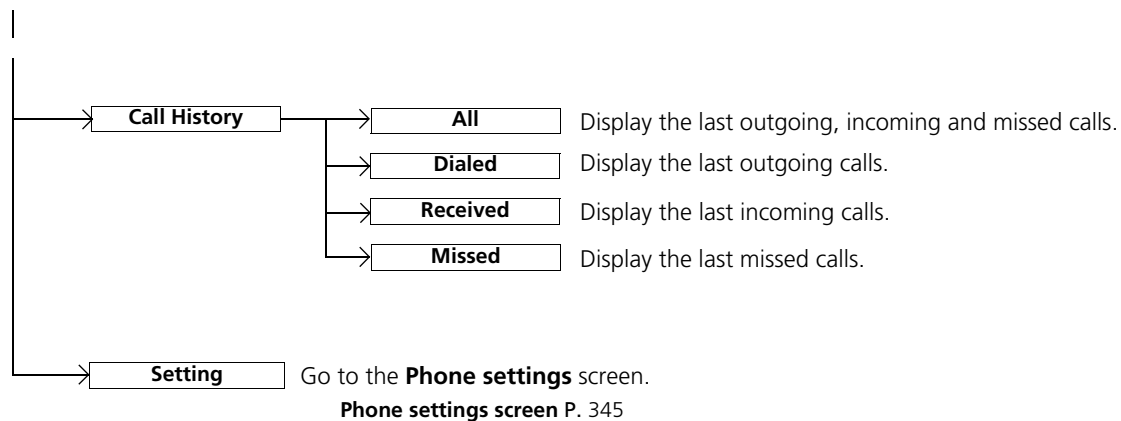


■ Phone menu screen

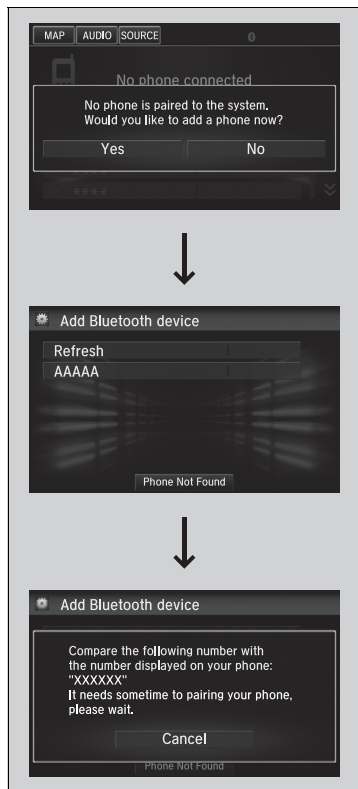


1. Select .
2. Select **Phone**.
3. Select .





Phone Setup



■ To pair a mobile phone (No phone has been paired to the system)

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Yes**.
3. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode, then select **Continue**.
 - ▶ HFT automatically searches for a *Bluetooth* device.
4. Select your phone when it appears on the list.
 - ▶ If your phone does not appear, you can select **Refresh** to search again.
 - ▶ If your phone still does not appear, select **Phone not found** and search for *Bluetooth* devices using your phone. From your phone, search for **Honda HFT**.
5. The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information touch screen.
 - ▶ Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match. This may vary by phone.
6. A notification appears on the screen if pairing is successful.

Phone Setup

Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to the system before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

Phone Pairing Tips:




- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is connected to HFT.
- If your phone is not ready for pairing or not found by the system, the system will return to the previous screen.

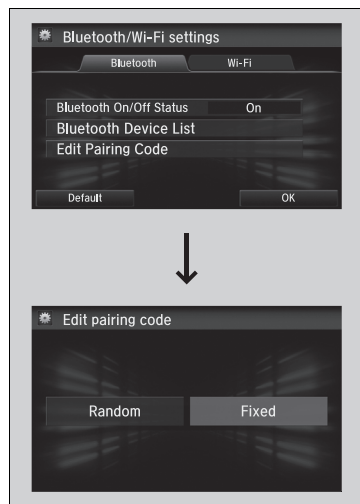
If there is an active connection to Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, pairing of additional *Bluetooth*-compatible devices is unavailable and **Add Bluetooth Device** is greyed out from the **Bluetooth Device List** screen.

Continued




■ To change the currently paired phone

1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.
 ► **Phone settings screen** P. 345
2. Select **Bluetooth Device List**.
3. Select a phone to connect.
 ► HFT disconnects the current phone and starts searching for another paired phone.
4. Select **Connect** , **Connect** , or **Connect** .



■ To change the pairing code setting

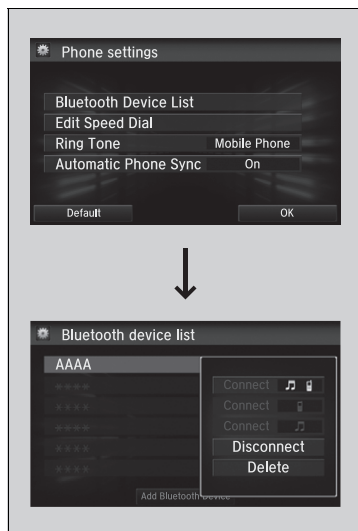
1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Bluetooth/Wi-Fi**.
4. Select the **Bluetooth** tab.
5. Select **Edit Pairing Code**.
6. Select **Fixed** or **Random**.

►► To change the pairing code setting

The default pairing code is **0000** until you change the setting.

To create your own, select **Fixed**, and delete the current code, then enter a new one.

For a randomly generated pairing code each time you pair a phone, select **Random**.

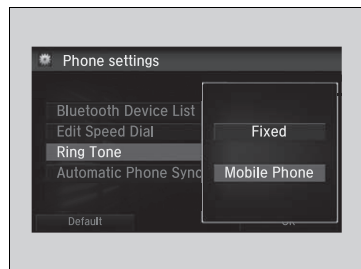


■ To delete a paired phone

1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.
 ▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 345
2. Select **Bluetooth Device List**.
3. Select a phone you want to delete.
4. Select **Delete**.
5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

■ Ring Tone

You can change the ring tone setting.



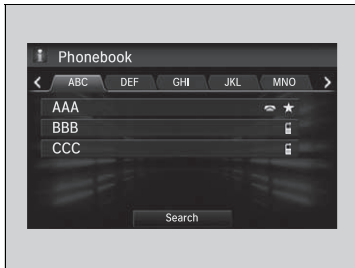
1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.
 ➤ **Phone settings screen** P. 345
2. Select **Ring Tone**.
3. Select **Fixed** or **Mobile Phone**.

» Ring Tone

Fixed: The fixed ring tone sounds from the speaker.

Mobile Phone: For certain connected phones, the ring tone stored in the phone sounds from the speakers.

Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Call History



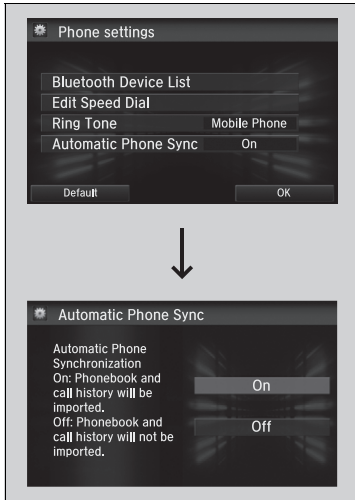
■ When Automatic Phone Sync is set to On:

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and call history are automatically imported to the system.

■ Changing the Automatic Phone Sync setting

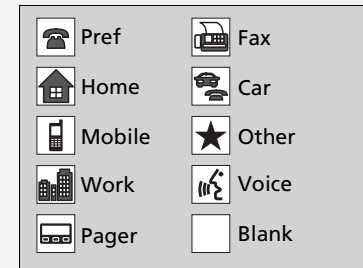
1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.
2. Select **Automatic Phone Sync**.
3. Select **On** or **Off**.

➡ **Phone settings screen** P. 345



Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Call History

When you select a person from the list in the mobile phonebook, you can see up to three category icons. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.

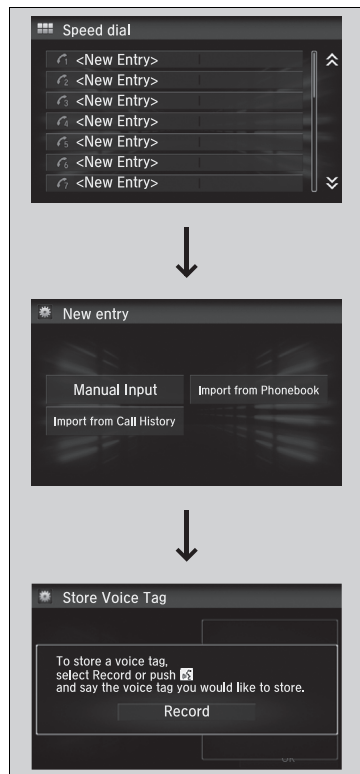


On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to the system.

The phonebook is updated after every connection. Call history is updated after every connection or call.

■ Speed Dial

Up to 20 speed dial numbers can be stored per phone.



To store a speed dial number:

1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.

► **Phone menu screen** P. 347

2. Select **Speed Dial**.

3. Select **New Entry**.

From **Import from Call History**:

- Select a number from the call history.

From **Manual Input**:

- Input the number manually.

From **Import from Phonebook**:

- Select a number from the connected mobile phone's imported phonebook.

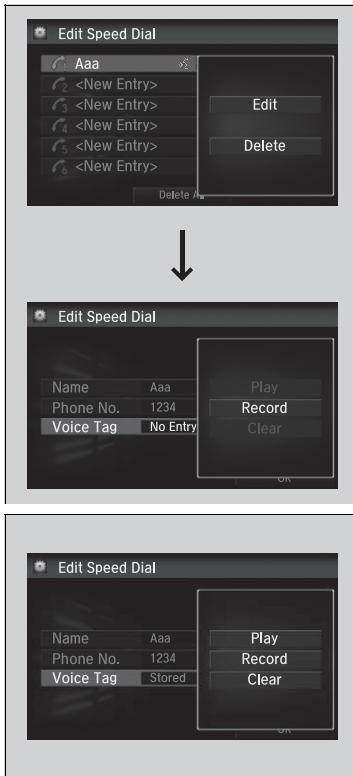
4. When the speed dial is successfully stored, you are asked to create a voice tag for the number. Select **Yes** or **No**.

5. Select **Record** to store a voice tag for the speed dial entry.


- Using the [RECORD] button, follow the prompts to store a voice tag for the speed dial entry.

» Speed Dial

When a voice tag is stored, press the [CALL] button to call the number using the voice tag. Say "Call" and the voice tag name.



■ To add a voice tag to a stored speed dial number

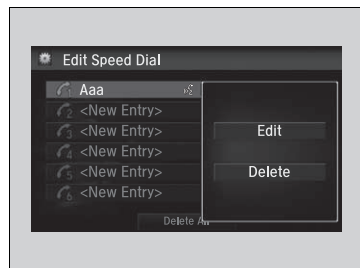
1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.
▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 345
2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.
▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Edit**.
4. Select **Voice Tag**.
▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Record**.
5. Select **Record**, or use the  button and follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.

■ To delete a voice tag

1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.
▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 345
2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.
▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Edit**.
4. Select **Voice Tag**.
▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Clear**.
5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

⌘ Speed Dial

Avoid using duplicate voice tags.
Avoid using "home" as a voice tag.
It is easier for the system to recognize a longer name.
For example, use "John Smith" instead of "John."



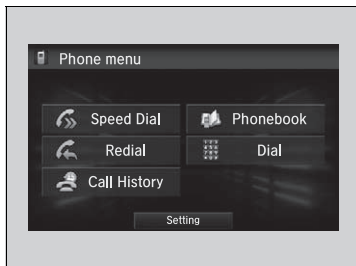
■ To edit a speed dial

1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.
 ► **Phone settings screen** P. 345
2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.
 ► From the pop-up menu, select **Edit**.
4. Select a setting you want.

■ To delete a speed dial

1. Go to the **Phone settings** screen.
 ► **Phone settings screen** P. 345
2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.
 ► From the pop-up menu, select **Delete**.
4. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

Making a Call




You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported phonebook, call history, speed dial entries, or redial.

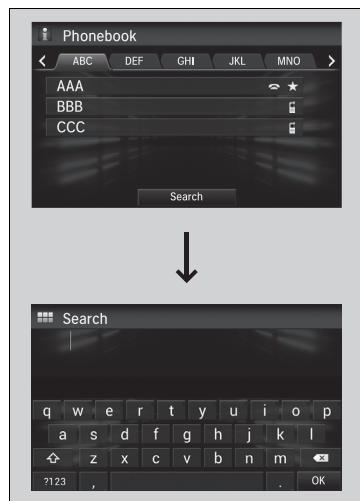
☒ Making a Call

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.

Any voice-tagged speed dial entry can be dialed by voice from most screens.

Press the  button and say "Call" and the voice tag name.

While there is an active connection with Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, phone calls cannot be made with Hands-Free Telephone and are only made from Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.



■ To make a call using the imported phonebook

1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.
 ➤ **Phone menu screen** P. 347
2. Select **Phonebook**.
3. Select a name.
 ► You can also search by letter. Select **Search**.
 ► Use the keyboard on the touch screen for entering name, if multiple numbers exist select a number.
4. Select a number.
 ► Dialing starts automatically.

■ To make a call using a phone number

1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.
 ➤ **Phone menu screen** P. 347
2. Select **Dial**.
3. Select a number.
 ► Use the keyboard on the touch screen for entering numbers.
4. Select **Dial**.
 ► Dialing starts automatically.

►► To make a call using the imported phonebook

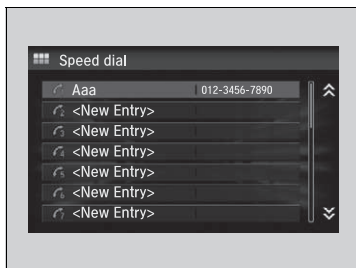
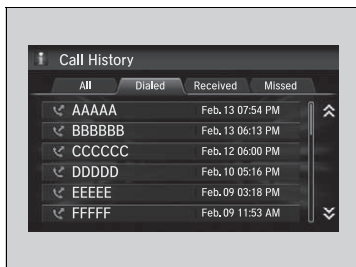
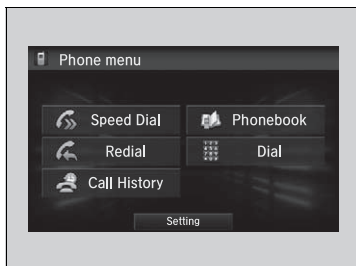
This function is disabled while the vehicle is moving. However, you can call a stored voice-tagged speed dial number using voice commands.

- **Limitations for Manual Operation** P. 259
- **Speed Dial** P. 354

►► To make a call using a phone number

This function is disabled while the vehicle is moving. However, you can call a stored voice-tagged speed dial number using voice commands.

- **Limitations for Manual Operation** P. 259
- **Speed Dial** P. 354



■ To make a call using redial

1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.
 ► **Phone menu screen** P. 347
2. Select **Redial**.
 ► Dialing starts automatically.

■ To make a call using the call history


Call history is stored by **All**, **Dialed**, **Received**, and **Missed**.

1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.
 ► **Phone menu screen** P. 347
2. Select **Call History**.
3. Select **All**, **Dialed**, **Received**, or **Missed**.
4. Select a number.
 ► Dialing starts automatically.

■ To make a call using a speed dial entry

1. Go to the **Phone menu** screen.
 ► **Phone menu screen** P. 347
2. Select **Speed Dial**.
3. Select a number.
 ► Dialing starts automatically.


► To make a call using redial

Press and hold the  button to redial the last number dialed in your phone's history.


► To make a call using the call history

The call history appears only when a phone is connected to HFT, and displays the last 20 dialed, received, or missed calls.

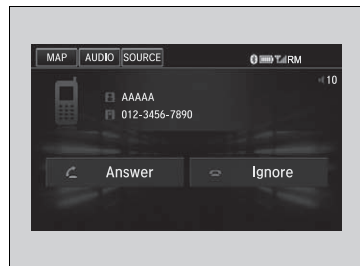
► To make a call using a speed dial entry

When a voice tag is stored, press the  button to call the number using the voice tag.


► **Speed Dial** P. 354


Any voice-tagged speed dial entry can be dialed by voice from any screen.
 Press the  button and follow the prompts.

■ Receiving a Call




When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds (if activated) and the incoming call screen appears.


Press the  button to answer the call.

Press the  button to decline or end the call.


▶▶ Receiving a Call



Call Waiting

Press the  button to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.

Press the  button again to return to the current call.

Select **Ignore** to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.

Press the  button if you want to hang up the current call.

You can select the icons on the touch screen instead of the  and  buttons.

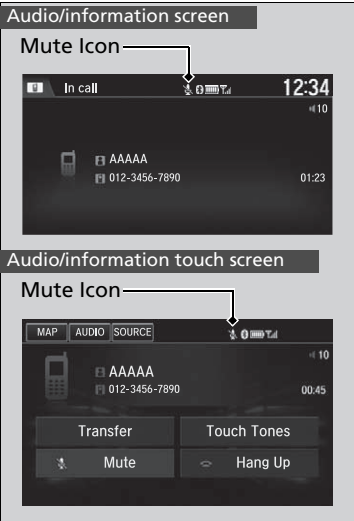
Options During a Call

The following options are available during a call.

Mute: Mute your voice.

Transfer: Transfer a call from the system to your phone.

Touch Tones: Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.



The available options are shown on the lower half of the audio/information touch screen.

Select the option.

- ▶ The mute icon appears when **Mute** is selected. Select **Mute** again to turn it off.

Options During a Call

Touch Tones: Available on some phones.

You can select the icons on the audio/information touch screen.

Driving



This chapter discusses driving, refueling, and information on items such as accessories.

Before Driving	364
Towing a Trailer	368
When Driving	
Models without keyless access system	
Starting the Engine	374
Models with keyless access system	
Starting the Engine	376
Precautions While Driving.....	382
Automatic Transmission	383
Automatic transmission models with 6 positions	
Shifting	384
Automatic transmission models with 5 positions	
Shifting	386
ECON Button	390
Cruise Control*	391

Front Sensor Camera*	394
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*	396
Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System*	407
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)*	411
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System*	418
LaneWatch*	420
Deflation Warning System*	422
Braking	
Brake System	426
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)	428
Brake Assist System.....	429
Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)*	430
Emergency Stop Signal.....	438

Parking Your Vehicle	
When Stopped	439
Parking Sensor System*	440
Multi-View Rear Camera*	
About Your Multi-View Rear Camera.....	444
Refueling	
Fuel Information	445
How to Refuel	446
Fuel Economy and CO₂ Emissions	
Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO ₂ Emissions	447
Accessories and Modifications	
Accessories	448
Modifications.....	448

* Not available on all models

Driving Preparation

Check the following items before you start driving.

Exterior Checks

- Make sure there are no obstructions on the windows, door mirrors, exterior lights, or other parts of the vehicle.
 - ▶ Remove any frost, snow, or ice.
 - ▶ Remove any snow on the roof, as this can slip down and obstruct your field of vision while driving. If frozen solid, remove ice once it has softened.
 - ▶ When removing ice from around the wheels, be sure not to damage the wheel or wheel components.
- Make sure the bonnet is securely closed.
 - ▶ If the bonnet opens while driving, your front view will be blocked.
- Make sure the tyres are in good condition.
 - ▶ Check air pressures, check for damage and excessive wear.

🔍 **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 484
- Make sure there are no people or objects behind or around the vehicle.
 - ▶ There are blind spots from the inside.

Exterior Checks

NOTICE

When doors are frozen shut, use warm water around the door edges to melt any ice. Do not try to force them open, as this can damage the rubber trim around the doors. When done, wipe dry to avoid further freezing.

Do not pour warm water into the key cylinder. You will be unable to insert the key if the water freezes in the hole.

Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite flammable materials left under the bonnet, causing a fire. If you've parked your vehicle for an extended period, inspect and remove any debris that may have collected, such as dried grass and leaves that have fallen or have been carried in for use as a nest by a small animal. Also check under the bonnet for leftover flammable materials after you or someone else has performed maintenance on your vehicle.

Interior Checks

- Store or secure all items on board properly.
 - Carrying too much luggage, or improperly storing it, can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, stopping distance, and tyres, and make it unsafe.
 - ✎ **Load Limit** P. 367
- Do not pile items higher than the seat height.
 - They can block your view and may be thrown forward in the event of sudden braking.
- Do not place anything in the front seat footwells. Make sure to secure the floor mat.
 - An object or unsecured floor mat can interfere with your brake and accelerator pedal operation while driving.
- If you have any animals on board, do not let them move around in the vehicle.
 - They may interfere with driving and a crash could occur.
- Securely close all doors and the boot.
- Adjust your seating position properly.
 - Adjust the head restraint, too.
 - ✎ **Adjusting the Seats** P. 184
 - ✎ **Adjusting the Head Restraints** P. 188
- Adjust the mirrors and steering wheel properly for your driving.
 - Adjust them while sitting in the proper driving position.
 - ✎ **Adjusting the Mirrors** P. 181
 - ✎ **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** P. 180

Interior Checks

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the boot or tow a trailer, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

Models with headlight adjuster

You can adjust the low beam headlight angle by yourself

✎ **Headlight Adjuster*** P. 168

Models with LED low beam headlights

Your vehicle is equipped with the automatic headlight adjusting system that automatically adjusts the vertical angle of the low beam headlights.

- Be sure items placed on the floor behind the front seats cannot roll under the seats.
 - They can interfere with the driver's ability to operate the pedals, or the operation of the seats.
- Everyone in the vehicle must fasten their seat belt.
 - 📌 **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 41
- Make sure that the indicators in the instrument panel come on when you start the vehicle, and go off soon after.
 - Always have a dealer check the vehicle if a problem is indicated.
 - 📌 **Indicators** P. 80

Load Limit

When you load luggage, the total weight of the vehicle, all passengers, and luggage must not exceed the maximum permissible weight.

📖 **Specifications** P. 528

Australian and New Zealand models

The load for the front and rear axles also must not exceed the maximum permissible axle weight.

📖 **Specifications** P. 528

Load Limit

⚠️ WARNING

Overloading or improper loading can affect handling and stability and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all load limits and other loading guidelines in this manual.

Towing a Trailer

Except Australian, New Zealand, and African right-hand drive models

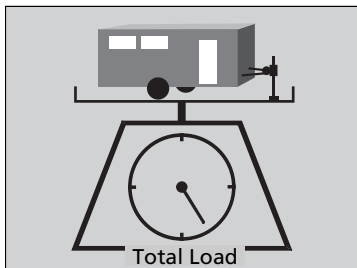
Your vehicle is not designed to tow a trailer. Attempting to do so can void your warranties.

Australian, New Zealand, and African right-hand drive models

Towing Preparation

Towing Load Limits

Your vehicle can tow a trailer if you carefully observe the load limits, use the proper equipment, and follow the towing guidelines. Check the load limits before driving.



■ Total trailer weight

Do not exceed the maximum towing weight of the trailer and towbar (with/without brakes), luggage and everything in or on it.

Towing loads in excess of the maximum towing weight can seriously affect vehicle handling and performance and can damage the engine and drivetrain.

⌘ Towing Load Limits

⚠ WARNING

Exceeding any load limit or improperly loading your vehicle and trailer can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Check the loading of your vehicle and trailer carefully before starting to drive.

Check if all loads are within limits at a public scale. If a public scale is not available, add the estimated weight of your luggage load to the weight of your trailer (as quoted by the manufacturer), and the trailer nose load.

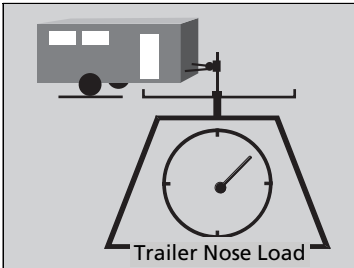
Break-in Period

Avoid towing a trailer during your vehicle's first 1,000 km.

If you tow a trailer in mountainous conditions, remember to reduce 10% of the combined vehicle and trailer weights from the maximum towing weight for every 1,000 metres of elevation.

Never exceed the maximum towing weight and any specified load limit.

⌘ **Specifications** P. 528, 530, 533



■ Trailer Nose load

The trailer nose load should never exceed 50 kg. This is the amount of weight the trailer puts on the towbar when it is fully-loaded. As a rule of thumb for trailer weights of less than 500 kg, the trailer nose load should be 10 percent of the total trailer package.

- Excessive trailer nose load reduces front tyre traction and steering control. Too little trailer nose load can make the trailer unstable and cause it to sway.
- To achieve a proper trailer nose load, start by loading 60% of the load toward the front of the trailer and 40% toward the rear. Readjust the load as needed.

■ Towing Equipment and Accessories

Towing equipment varies by the size of your trailer, how much load you are towing, and where you are towing.

■ Towbars

The towbar must be of an approved type and properly bolted to the underbody.

■ Safety chains

Always use safety chains when you tow a trailer. Leave enough slack to allow the trailer to turn corners easily, but do not allow the chains to drag on the ground.

■ Trailer brakes

If you are thinking of getting a trailer that has brakes, be sure they are electronically actuated. Do not attempt to tap into your vehicle's hydraulic system. No matter how successful it may seem, any attempt to attach trailer brakes to your vehicle's hydraulic system will lower braking effectiveness and create a potential hazard.

■ Additional towing equipment

There may be laws requiring special outside mirrors when towing a trailer. Even if mirrors are not required in your locale, you should install special mirrors if visibility is restricted in any way.

■ Trailer light

Trailer lights and equipment must comply with the regulations of the country where you are driving. Check with your local trailer sales or rental agency for the requirements in the area where you plan to tow.

► Towing Equipment and Accessories

Make sure that all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and that it meets the regulations of the country where you are driving.

Consult your trailer sales or rental agency if any other items are recommended or required for your towing situation.

The lighting and wiring of trailers can vary by type and brand. If a connector is required, it should only be installed by a qualified technician.

Driving Safely with a Trailer

■ Things You Need To Know Before Towing a Trailer

- Have the trailer properly serviced and keep it in good condition.
- Make sure that all the weights and load in the vehicle and trailer are within limits.
📌 Towing Load Limits P. 368
- Securely attach the tow bar, safety chains, and other necessary parts to the trailer.
- Securely store all the items in and on the trailer so that they do not shift while driving.
- Check if the lights and brakes on the trailer are working properly.
- Check the pressures of the trailer tyres, including the spare.
- Check regulations concerning the maximum speed or driving restrictions for vehicles towing trailers. If you are driving across several countries, check each country's requirements before leaving home, because regulations may vary.

■ Towing Speeds and Gears

- Drive slower than normal.
- Obey posted speed limits for vehicles with trailers.
- Use the **[D]** position when towing a trailer on level roads.

📌 Driving Safely with a Trailer

Operating speed when towing a trailer is restricted up to 100 km/h.

Parking

In addition to the normal precautions, place wheel chocks at each of the trailer's tyres.

We recommend you drive uphill or less than 12% slope. Follow the trailer association's recommendations for suitable roads.

Winds caused by passing large vehicles can sway your trailer, keep a constant speed and steer straight ahead.

Always drive slowly and have someone guide you when reversing.

■ Turning and Braking

- Turn more slowly and with a wider turning arc than normal.
- Allow more time and distance for braking.
- Do not brake or turn suddenly.

■ Driving in Hilly Terrain

- Closely watch your high temperature indicator. If the indicator remains on, turn off the climate control system and reduce speed. Pull to the side of the road safely to cool down the engine if necessary.

Automatic transmission models with 5 positions

- Shift to the **[S]** position if the transmission shifts frequently.

Automatic transmission models with 6 positions

- Shift to the **[D3]** position if the transmission shifts frequently.

Trailer Stability Assist

Helps to stabilize the vehicle and trailer when trailer towing sway becomes severe.

■ How trailer stability assist works

When the vehicle and trailer become unstable while driving, trailer stability assist determines its cause. If the trailer oscillation is detected as its cause, and its swaying is increasing, the system applies brakes or controls engine output to reduce the vehicle speed.

The brake lights of your vehicle and trailer come on automatically if it is braking that reduces the vehicle speed.

⌘ Trailer Stability Assist

Trailer stability assist is not a function that prevents the vehicle and trailer from swaying. Avoid high speeds, abrupt steering, improper trailer load, and sudden braking to keep the trailer from swaying. When swayed too severely, the system becomes ineffective, and you may lose control of your vehicle, causing the trailer to roll over or get damaged.

➤ **Driving Safely with a Trailer** P. 371

Trailer towing sway is caused by:

- Crosswinds
- Improper towbar down load

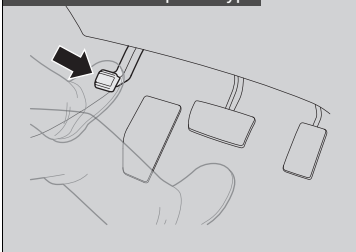
The VSA system indicator blinks during the trailer stability assist operation.

➤ **VSA Operation** P. 418

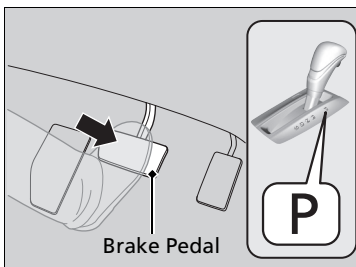
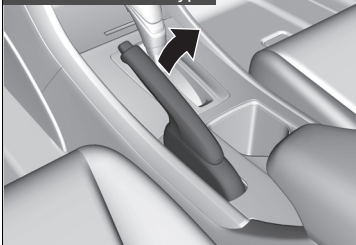
Models without keyless access system

Starting the Engine

Models with foot pedal type



Models with lever type



1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.

2. Check that the shift lever is in **P**, then depress the brake pedal.
 - ▶ Although it is possible to start the vehicle in **N**, it is safer to start it in **P**.

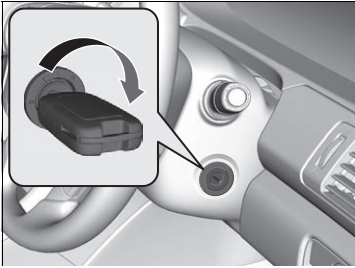
Starting the Engine


Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when starting the engine.

The engine is harder to start in cold weather and in thinner air found at altitudes above 2,400 metres.




When starting the engine in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, heating and cooling system*/climate control system*, and rear demister in order to reduce battery drain.

If the exhaust system sounds abnormal or you can smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. There may be a problem with the engine or exhaust system.



3. Turn the ignition switch to START  without depressing the accelerator pedal.




Starting to Drive

1. Keeping your right foot on the brake pedal, release the parking brake. Check that the parking brake indicator has gone off.
 **Parking Brake** P. 426
2. Put the shift lever in . Select  when reversing.
3. Gradually release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to pull away.





Hill start assist system*

Hill start assist keeps the brake engaged briefly to help to prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator.

Automatic transmission models with 5 positions


Move the shift lever to  or  when facing uphill, or  when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

Automatic transmission models with 6 positions

Move the shift lever to ,  or  when facing uphill, or  when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.


* Not available on all models

Starting the Engine

Do not hold the key in START  for more than 10 seconds.

- If the engine does not start right away, wait for at least 30 seconds before trying again.
- If the engine starts, but then immediately stops, wait at least 30 seconds before repeating step 3 while gently depressing the accelerator pedal. Release the accelerator pedal once the engine starts.

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded key (or other device) is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled.

 **Immobilizer System** P. 150

Hill start assist system*

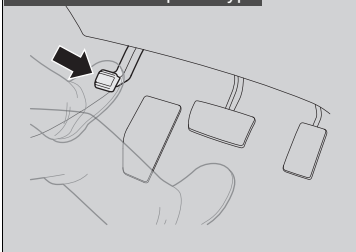
Hill start assist may not prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep or slippery slope, and does not operate on small inclines.

Hill start assist is not a replacement for the parking brake.

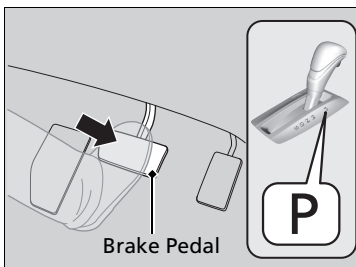
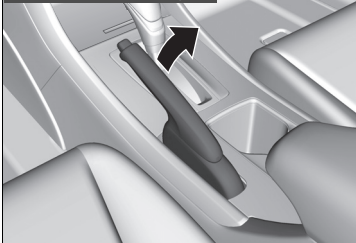
Models with keyless access system

Starting the Engine

Models with foot pedal type



Models with lever type



1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.

2. Check that the shift lever is in **P**, then depress the brake pedal.
 - Although it is possible to start the vehicle in **N**, it is safer to start it in **P**.

Starting the Engine

Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when starting the engine.

The engine is harder to start in cold weather and in thinner air found at altitudes above 2,400 metres.

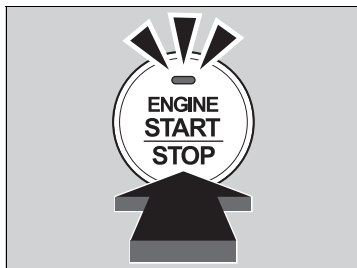
When starting the engine in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, climate control system, and rear demister in order to reduce battery drain.

If the exhaust system sounds abnormal or you can smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. There may be a problem with the engine or exhaust system.

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft.

If an improperly coded device is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled.

Immobilizer System P. 150



3. Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button without depressing the accelerator pedal.

■ Stopping the Engine

You can turn the engine off when the vehicle is completely stopped.

1. Shift to **P**.
2. Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

▶▶ Starting the Engine

Bring the keyless remote close to the **ENGINE START/STOP** button if the battery in the keyless remote is weak.

▶ **If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak**
P. 511

The engine may not start if the keyless remote is subjected to strong radio waves.

Do not hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button to start the engine.

If the engine does not start, wait at least 30 seconds before trying again.

■ Remote Engine Start*

You can remotely start the engine using the keyless remote.

► Remote Engine Start*

WARNING

Engine exhaust contains toxic carbon monoxide.


Breathing carbon monoxide can kill you or cause unconsciousness.

Never use the remote engine starter when the vehicle is parked in a garage or other area with limited ventilation.



The remote engine start may violate local laws. Before using the remote engine start, check your local laws.

■ To start the engine



With the doors locked, press the  button, then press and hold the  button.

The engine runs for up to 10 minutes without you starting the vehicle.

To extend the run time for another 10 minutes during the first run, press the  button, then press and hold the  button.

- ▶ The turn signal lights come back on three times, twice, if a 10-minute extension request was transmitted successfully.

▶▶ Remote Engine Start*

If there are buildings and obstacles between your vehicle and the remote, the range will be reduced. While the vehicle is moving, the range may be reduced.

This distance may vary by external electrical interference.

The engine may not start by the remote engine start if:

- You have disabled a remote engine start setting using the audio/information (touch) screen or multi-information display*.
- The power mode is not in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
- The shift lever is in a position other than **P**.
- The bonnet is open, or any door or the boot is unlocked.
- You have already used the remote twice to start the engine.
- Another registered keyless remote is in the vehicle.
- There is any antenna failure.
- Door is unlocked with the built-in key.
- The engine oil pressure is low.
- The engine coolant temperature is extremely high.
- The security system alarm is not set.

* Not available on all models


■ To stop the engine



Press and hold the  button for one second.

⌘ Remote Engine Start *

The engine may stop while it is running if:

- You do not start the vehicle within 10 minutes of starting the engine with the  button on the keyless remote.
- The engine is stopped by using the keyless remote.
- Door is unlocked with the built-in key.
- The bonnet is open.
- The shift lever is in a position other than **P**.
- The engine coolant temperature is extremely high.
- The engine oil pressure is low.
- The Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) comes on if there is a problem with the emissions control systems.

While the engine is running, the vehicle will automatically precondition inside the vehicle.

When it is warm outside:

- The climate control system is activated in recirculation mode.

When it is cold outside:


- The demister is activated at a moderately warm temperature.
- The rear demister and door mirror heaters* are activated.

Starting to Drive

When the engine was started using the  button* on the keyless remote

1. While depressing the brake pedal, press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

When the engine was started in any case

1. Keeping your right foot on the brake pedal, release the parking brake. Check that the parking brake indicator has gone off.
 **Parking Brake** P. 426
2. Put the shift lever in **[D]**. Select **[R]** when reversing.
3. Gradually release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to pull away.

Hill start assist system

Hill start assist keeps the brake engaged briefly to help to prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator.


Automatic transmission models with 5 positions

Move the shift lever to **[D]**, or **[S]** when facing uphill, or **[R]** when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

Automatic transmission models with 6 positions

Move the shift lever to **[D]**, **[D3]**, or **[L]** when facing uphill, or **[R]** when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

Starting to Drive

When the engine was started using the  button* on the keyless remote

The engine stops when the shift lever is moved out of **[P]** before the **ENGINE START/STOP** button is pressed. Follow the step 1 when starting to drive.

Hill start assist system

Hill start assist may not prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep or slippery slope, and does not operate on small inclines.

Hill start assist is not a replacement for the parking brake.

* Not available on all models

Precautions While Driving

■ In Rain

Avoid driving in deep water and on flooded roads. This can damage the engine, driveline, or cause electrical component failure.

■ Other Precautions

If there is a strong impact with something under the vehicle, stop in a safe location. Check the underside of the vehicle for damage or any fluid leaks.

» Precautions While Driving

CAUTION: Do not drive on the road where water is deep. Driving through deep water will cause damage to the engine and electrical equipment and the vehicle will break down.

NOTICE

Do not operate the shift lever while pressing the accelerator pedal. You could damage the transmission.

NOTICE

If you repeatedly turn the steering wheel at an extremely low speed, or hold the steering wheel on the full left or right position for a while, the electric power steering (EPS) system heats up. The system goes into a protective mode, and limits its performance. The steering wheel becomes harder and harder to operate. Once the system cools down, EPS is restored. Repeated operation under these conditions can eventually damage the system.

If the ignition switch is turned to ACCESSORY **I***1 while driving, the engine will shut down and all steering and brake power assist functions will stop, making it difficult to control the vehicle.

Do not put the shift lever in **N**, as you will lose engine braking (and acceleration) performance.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Automatic Transmission

■ Creeping

The engine runs at a higher idle speed and creeping increases. Keep the brake pedal firmly depressed when stopped.

■ Kickdown

Quickly depressing the accelerator pedal while driving uphill may cause the transmission to drop to a lower gear, unexpectedly increasing vehicle speed. Depress the accelerator pedal carefully, especially on slippery roads and curves.

⌘ Precautions While Driving

During the first 1,000 km of operation, avoid sudden acceleration or full throttle operation so as not to damage the engine or powertrain.

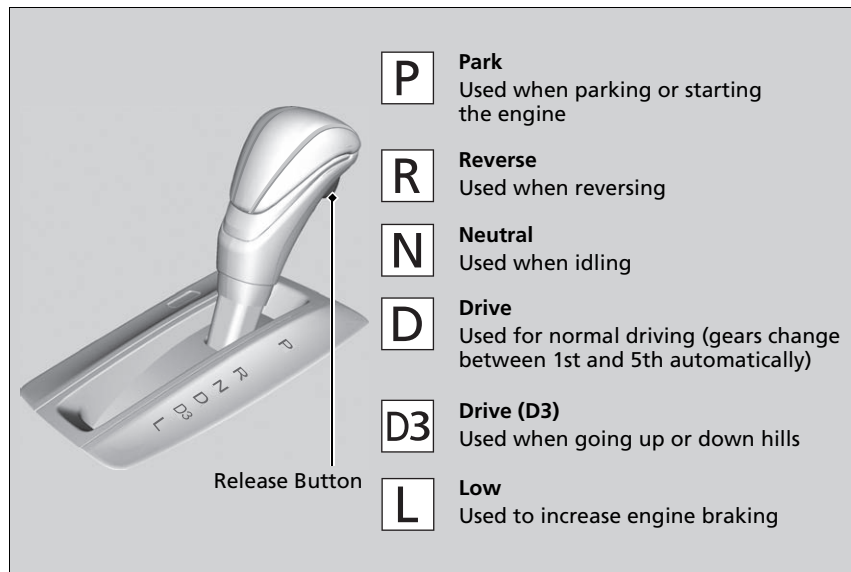
Avoid hard braking for the first 300 km. You should also follow this when the brake pads are replaced.

Automatic transmission models with 6 positions

Shifting

Change the shift position in accordance with your driving needs.

■ Shift lever positions



» Shifting

You cannot turn the ignition switch to LOCK **[0]***1 and remove the key unless the shift lever is in **[P]**.

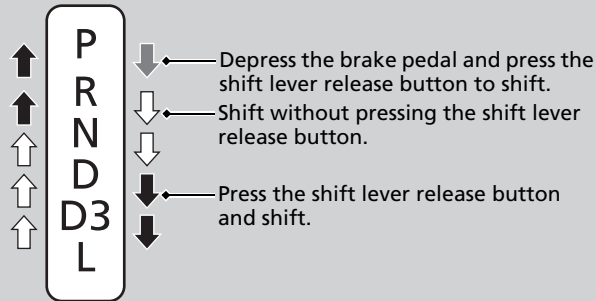
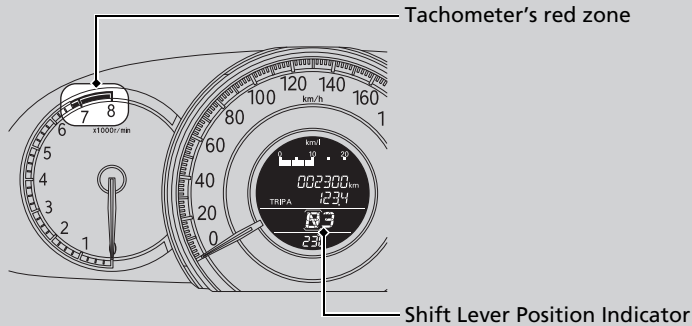
The vehicle may move forward very slightly even in **[N]** while the engine is cold.

Depress the brake pedal firmly and, when necessary, apply the parking brake.

When shifting positions in extremely low temperatures (-30°C), there may be a short delay before the shift position is displayed. Always confirm you are in the correct shift position before driving.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Shift Lever Operation



Shift Lever Operation

NOTICE

When you change the shift lever from **[D]** to **[R]** and vice versa, come to a complete stop and keep the brake pedal depressed.

Operating the shift lever before the vehicle has come to a complete standstill can damage the transmission.

Use the shift lever position indicator to check the lever position before pulling away.

If the transmission indicator blinks when driving, in any shift position, there is a problem with the transmission.

Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

The fuel supply may be cut off if you drive at engine speeds in or over the tachometer's red zone (engine speed limit). If this happens, you may experience a slight jolt.

It may not be possible to operate the shift lever if the brake pedal is applied while the shift lever release button is held down.

Depress the brake pedal first.

Automatic transmission models with 5 positions

Shifting

Change the shift position in accordance with your driving needs.

■ Shift lever positions



P

Park

Used when parking or starting the engine

R

Reverse

Used when reversing

N

Neutral

Used when idling

D

Drive

Used:

6-cylinder models

- For normal driving (gears change between 1st and 6th automatically)

4-cylinder models

- For normal driving (gears change between 1st and 5th automatically)

Models with paddle shifters

- When temporarily driving in the sequential shift mode

S

Drive (S)

Used:

- To increase engine braking

Australian, New Zealand, and African right-hand drive models

- When towing a trailer in hilly terrain

6-cylinder models

- For automatically changing gears between 1st and 5th (5th gear is used only at high speed)

4-cylinder models

- For automatically changing gears between 1st and 4th (4th gear is used only at high speed)

Models with paddle shifters

- When driving in the sequential shift mode

►► Shifting

You cannot turn the ignition switch to LOCK **[O]***1 and remove the key unless the shift lever is in **[P]**.

The vehicle may move forward very slightly even in **[N]** while the engine is cold.

Depress the brake pedal firmly and, when necessary, apply the parking brake.

When shifting gears in extremely low temperatures (-30°C), there may be a short delay before the shift is indicated in the display. Always confirm you are in the correct gear before driving.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Shift Lever Operation

Shift Lever Operation

NOTICE

When you change the shift lever from **[D]** to **[R]** and vice versa, come to a complete stop and keep the brake pedal depressed.

Operating the shift lever before the vehicle has come to a complete standstill can damage the transmission.

Use the shift lever position indicator to check the lever position before pulling away.

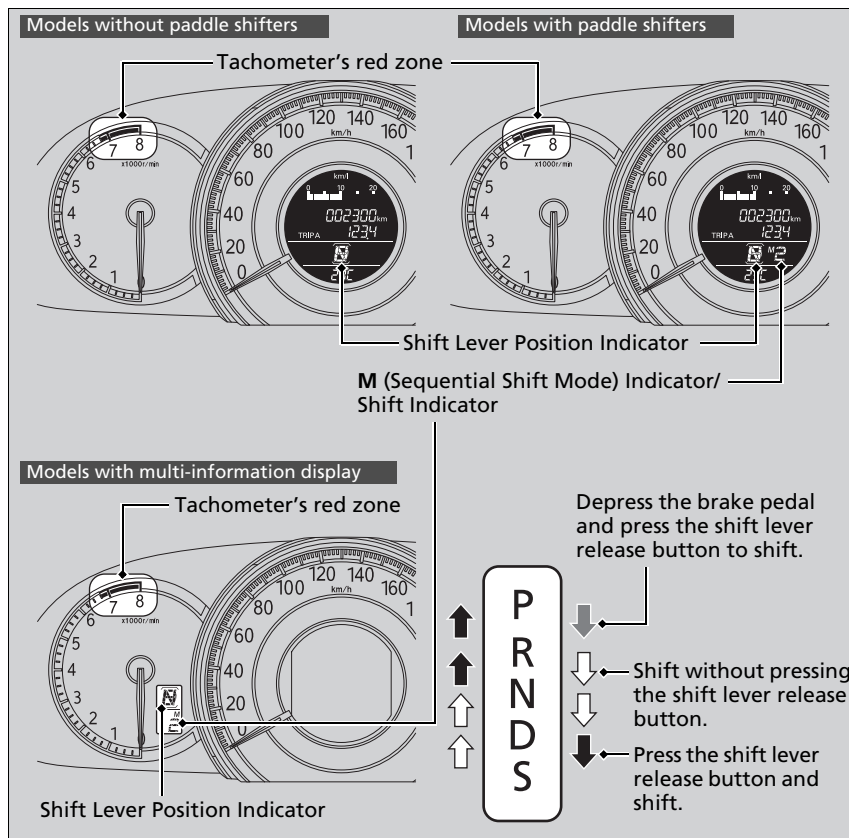
If the transmission indicator blinks when driving, in any shift position, there is a problem with the transmission.

Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

The fuel supply may be cut off if you drive at engine speeds in or over the tachometer's red zone (engine speed limit). If this happens, you may experience a slight jolt.

It may not be possible to operate the shift lever if the brake pedal is applied while the shift lever release button is held down.

Depress the brake pedal first.



Continued

■ Sequential Shift Mode*

Use the paddle shifters to change between 1st and 5th gears (4-cylinder models) or 1st and 6th gear (6-cylinder models) without removing your hands from the steering wheel. The transmission will switch to the sequential shift mode.

■ When the shift lever is in **[D]**:

The vehicle goes into the sequential shift mode momentarily, and the gear position indicator comes on.

Once you start travelling at a constant speed, the sequential shift mode will automatically switch off, and the gear position indicator will go off.

Hold the **[+]** paddle shifter for two seconds to return to normal drive.


■ When the shift lever is in **[S]**:




The vehicle will go into the sequential shift mode, and the **M** (sequential shift) indicator and gear position indicator will come on. At speeds of 10 km/h or less, the vehicle automatically shifts down into 1st gear. It will not automatically shift up, even if vehicle speed increases.

You can only pull away in 1st or 2nd gear.

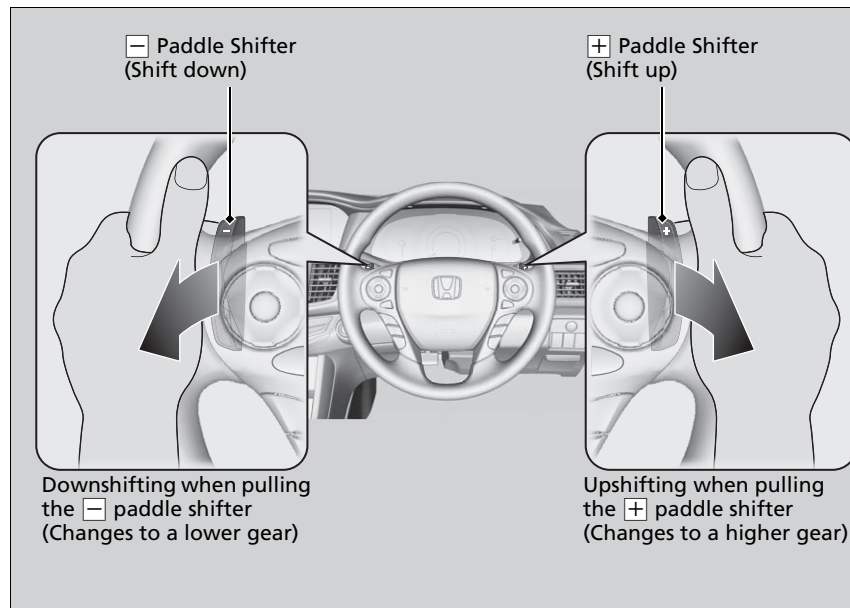
When switching out of the sequential shift mode, move the shift lever from **[S]** to **[D]**. When the sequential shift mode is cancelled, the sequential shift mode indicator and shift indicator go off.

■ Second gear lock mode

If you pull the  paddle shifter while stopped or driving at 10 km/h or less, the gear position will be locked in 2nd gear. This makes it easier to pull away on slippery surfaces such as snow covered roads.

To cancel the 2nd gear lock mode, pull the  paddle shifter, or move the shift lever from  to .

■ Sequential Shift Mode Operation *



▶▶ Sequential Shift Mode Operation *

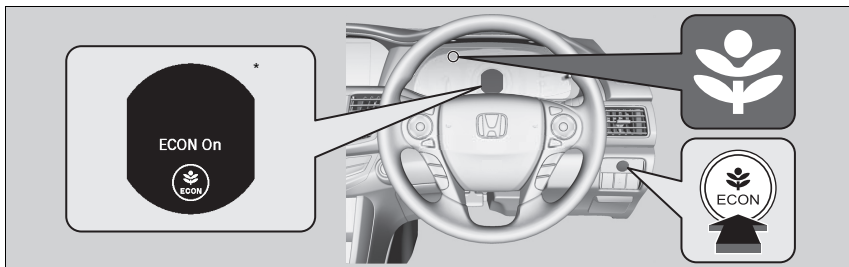
Each paddle shift operation makes a single gear change.

To change gears continuously, release the paddle shifter before pulling it again for the next gear.

If the gear position indicator blinks when you try to shift up or down, this means your vehicle speed is not in its allowable gear shifting range. Slightly accelerate to shift up and decelerate to shift down while the indicator is blinking.

* Not available on all models

ECON Button



The **ECON** button turns the ECON mode on and off.

The ECON mode helps you improve your fuel economy by adjusting the performance of the engine, transmission, heating and cooling system^{*}/climate control system^{*}, and cruise control^{*}.

Cruise Control *

Maintains a constant vehicle speed without having to keep your foot on the accelerator pedal. Use cruise control on motorways or open roads where you can travel at a constant speed with little acceleration or deceleration.

When to use

- Vehicle speed for cruise control:
Desired speed in a range above roughly 40 km/h ~
- Shift positions for cruise control:
In **[D]**, **[D3]***, or **[S]***

Always keep sufficient distance between you and the vehicle in front of you.



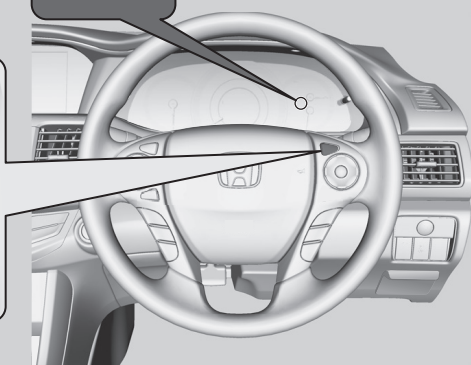
How to use

- Press the **CRUISE** button on the steering wheel.



CRUISE MAIN

CRUISE MAIN is on in the instrument panel.
Cruise control is ready to use.



⚠ Cruise Control *

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the cruise control can lead to a crash.

Use the cruise control only when travelling on open motorways in good weather.

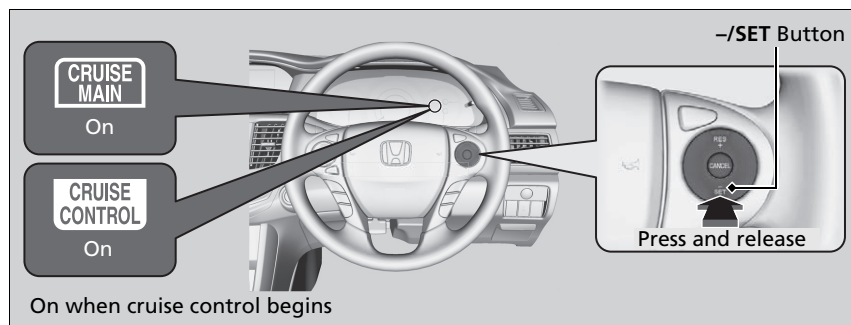
It may not be possible to maintain a constant speed when driving uphill or downhill.

When not using cruise control:
Turn off cruise control by pressing the **CRUISE** button.

While in the ECON mode, it may take relatively more time to accelerate to maintain the set speed.

* Not available on all models

■ To Set the Vehicle Speed

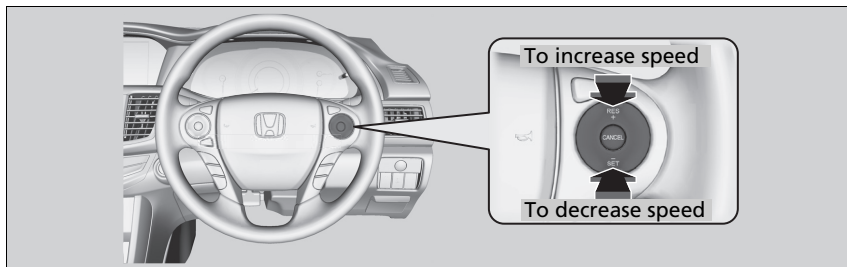


Take your foot off the pedal and press the **-/SET** button when you reach the desired speed.

The moment you release the **-/SET** button, the set speed is fixed, and cruise control begins. The **CRUISE CONTROL** indicator comes on.

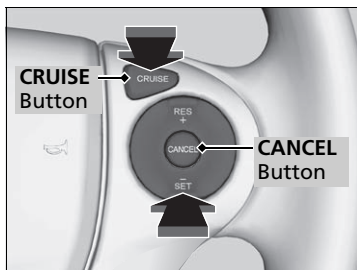
■ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/+** or **-/SET** buttons on the steering wheel.



- Each time you press the button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 km/h.
- If you keep the button pressed, the vehicle speed increases or decreases until you release it. This speed is then set.

■ To Cancel



To cancel cruise control, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **CRUISE** button.
- Depress the brake pedal.

The **CRUISE CONTROL** indicator goes off.

▶▶ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

You can set the vehicle speed using the **-/SET** button on the steering wheel when adjusting the speed with the accelerator and brake pedals.

▶▶ To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed:

After cruise control has been cancelled, you can still resume the prior set speed by pressing the **RES/+** button while driving at a speed of at least 40 km/h or more.

You cannot set or resume in the following situations:

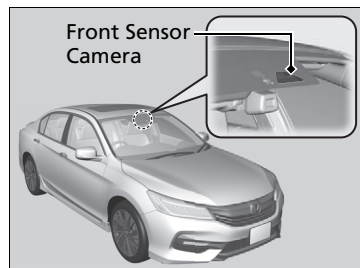
- When vehicle speed is less than 40 km/h
- When the **CRUISE** button is turned off

At vehicle speeds of 35 km/h or less, cruise control is cancelled automatically.

Front Sensor Camera *

The camera, used in systems such as LKAS, RDM, ACC, and CMBS, is designed to detect an object that triggers any of the systems to operate its functions.

■ Camera Location and Handling Tips



This camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

⌘ Front Sensor Camera *

Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windshield, the bonnet, or the front grill that could obstruct the camera's field of vision and cause the system to operate abnormally.


Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windshield within the camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windshield with a genuine Honda replacement windshield. Making even minor repairs within the camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windshield may also cause the system to operate abnormally.

After replacing the windshield, have a dealer recalibrate the camera. Proper calibration of the camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.


Do not place an object on the top of the instrument panel. It may reflect onto the windshield and prevent the system from detecting lane lines properly.

To help reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the camera's sensing system to shut off, when parking, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun. If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing. Covering the camera can concentrate heat on it.

Front Sensor Camera *

If the  message appears:

- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, also use demister mode with the airflow directed towards the camera.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windscreen temperature, which cools down the area around the camera.

If the  message appears:

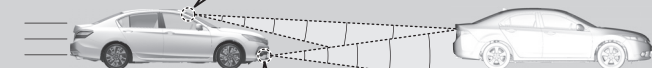
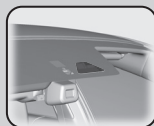
- Park your vehicle in a safe place, and clean the windscreen. If the message does not disappear after you have cleaned the windscreen and driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*

Helps maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following distance behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

When to use

The camera is located behind the rearview mirror.



The radar sensor is at the lower part of the front bumper.

- Vehicle speed for ACC: Desired speed in a range above roughly 30 km/h ~
- Shift positions for ACC: In **D** or **S**

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of ACC can lead to a crash.

Use ACC only when travelling on open motorways in good weather.

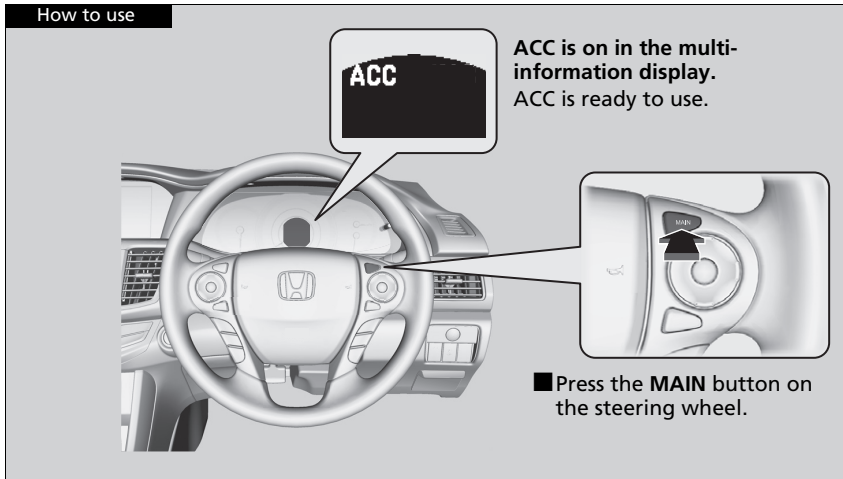
⚠ WARNING

ACC has limited braking capability. When your vehicle speed drops below 25 km/h, ACC will automatically cancel and no longer will apply your vehicle's brakes.

Always be prepared to apply the brake pedal when conditions require.

Important Reminder

As with any system, there are limits to ACC. Use the brake pedal whenever necessary, and always keep a safe distance between your vehicle and other vehicles.



Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*

When the **MAIN** button is pressed, ACC and Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) are both turned on or off.

ACC may not work properly under certain conditions.

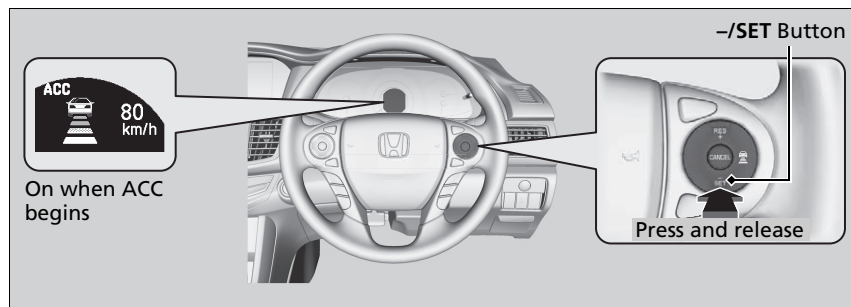
ACC Conditions and Limitations P. 401

When not using ACC: Turn off adaptive cruise by pressing the **MAIN** button. This also will turn off the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS).

Do not use ACC under the following conditions:

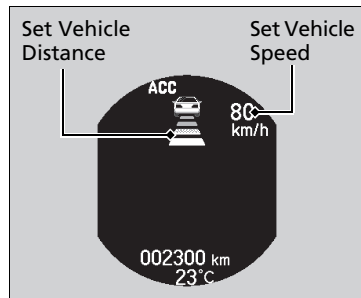
- On roads with heavy traffic or while driving in continuous stop and go traffic.
- On roads with sharp turns.
- On roads with steep downhill sections, as the set vehicle speed can be exceeded by coasting. In such cases, ACC will not apply the brakes to maintain the set speed.
- On roads with toll collection facilities or other objects between lanes of traffic, or in parking areas, or facilities with drive through access.

■ To Set the Vehicle Speed



Take your foot off the pedal and press the **-/SET** button when you reach the desired speed. The moment you release the button, the set speed is fixed, and ACC begins.

When ACC starts operating, the vehicle icon, distance bars and set speed appear on the multi-information display.

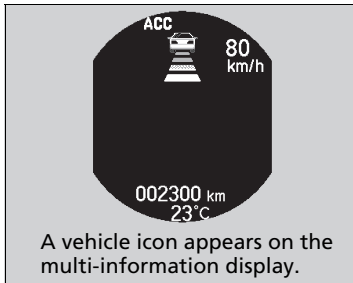
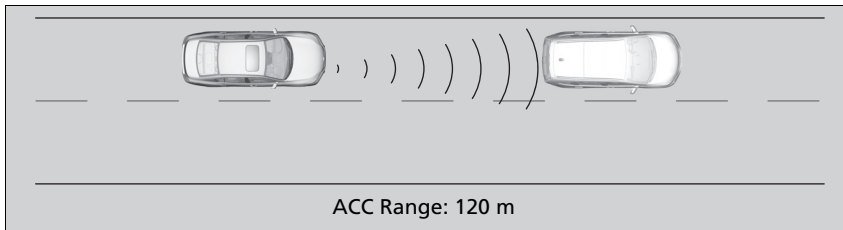


■ When in Operation

■ There is a vehicle ahead

ACC monitors if a vehicle ahead of you enters the ACC range. If a vehicle is detected doing so, the ACC system maintains or decelerates your vehicle's set speed in order to keep the vehicle's set following-distance from the vehicle ahead.

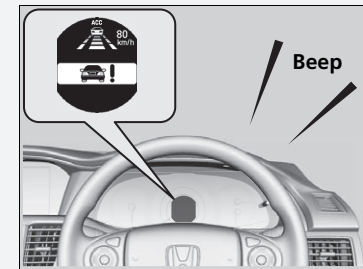
🔧 **To Set or Change Following-Distance** P. 404



When a vehicle whose speed is slower than your set speed comes in or cuts in front of you and is detected by the radar, your vehicle starts to slow down.

▶▶ When in Operation

If the vehicle detected ahead of you slows down abruptly, or if another vehicle is detected cutting in front of you, the beeper sounds and a message appears on the multi-information display. Depress the brake pedal, and keep an appropriate distance from the vehicle ahead.



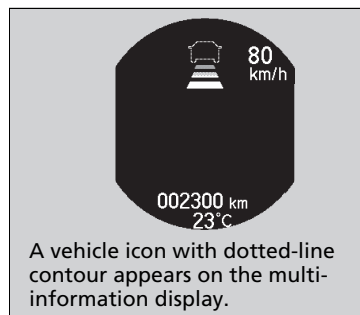
Even if the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle detected ahead is short, ACC may start accelerating your vehicle under the following circumstances:

- The vehicle ahead of you is going at almost the same speed as, or faster than, your vehicle.
- A vehicle that cuts in front of you is going faster than your vehicle, gradually increasing the distance between the vehicles.

You can also set the system to beep when a vehicle detected in front of you comes in and goes out of the ACC detecting range. Change the **ACC Vehicle Ahead Detect Beep** setting.

🔧 **Customized Features** P. 118, 308

■ There is no vehicle ahead



Your vehicle maintains the set speed without having to keep your foot on the brake or accelerator pedal.

If there previously was a vehicle detected ahead that kept your vehicle from travelling at the set speed, ACC accelerates your vehicle to the set speed, and then maintains it.

■ When you depress the accelerator pedal

You can temporarily increase the vehicle speed.

ACC stays on unless you cancel it. Once you release the accelerator pedal, the system resumes the set speed or a sufficient speed to keep the following-distance.

▶ When you depress the accelerator pedal

While the accelerator pedal is depressed, the system does not apply the brakes to keep the following-distance, as well as the **BRAKE** message on the multi-information display does not appear.

▶ **When in Operation** P. 399

■ ACC Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off and the **ACC** indicator will come on under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the ACC functions.

📷 **Front Sensor Camera*** P. 394

■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).

■ Vehicle conditions

- The outside of the windscreen is blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (Wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- The parking brake is applied.
- When the radar sensor cover is dirty.
- When the front of the vehicle tilts up due to heavy luggage in the boot or rear seats.
- When tyre chains are installed.

📷 ACC Conditions and Limitations

The radar sensor for ACC is shared with the collision mitigation braking system (CMBS).

📷 **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)*** P. 430

Do not put a sticker on the radar sensor cover or replace the radar sensor cover.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behavior of the system (e.g. the warning message appears too frequently).

If the front of the vehicle is impacted in any of the following situations, the radar sensor may not work properly. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer:

- The vehicle mounted onto a bump, curb, chock, embankment, etc.
- You drive the vehicle where the water is deep.
- Your vehicle has a frontal collision.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

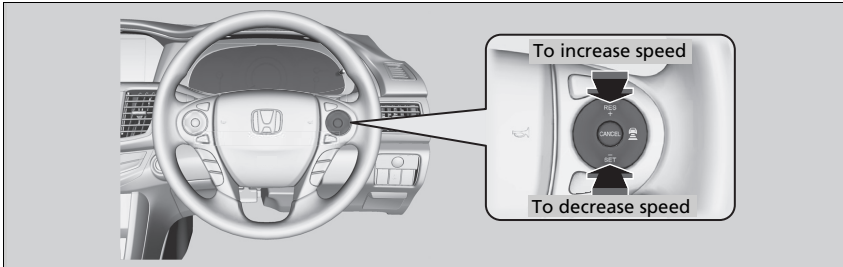
📷 **Front Sensor Camera*** P. 394

■ Detection limitations

- A vehicle or pedestrian suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle or pedestrian ahead of you is too short.
- A vehicle cuts in front of you at a slow speed, and it brakes suddenly.
- When you accelerate rapidly and approach the vehicle or pedestrian ahead of you at high speed.
- The vehicle ahead of you is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, or other small vehicle.
- When there are animals in front of your vehicle.
- When you drive on a curved or winding or undulating road that makes it difficult for the sensor to properly detect a vehicle or a pedestrian in front of you.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle or pedestrian in front of you is significantly large.
- An oncoming vehicle suddenly comes in front of you.
- Your vehicle abruptly crosses over in front of an oncoming vehicle.
- When driving through a narrow iron bridge.
- When the vehicle ahead of you brakes suddenly.
- When the vehicle ahead of you has a unique shape.
- When your vehicle or the vehicle ahead of you is driving on one edge of the lane.

■ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/+** or **-/SET** buttons on the steering wheel.

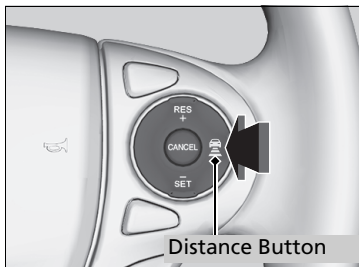



- Each time you press the button up or down, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 km/h accordingly.
- If you keep the button pressed up or down, the vehicle speed increases or decreases by about 10 km/h accordingly.

☒ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

If a vehicle detected ahead is going at a speed slower than your increased set speed, ACC may not accelerate your vehicle. This is to maintain the set following-distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.

■ To Set or Change Following-Distance







Press the  (distance) button to change the ACC following-distance.

Each time you press the button, the following-distance (the interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of you) setting cycles through extra long, long, middle, and short following-distances.

Determine the most appropriate following-distance setting based on your specific driving conditions. Be sure to adhere to any following-distance requirements set by local regulation.

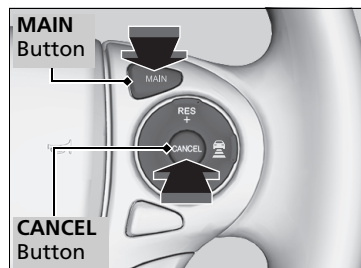
The higher your vehicle’s following-speed is, the longer the short, middle, long or extra long following-distance becomes. See the following examples for your reference.

Vehicle Distance		When the Set Speed is:	
		80 km/h	104 km/h
Short		26 metres 1.1 sec	31 metres 1.1 sec
Middle		34 metres 1.5 sec	43 metres 1.5 sec
Long		48 metres 2.1 sec	62 metres 2.1 sec
Extra Long		66 metres 3.0 sec	87 metres 3.0 sec

⌘ To Set or Change Following-Distance

The driver must in all circumstances preserve a sufficient braking distance from the vehicle which precedes it and be aware that minimum distances or times of spacing can be provided by the provisions of the Motorway Code locally applicable and that it is the driver’s responsibility to respect those laws.

■ To Cancel



To cancel ACC, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **MAIN** button.
- ▶ The **ACC** indicator (white) goes off.
- Depress the brake pedal.

■ Automatic cancellation

The beeper sounds and a message appears on the multi-information display when ACC is automatically cancelled. Any of these conditions may cause the ACC cancellation:

- Bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.)
- When the radar sensor at the lower part of the front bumper gets dirty.
- The vehicle ahead of you cannot be detected.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected, or the tyres are skidding.
- Driving on a mountainous road, or driving off road for extended periods.
- Abrupt steering wheel movement.
- When the ABS, VSA or CMBS is activated.
- When the ABS or VSA system indicator comes on.
- When you manually apply the parking brake.
- When the detected vehicle within the ACC range is too close to your vehicle.
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windscreen, gets dirty.
- When trailer stability assist* is activated.

▶ **Trailer Stability Assist** P. 373

▶▶ To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed: After you have cancelled ACC, you can resume the prior set speed while it is still displayed. Press the **RES/+** button when driving at a speed of at least 30 km/h or more.

The set speed cannot be set or resumed when ACC has been turned off using the **MAIN** button. Press the **MAIN** button to activate the system, then set the desired speed.

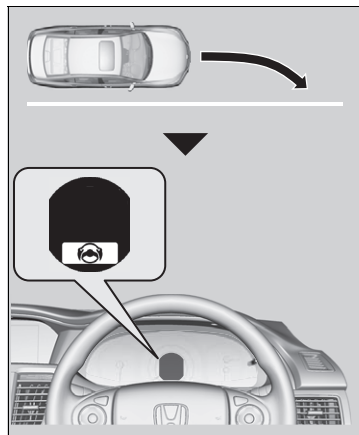
▶▶ Automatic cancellation

Even though ACC has been automatically cancelled, you can still resume the prior set speed. Wait until the condition that caused ACC to cancel improves, then press the **RES/+** button.

Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System*

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system determines a possibility of your vehicle unintentionally crossing over detected lane markings.

How the System Works



The front camera behind the rearview mirror monitors left and right lane markings (in white or yellow). If your vehicle is getting too close to detected lane markings without a turn signal activated, the system, in addition to a visual alert, applies steering torque and alerts you with rapid vibrations on the steering wheel, to help you remain within the detected lane.

As a visual alert, the  message appears on the multi-information display.

If the system determines that its steering input is insufficient to keep your vehicle on the roadway, it may apply braking.

- ▶ Braking is applied only when the lane markings are solid continuous lines.

The system cancels assisting operations when you turn the steering wheel to avoid crossing over detected lane markings.

If the system operates several times without detecting driver response, the system beeps to alert you.

* Not available on all models

Continued

⚠ Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System*

Important Safety Reminder

Like all assistance systems, the RDM system has limitations.

Over-reliance on the RDM system may result in a collision. It is always your responsibility to keep the vehicle within your driving lane.

The RDM system only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The RDM system may not detect all lane markings or lane or roadway departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed and lane marker condition. It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.


Do not use the RDM when towing a trailer.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

➤ **Front Sensor Camera** * P. 394

The RDM system may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

➤ **RDM Conditions and Limitations** P. 409

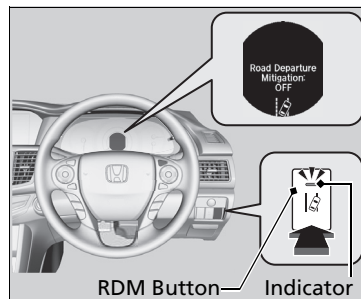
There are times when you may not notice RDM functions due to your operation of the vehicle, or road surface conditions. If the  message displays repeatedly and you do not apply responsive actions, the system beeps and cancels RDM functions.

■ How the System Activates

The system becomes ready to start searching for lane markings when all the following conditions are met:

- The vehicle is travelling at above 72 km/h.
- The vehicle is on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.
- The wipers are not in continuous operation.
- The system makes a determination that the driver is not actively accelerating, braking or steering.


■ RDM On and Off



Press the RDM button to turn the system on and off.

- The indicator in the button comes on and the message appears on the multi-information display when the system is on.

▣ How the System Activates

The RDM system may automatically shut off and the  indicator comes and stays on.

▣ **Indicators** P. 80

RDM system function can be impacted when the vehicle is:

- Not driven within a traffic lane.
- Driven on the inside edge of a curve, or outside of a lane.
- Driven in a narrow lane.

▣ RDM On and Off

When you have selected **Warning Only** from the customized options using the multi-information display, the system does not operate the steering wheel and braking.

■ RDM Conditions and Limitations

The system may not properly detect lane markings and the position of your vehicle under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below.

■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Shadows of adjacent objects are parallel to lane markings.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as lane markers.
- Reflections on the interior of the windscreen.

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines (e.g., such as at an intersection or crosswalk).
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.
- The vehicle in front of you is driving near the lane lines.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognized as white lines (or yellow lines).
- Driving on roads with double lines.

■ Vehicle conditions

- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windshield is streaked or blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windshield is fogged.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- When tyre chains are installed.

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)*

Provides steering input to help to keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

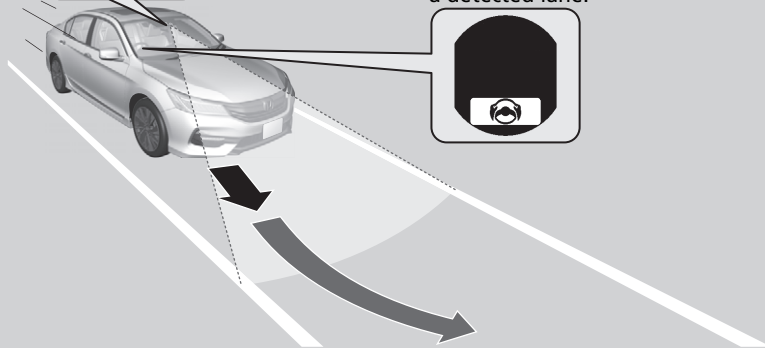
■ Steering input assist

The system applies torque to the steering to keep the vehicle between the left and right lane lines. The applied torque becomes stronger as the vehicle gets closer to either of the lane lines.



■ LKAS camera
Monitors the lane lines

■ Tactile and visual alerts
Rapid vibrations on the steering wheel and a warning display alert you that the vehicle is drifting out of a detected lane.



When you operate the turn signals to change lanes, the system is suspended, and resumes after the signals are off.

➡ If you make a lane change without operating the turn signals, the LKAS alerts activate, and torque is applied to the steering.

▶ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)*

Important Safety Reminders

The LKAS is for your convenience only. It is not a substitute for your vehicle control. The system does not work if you take your hands off the steering wheel or fail to steer the vehicle.

▶ Multi-Information Display Warning and Information Messages* P. 101

Do not place an object on the instrument panel. Objects may reflect on the windscreen and prevent correct detection of the traffic lanes.

The LKAS only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The LKAS may not detect all lane markings or lane departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed, and lane marker condition.

It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

The LKAS is convenient when it is used on motorway.

Do not use the LKAS when towing a trailer.

The LKAS may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

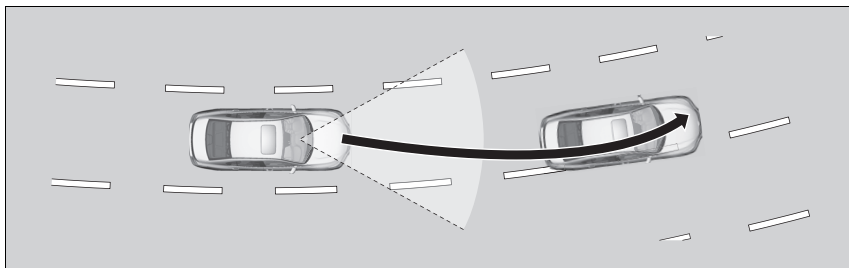
▶ LKAS Conditions and Limitations P. 416

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

▶ Front Sensor Camera* P. 394

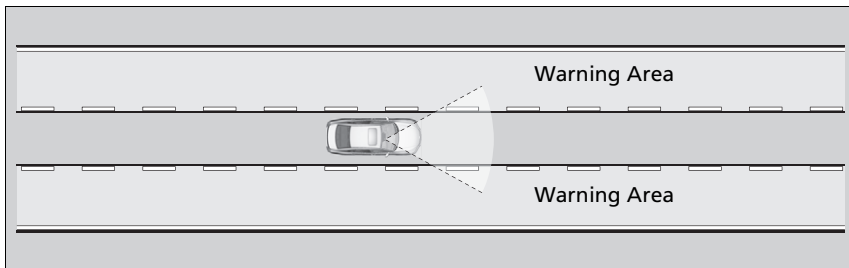
■ Lane Keep Support Function

Provides assistance to keep the vehicle in the centre of the lane. When the vehicle nears a white or yellow line, steering force of the electric power steering will become stronger.



■ Lane Departure Warning Function

When the vehicle enters the warning area, the LKAS alerts you with slight steering wheel vibration as well as a warning display.



▶ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)*

The LKAS may not function as designed on while driving in frequent stop and go traffic, or on roads with sharp curves.

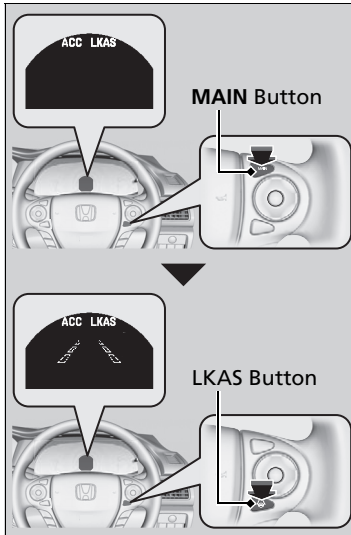
When it fails to detect lanes, the system will temporarily be cancelled. When lane is detected, system will recover automatically.

■ When the System can be Used

The system can be used when the following conditions are met.

- The lane in which you are driving has detectable lane markers on both sides, and your vehicle is in the centre of the lane.
- The vehicle speed is between 72 and 180 km/h.
- You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.
- The wipers are not in continuous operation.

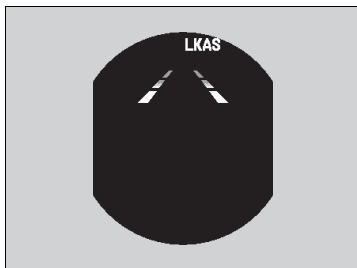
■ How to activate the system



1. Press the **MAIN** button.
 - The LKAS is on in the multi-information display.
The system is ready to use.
2. Press the LKAS button.
 - Lane outlines appear on the multi-information display.
The system is activated.

►► When the System can be Used

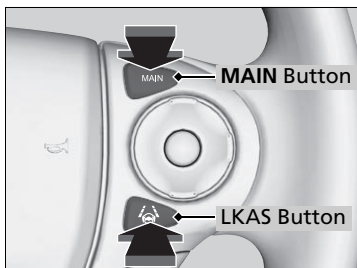
If the vehicle drifts towards either left or right lane line due to the system applying torque, turn off the LKAS and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



3. Keep your vehicle near the centre of the lane while driving.

- ▶ The dotted outer lines change to solid ones once the system starts operating after detecting the left and right lane markings.

To Cancel



To cancel the LKAS:

Press the **MAIN** or LKAS button.

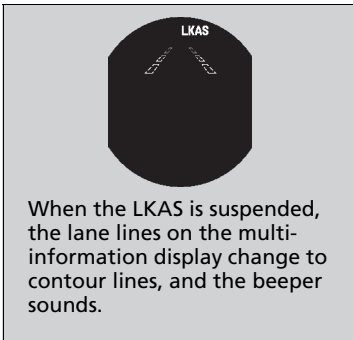
The LKAS is turned off every time you stop the engine, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.

When the System can be Used

The LKAS temporarily deactivates when it fails to detect lane lines. When the system detects the lines again, it comes back on automatically.

To Cancel

Pressing the **MAIN** button also turns ACC on and off.



■ **The system operation is suspended if you:**

- Set the wipers to continuous operation.
 - Turning the wipers off resumes the LKAS.
- Set the wiper switch to **AUTO** and the wipers operate continuously.
 - The LKAS resumes when the wipers stop or operate intermittently.
- Decrease the vehicle speed to 64 km/h or less.
 - Increasing the vehicle speed to 72 km/h or more resumes the LKAS.
- Depress the brake pedal.
 - The LKAS resumes and starts detecting the lane lines again once you release the brake pedal.

■ **The LKAS may automatically be suspended when:**

- The system fails to detect lane lines.
- The steering wheel is quickly turned.
- You fail to steer the vehicle.
- The vehicle runs on a curved road over the speed limit.
- Driving through a sharp curve.
- Driving at a speed in excess of approximately 180 km/h.

Once these conditions no longer exist, the LKAS automatically resumes.

■ **The LKAS may automatically be cancelled when:**

- The camera temperature gets extremely high or low.
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windscreen, gets dirty.
- The ABS or VSA system engages.

The beeper sounds if the LKAS is automatically cancelled.

Continued

■ LKAS Conditions and Limitations

The system may not detect lane markings and therefore may not keep the vehicle in the middle of a lane under certain conditions, including the following:

■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Shadows of adjacent objects are parallel to lane markings.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as lane markers.
- Reflections on the interior of the windscreen.

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines (e.g., such as at an intersection or crosswalk).
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.
- The vehicle in front of you is driving near the lane lines.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognized as white lines (or yellow lines).
- Driving on roads with double lines.

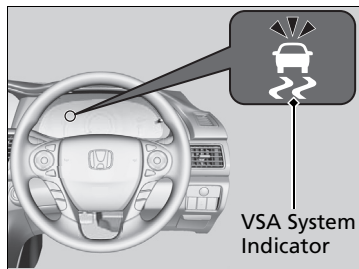
■ Vehicle conditions

- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windscreen is streaked or blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System*

Helps to stabilize the vehicle during cornering if the vehicle turns more or less than what was intended. It also assists in maintaining traction on slippery surfaces. It does so by regulating engine output and selectively applying the brakes.

VSA Operation



When VSA activates, you may notice that the engine does not respond to the accelerator. You may also notice some noise from the hydraulic system. You will also see the indicator blink.

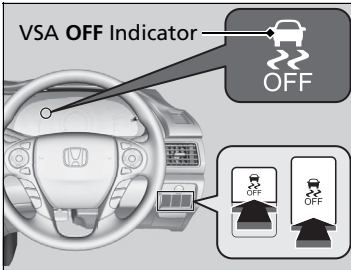
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System*

VSA may not function properly if tyre types and sizes are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre, and the air pressures are as specified.

When the VSA indicator comes on and stays on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While this may not interfere with normal driving, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.


VSA cannot enhance stability in all driving situations and does not control the entire braking system. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

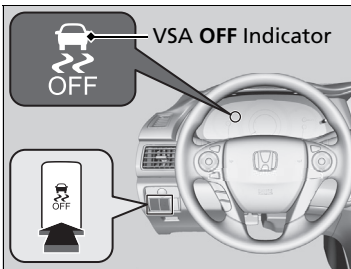
■ VSA On and Off



This button is on the driver side control panel. To partially turn the VSA system on and off, press and hold it until you hear a beep.


The traction control stops fully functioning, allows the wheels to spin more freely at low speed. The VSA **OFF** indicator will also come on.

To turn it on again, press the  (VSA **OFF**) button until you hear a beep.




VSA is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

▣ Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System*

With the  button pressed, your vehicle will have normal braking and cornering ability, but VSA traction and stability enhancement becomes less effective.

In certain unusual conditions when your vehicle gets stuck in shallow mud or fresh snow, it may be easier to free it with VSA temporarily switched off.

When the  button is pressed, the traction control function becomes less effective. This allows for the wheels to spin more freely at low speed. You should only attempt to free your vehicle with the VSA off if you are not able to free it when the VSA is on.

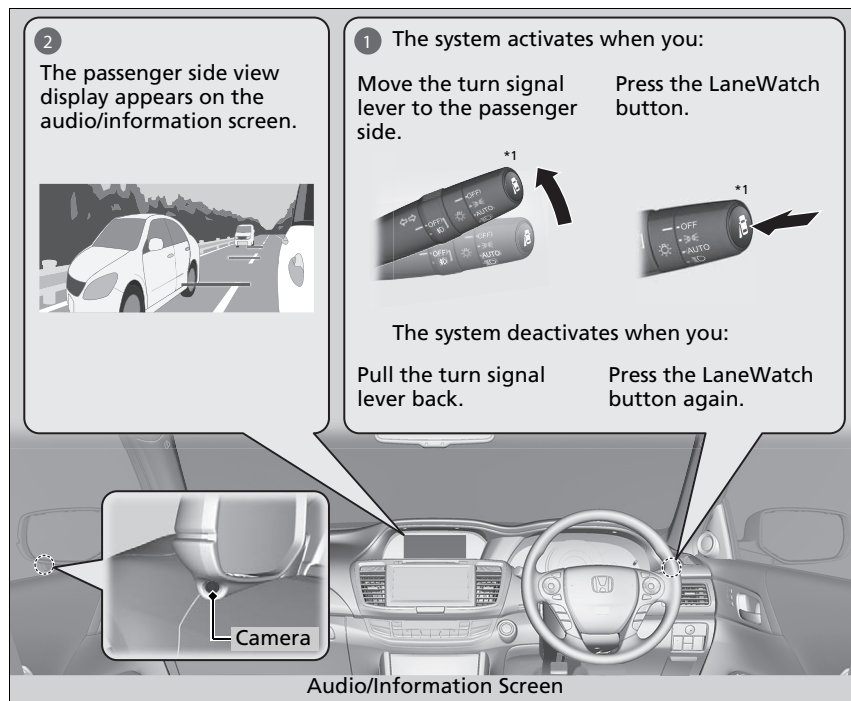
Immediately after freeing your vehicle, be sure to switch VSA on again. We do not recommend driving your vehicle with the VSA system switched off.

You may hear a motor sound coming from the engine compartment while system checks are being performed immediately after starting the engine or while driving. This is normal.

* Not available on all models

LaneWatch*

Is an assistance system that allows you to check the passenger side's rear areas displayed on the audio/information screen when the turn signal is activated to the passenger's side. A camera in the passenger side door mirror monitors these areas and allows you to check for vehicle, in addition to your visual check and use of the passenger door mirror. You can also keep the system on for your convenience while driving.



*1: For African right-hand drive models, these switches change locations with each other.

* Not available on all models

▶ LaneWatch*

⚠ WARNING

Failure to visually confirm that it is safe to change lanes before doing so may result in a crash and serious injury or death.

Do not rely only on LaneWatch while driving. Always look in your mirrors, to either side of your vehicle, and behind you for other vehicles before changing lanes.

Important Safety Reminder

Like all assistance systems, LaneWatch has limitations. Over reliance on LaneWatch may result in a collision.

The LaneWatch function can be affected by weather, lighting (including headlights and low sun angle), ambient darkness, camera condition, and loading.

The LaneWatch camera view is restricted. Its unique lens makes objects on the screen look slightly different from what they are.

LaneWatch display does not come on when the shift lever is in **R**.

The LaneWatch may not provide the intended display of traffic to the side and rear under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle's suspension has been altered, changing the height of the vehicle.
- Your tyres are over or under inflated.
- Your tyres or wheels are of varied size or construction.

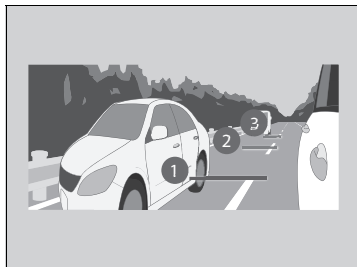
■ Customizing the LaneWatch settings

You can customize the following items using the audio/information screen.

- **Show with Turn Signal:** Selects whether LaneWatch monitor comes on when you operate the turn signal light lever.
- **Reference Lines:** Selects whether the reference lines appears on the LaneWatch monitor.
- **Next Maneuver Pop up*:** Selects whether a turn direction screen of the navigation system interrupts the LaneWatch display.
- **Display:** Adjusts display settings.

📄 Customized Features P. 308

■ Reference Lines



Three lines that appear on the screen can give an idea of how far the vehicles or objects on the screen are from your vehicle, respectively. If an object is near line 1 (in red), it indicates that it is close to your vehicle whereas an object near line 3 farther away.

📺 LaneWatch*

For proper LaneWatch operation:

- The camera is located in the passenger side door mirror. Always keep this area clean. If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.
- Do not cover the camera lens with labels or stickers of any kind.
- Do not touch the camera lens.

📺 Reference Lines

The area around the reference line 1 (red) is very close to your vehicle. As always, make sure to visually confirm the safety of a lane change before changing lanes.

The distance between your vehicle and lines 1, 2 and 3 on the screen vary depending on road condition and vehicle loading. For example, the reference lines on the screen may seem to appear closer than the actual distances when the rear of your vehicle is more heavily loaded.

Consult a dealer if:

- The passenger side door mirror, or area around it is severely impacted, resulting in changing the camera angle.
- The LaneWatch display does not come on at all.

* Not available on all models

Deflation Warning System*

Monitors tyre revolutions while you are driving over 30 km/h.

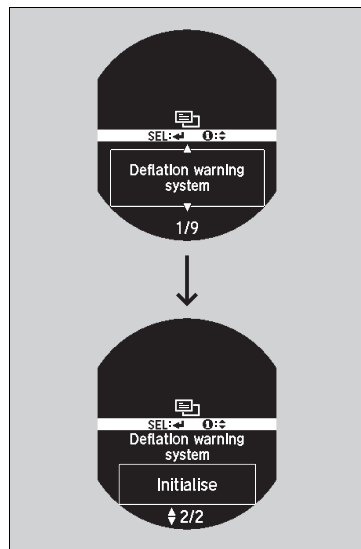
When there is a change in tyre revolutions, the system detects a decrease in tyre pressure.

Deflation Warning System Initialisation

For proper use, initialise the system after the tyres are:

- Inflated to the recommended pressure.
- Changed or rotated.

You can initialise the system from the customized features on the multi-information display* or audio/information touch screen.



Models with multi-information display

1. Press the button to select **Vehicle Settings**, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.

► **Deflation warning system** appears on the display.

2. Press the **SEL/RESET** button.

► The display switches to the customization setup screen, where you can select **Cancel** or **Initialise**.

3. Press the button and select **Initialise**, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.

Completed screen appears, then the display returns to the customization menu screen.

Deflation Warning System*

When a decrease in tyre pressure is detected, the deflation warning system indicator comes on with on the multi-information display*.

Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator

P. 94, 424

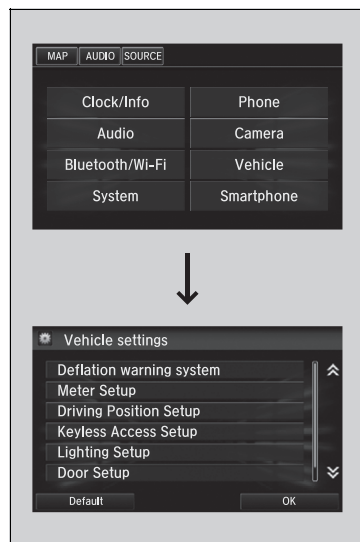
The deflation warning system may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre.


Checking and Maintaining Tyres P. 484

You can initialise the system using the audio/information touch screen.

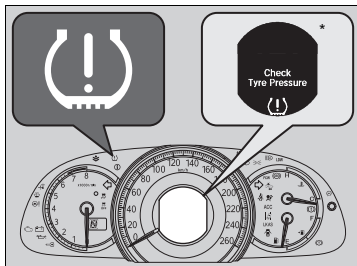
Customized Features P. 308

■ Using the Settings menu on the audio/information touch screen



1. Select , then select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle**.
3. Select **Deflation warning system**.
 - ▶ The display switches to the customization setup screen, where you can select **Cancel** or **Initialise**.
4. Select **Initialise**.
 - ▶ **Initialise** appears, then the display returns to the customization menu screen.
 - If **Failed** appears, repeat step 4.
 - The initialisation process finishes automatically.

■ Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator



■ The indicator may come on under the following conditions:

- Any of the tyre's pressures is low.
- The system has not been initialised.
- There is a heavier and uneven load on the tyres, such as when towing a trailer, than the condition at initialisation.

►► Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator

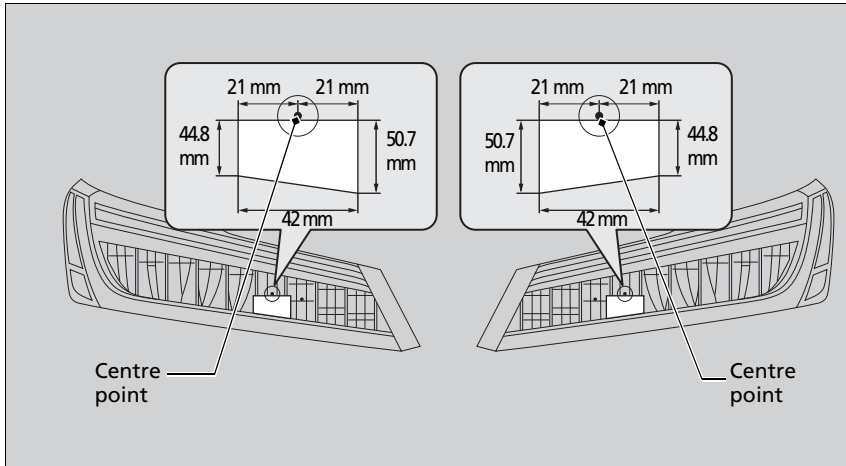
The indicator may come on with a delay or may not come on at all when:

- Two or more tyre's pressure are low.
- You rapidly accelerate, decelerate, or turn the steering wheel.
- You drive on snowy or slippery roads.
- Snow chains are used.

Models with LED headlights

Adjusting Headlight Distribution

Driving the right-hand type vehicle in right-hand traffic, or the left-hand type vehicle in left-hand traffic causes headlight glare to oncoming vehicles. You need to alter the headlight beam distribution using masking tape.



1. Prepare for two pieces of masking tape as shown.
 - Use masking tape that can shut out light, such as seal type waterproof vinyl.
2. Affix the tape to the lens as shown.

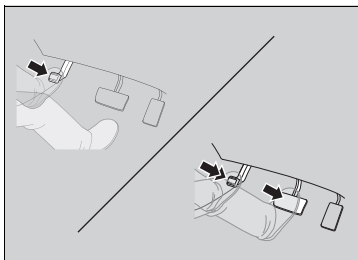
Adjusting Headlight Distribution

Be careful not to adhere the tape to an incorrect location. If the headlight beam is distributed incorrectly, it may not comply with your country's legal requirements. Ask a dealer for details.

Brake System

Parking Brake

Use the parking brake to keep the vehicle stationary when parking.



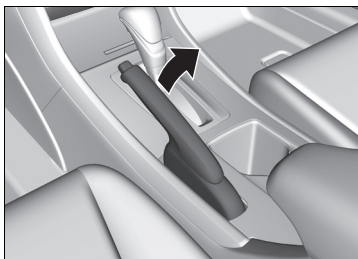
Right-hand drive type

To apply:

Depress the parking brake pedal down with your foot.

To release:

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Depress the parking brake.



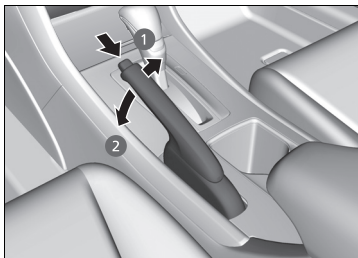
Left-hand drive type

To apply:

Pull the lever fully up without pressing the release button.

To release:

1. Pull the lever slightly, and press and hold the release button.
2. Lower the lever down all the way, then release the button.



Parking Brake

NOTICE

Release the parking brake fully before driving. The rear brakes and axle can be damaged if you drive with the parking brake applied.

If you start driving without fully releasing the parking brake, a buzzer sounds as a warning.

Always apply the parking brake when parking.

■ Foot Brake

Your vehicle is equipped with disc brakes at all four wheels. A vacuum power assist helps reduce the effort needed on the brake pedal. The brake assist system increases the stopping force when you depress the brake pedal hard in an emergency situation. The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps you retain steering control when braking very hard.

🔧 **Brake Assist System** P. 429

🔧 **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** P. 428

🔧 Foot Brake

Check the brakes after driving through deep water, or if there is a buildup of road surface water. If necessary, dry the brakes by lightly depressing the pedal several times.

If you hear a continuous metallic friction sound when applying the brakes, the brake pads need to be replaced. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Constantly using the brake pedal while going down a long hill builds up heat, which reduces the brake effectiveness. Apply engine braking by taking your foot off the accelerator pedal and downshifting to a lower gear.

Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving, as it will lightly apply the brakes and cause them to lose effectiveness over time and reduce pad life. It will also confuse drivers behind you.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

■ ABS

Helps prevent the wheels from locking up, and helps you retain steering control by pumping the brakes rapidly, much faster than you.

The electronic brake distribution (EBD) system, which is part of the ABS, also balances the front-to-rear braking distribution according to vehicle loading.

You should never pump the brake pedal. Let the ABS work for you by always keeping firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. This is sometimes referred to as “stomp and steer.”

■ ABS operation

The brake pedal may pulsate slightly when the ABS is working. Keep holding the pedal firmly down. On dry pavement, you will need to press on the brake pedal very hard before the ABS activates. However, you may feel the ABS activate immediately if you are trying to stop on snow or ice.

When the vehicle speed goes under 10 km/h, the ABS stops.

►► Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

NOTICE

The ABS may not function correctly if you use an incorrect tyre type and size.

When the **ABS** indicator comes on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While normal braking is not affected, there is a possibility of the ABS not operating. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

The ABS does not reduce the time or distance it takes to stop the vehicle. It only helps with steering control during hard braking.

In the following cases, your vehicle may need more stopping distance than a vehicle without the ABS:

- When driving on rough road surfaces, including when driving on uneven surfaces, such as gravel or snow.
- When tyre chains are installed.

You may hear a motor sound coming from the engine compartment while system checks are being performed immediately after starting the engine or while driving. This is normal.

Brake Assist System

■ Brake Assist System

Designed to assist the driver by generating greater braking force when you depress the brake pedal hard during emergency braking.

■ Brake assist system operation

Press the brake pedal firmly for more powerful braking.

When brake assist operates, the pedal may wiggle slightly and an operating noise may be heard. This is normal. Keep holding the brake pedal firmly down.

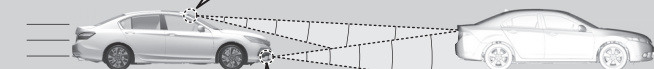
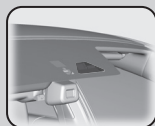
Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)*

Can assist you when there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle or a pedestrian detected in front of yours. The CMBS is designed to alert you when a potential collision is determined, as well as to reduce your vehicle speed to help minimize collision severity when a collision is deemed unavoidable.

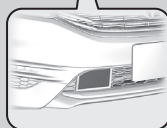
■ How the system works

When to use

The camera is located behind the rearview mirror.



The radar sensor is at the lower part of the front bumper.



The system starts monitoring the roadway ahead when your vehicle speed is about 5 km/h and there is a vehicle in front of you.

The CMBS activates when:

- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle or pedestrian detected in front of you becomes about 5 km/h and over with a chance of a collision.
- Your vehicle speed is about 100 km/h or less and there is a chance of a collision with an oncoming detected vehicle or a pedestrian in front of you.

►► Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)*

Important Safety Reminder

The CMBS is designed to reduce the severity of an unavoidable collision. It does not prevent collision nor stop the vehicle automatically. It is still your responsibility to operate the brake pedal and steering wheel appropriately according to the driving conditions.

The CMBS may not activate or may not detect a vehicle in front of your vehicle under certain conditions:

► **CMBS Conditions and Limitations** P. 434

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

► **Front Sensor Camera*** P. 394

Be careful not to have the radar sensor cover strongly impacted.

►► How the system works

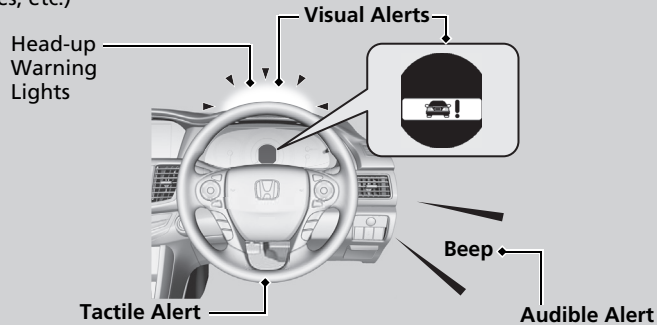
Rapid vibrations on the steering wheel alert you when your vehicle speed is between 30 and 100 km/h with an oncoming vehicle detected in front of you.

When the CMBS activates, it may automatically apply the brake. It will be cancelled when your vehicle stops or a potential collision is not determined.

■ When the system activates

The system provides visual, audible and tactile alerts of a possible collision, and stops if the collision is avoided.

- Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.)



At system's earliest collision alert stage, you can change the distance (**Far/Normal/Near**) between vehicles at which alerts will come on through multi-information display setting options.

- **List of customizable options** P. 121, 327

■ Vibration alert on the steering wheel

When a potential collision to an oncoming detected vehicle is determined, the system alerts you with rapid vibration on the steering wheel, in addition to visual and audible alerts.

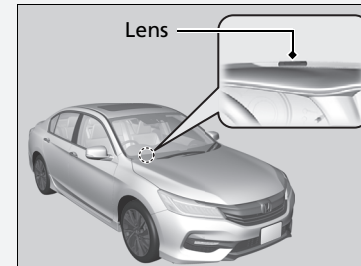
- Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, operate the steering wheel, etc.).

►► When the system activates

The camera in the CMBS is also designed to detect pedestrians. However, this pedestrian detection feature may not activate or may not detect a pedestrian in front of your vehicle under certain conditions. Refer to the ones indicating the pedestrian detection limitations from the list.

- **CMBS Conditions and Limitations** P. 434

The head-up warning uses a lens located at the front end of the dashboard. Do not cover the lens or spill any liquid on it.



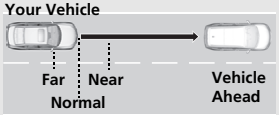
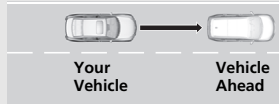

►► Vibration alert on the steering wheel

Vibration alert function is disabled when the electric power steering (EPS) system indicator comes on.

- **Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator** P. 88

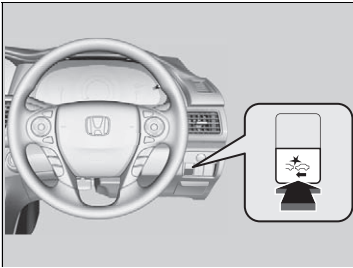
■ Collision Alert Stages

The system has three alert stages for a possible collision. However, depending on circumstances, the CMBS may not go through all of the stages before initiating the last stage.

Distance between vehicles		CMBS			
		The radar sensor detects a vehicle	Audible & Visual WARNINGS	Steering Wheel	Braking
Stage one		There is a risk of a collision with the vehicle ahead of you.	When in Far , visual and audible alerts come on at a longer distance from a vehicle ahead than in Normal setting, and in Near , at a shorter distance than in Normal .	In case of an oncoming vehicle detected, rapid vibration is provided.	—
Stage two		The risk of a collision has increased, time to respond is reduced.	Visual and audible alerts.	—	Lightly applied
Stage three		The CMBS determines that a collision is unavoidable.			Forcefully applied

Driving

■ CMBS On and Off



Press this button until the beeper sounds to switch the system on or off.

When the CMBS is off:

- The CMBS indicator in the instrument panel comes on.
- A message on the multi-information display reminds you that the system is off.

The CMBS is in the previously selected ON or OFF setting each time you start the engine.

▣ Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)*

The CMBS may automatically shut off, and the CMBS indicator will come and stay on under certain conditions.

* Not available on all models

■ CMBS Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off and the CMBS indicator will come on under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the CMBS functions.

📷 **Front Sensor Camera*** P. 394

■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- There is little contrast between objects and the background.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as vehicles and pedestrians.
- Reflections on the interior of the windscreen.

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on curvy, winding, or undulating roads.

■ Vehicle conditions

- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windscreen is blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- When tyre chains are installed.
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- Driving with the parking brake applied.
- When the radar sensor at the lower part of the front bumper gets dirty.

■ Detection limitations

- A vehicle or pedestrian suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle or pedestrian ahead of you is too short.
- A vehicle cuts in front of you at a slow speed, and it brakes suddenly.
- When you accelerate rapidly and approach the vehicle or pedestrian ahead of you at high speed.
- The vehicle ahead of you is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter or other small vehicle.
- When there are animals in front of your vehicle.
- When you drive on a curved, winding or undulating road that makes it difficult for the sensor to properly detect a vehicle in front of you.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle or pedestrian in front of you is significantly large.
- An oncoming vehicle suddenly comes in front of you.
- Another vehicle suddenly comes in front of you at an intersection, etc.
- Your vehicle abruptly crosses over in front of an oncoming vehicle.
- When driving through a narrow iron bridge.
- When the lead vehicle suddenly slows down.

Limitations applicable to pedestrian detection only

- When there is a group of people in front of your vehicle walking together side by side.
- Surrounding conditions or belongings of the pedestrian alter the pedestrian's shape, preventing the system from recognizing that the person is a pedestrian.
- When the pedestrian is shorter than about 1 metre or taller than about 2 metres in height.
- When a pedestrian blends in with the background.
- When a pedestrian is bent over or squatting, or when their hands are raised or they are running.
- When several pedestrians are walking ahead in a group.
- When the camera cannot correctly identify that a pedestrian is present due to an unusual shape (holding luggage, body position, size).

■ Automatic shutoff

The CMBS may automatically shut itself off and the CMBS indicator comes and stays on when:

- The temperature inside the system is high.
- You drive off-road or on a mountain road, or curved and winding road for an extended period.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected (wrong tyre size, flat tyre, etc.).
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windscreen, gets dirty.

Once the conditions that caused the CMBS to shut off improve or are addressed (e.g., cleaning), the system comes back on.

■ With Little Chance of a Collision

The CMBS may activate even when you are aware of a vehicle ahead of you, or when there is no vehicle ahead. Some examples of this are:

■ When Passing

Your vehicle approaches another vehicle ahead of you and you change lanes to pass.

■ At an intersection

Your vehicle approaches or passes another vehicle that is making a left or right turn.

■ On a curve

When driving through curves, your vehicle comes to a point where an oncoming vehicle is right in front of you.

■ Through a low bridge at high speed

You drive under a low or narrow bridge at high speed.

■ Speed bumps, road work sites, train tracks, roadside objects, etc.

You drive over speed bumps, steel road plates, etc., or your vehicle approaches train tracks or roadside objects [such as a traffic sign and guard rail] on a curve or, when parking, stationary vehicles and walls.

⚠ Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)*

For the CMBS to work properly:

Always keep the radar sensor cover clean.

Never use chemical solvents or polishing powder for cleaning the sensor cover. Clean it with water or a mild detergent.

Do not put a sticker on the radar sensor cover or replace the radar sensor cover.

If you need the radar sensor to be repaired, or removed, or the radar sensor cover is strongly impacted, turn off the system by pressing the CMBS off button and take your vehicle to a dealer.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behavior of the system (e.g. the warning message appears too frequently).

If the front of the vehicle is impacted in any of the following situations, the radar sensor may not work properly. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer:

- The vehicle mounted onto a bump, curb, chock, embankment, etc.
- You drive the vehicle where the water is deep.
- Your vehicle has a frontal collision.

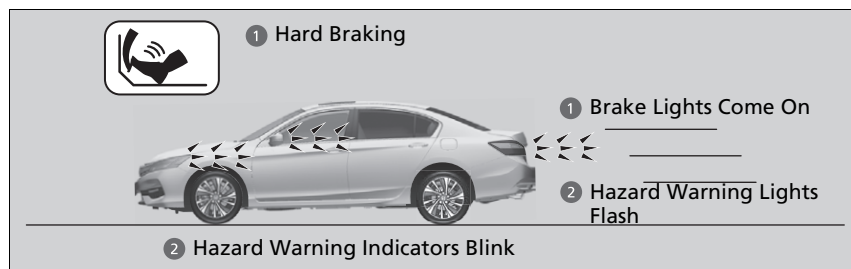
* Not available on all models

Except Nepalese, Bangladeshi, Sri Lankan, Latin American, and African left-hand drive 2.0L engine models

Emergency Stop Signal

Activates when you brake hard while driving at 60 km/h or above to alert drivers behind you about sudden braking by rapidly flashing hazard warning lights. This may help to alert drivers behind you to take appropriate means to avoid a possible collision with your vehicle.

■ When the system activates:



The hazard warning lights stop flashing when:

- You release the brake pedal.
- The ABS is deactivated.
- Your vehicle's decelerating speed becomes moderate.
- You press the hazard warning button.

» Emergency Stop Signal

The emergency stop signal is not a system that can prevent a possible rear-end collision caused by your hard braking. It flashes the hazard warning lights at the time you are braking hard. It is always recommended to avoid hard braking unless it is absolutely necessary.

The emergency stop signal does not activate with the hazard warning button pressed in.

If the ABS stops working for a certain period of time during braking, the emergency stop signal may not activate at all.

When Stopped

1. Depress the brake pedal firmly.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Move the shift lever from **D** to **P**.
4. Turn off the engine.

Always set the parking brake firmly, in particular if you are parked on an incline.

⌘ Parking Your Vehicle

Do not park your vehicle near flammable objects, such as dry grass, oil, or timber. Heat from the exhaust can cause a fire.

⌘ When Stopped

NOTICE

The following can damage the transmission:

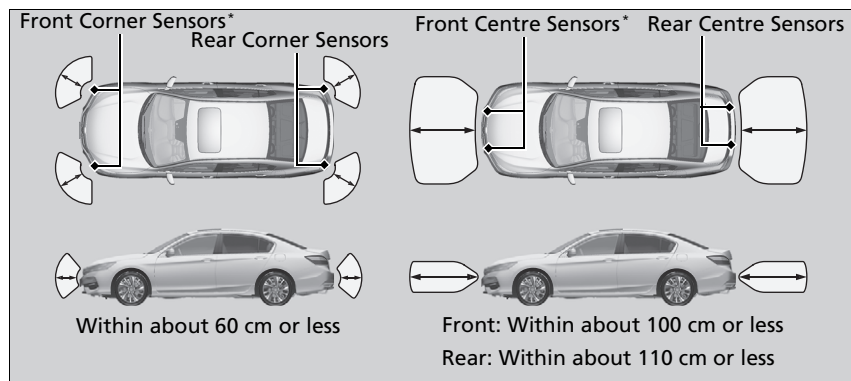
- Depressing the accelerator and brake pedals simultaneously.
- Holding the vehicle in place when facing uphill by depressing the accelerator pedal.
- Moving the shift lever into **P** before the vehicle stops completely.

In extremely cold temperatures, the parking brake may freeze up if applied. If such temperatures are expected, do not apply the parking brake but, if parking on a slope, either turn the front wheels so they will contact the curb if the vehicle rolls down the slope or block the wheels to keep the vehicle from moving. If you do not take either precaution, the vehicle may roll unexpectedly, leading to a crash.

Parking Sensor System *

The corner and centre sensors monitor obstacles near your vehicle, and the beeper and audio/information screen let you know the approximate distance between your vehicle and the obstacle.

■ The sensor location and range



►► Parking Sensor System *

Even when the system is on, always confirm if there is no obstacle near your vehicle before parking.

The system may not work properly when:

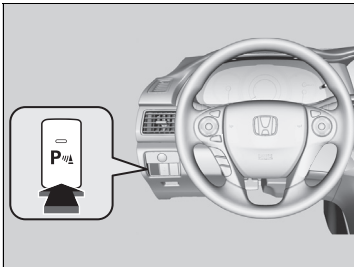
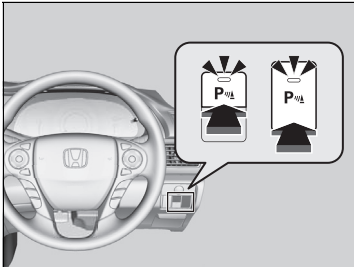
- The sensors are covered with snow, ice mud or dirt.
- The vehicle is on uneven surface, such as grass, bumps, or a hill.
- The vehicle has been out in hot or cold weather.
- The system is affected by devices that emit ultrasonic waves.
- Driving in bad weather.

The system may not sense:

- Thin or low objects.
- Sonic-absorptive materials, such as snow, cotton, or sponge.
- Objects directly under the bumper.

Do not put any accessories on or around the sensors.

■ Parking sensor system on and off



With the ignition switch in ON **II***¹, press the parking sensor system button to turn on or off the system. The indicator in the button comes on when the system is on.

The rear centre and corner sensors start to detect an obstacle when the shift lever is in **R**, and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h.

The front centre and corner sensors start to detect an obstacle when the shift lever is in any position other than **P**, and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h.


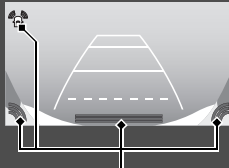
▣ Parking Sensor System*

When you turn the ignition switch to ON **II***¹, the system will be in the previously selected condition.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

■ When the distance between your vehicle and obstacles behind becomes shorter

Length of the intermittent beep	Distance between the Bumper and Obstacle		Indicator	Audio/information screen
	Corner Sensors	Centre Sensors		
Moderate	—	Front*: About 100-60 cm Rear: About 110-60 cm	Blinks in Yellow* ¹	<div>Models without multi-view rear camera</div>  <p>Indicators light where the sensor detects an obstacle.</p>
Short	About 60-45 cm	About 60-45 cm	Blinks in Amber	<div>Models with multi-view rear camera</div>  <p>Indicators light where the sensor detects an obstacle.</p>
Very short	About 45-35 cm	About 45-35 cm		
Continuous	About 35 cm or less	About 35 cm or less	Blinks in Red	

*1: At this stage, only the centre sensors detect obstacles.

■ Turning off All Rear Sensors

1. Make sure that the parking sensor system is not activated. Turn the ignition switch to LOCK **[0]***1.
2. Press and hold the parking sensor system button, and turn the ignition switch to ON **[II]***1.
3. Keep pressing the button for ten seconds. Release the button when the indicator in the button flashes.
4. Press the button again. The indicator in the button goes off.
 - The beeper sounds twice. The rear sensors are now turned off.

To turn the rear sensors on again, follow the above procedure. The beeper sounds three times when the rear sensors come back on.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

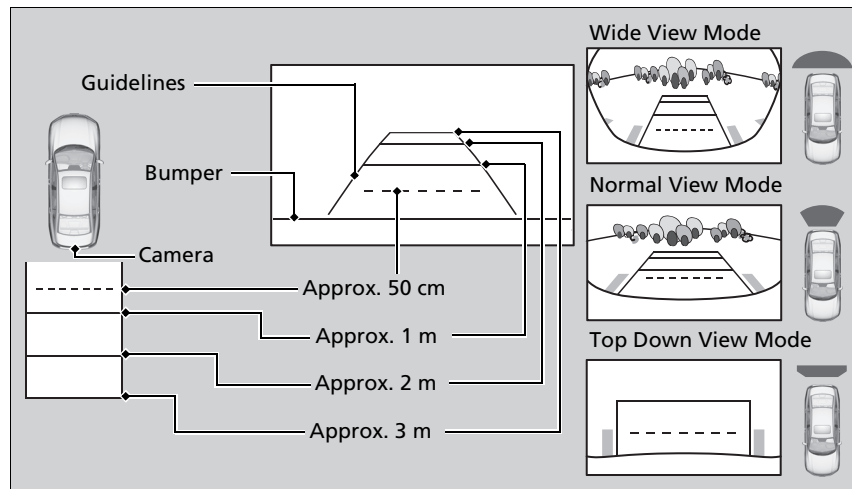
▣ Turning off All Rear Sensors

When you shift to **[R]**, the indicator in the parking sensor system button blinks as a reminder that the rear sensors have been turned off.




About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The audio/information screen can display your vehicle's rear view. The display automatically changes to the rear view when the shift lever is moved to **R**.

Multi-View Rear Camera Display Area



You can view three different camera angles on the rearview display. Touch the appropriate icon to switch the angle.

- : Wide view
- : Normal view
- : Top down view

If the last used viewing mode is Wide or Normal, the same mode is selected the next time you shift into **R**. If Top View was last used, Wide mode is selected.


About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The rear camera view is restricted. You cannot see the corner ends of the bumper or what is underneath the bumper. Its unique lens also makes objects appear closer or farther than they actually are.

Visually confirm that it is safe to drive before backing up. Certain conditions, such as weather, lighting, and high temperatures, may also restrict the rear view. Do not rely on the rearview display which does not give you all information about conditions at the back of your vehicle.

If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.

You can change the **Fixed Guideline** and **Dynamic Guideline** settings.

 **Customized Features** P. 308

Fixed Guideline

On: Guidelines appear when you shift into **R**.

Off: Guidelines do not appear.

Dynamic Guideline

On: Guidelines move according to the steering wheel direction.

Off: Guidelines do not move.

Fuel Information

Fuel recommendation

Except Thai models^{*1, *2}

Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher

Thai models^{*3}

Unleaded petrol/gasohol up to E85 (15% petrol and 85% ethanol), research octane number 91 or higher

*1: Use of lower octane petrol can cause a persistent, heavy metallic knocking noise that can lead to engine damage.

*2: Indonesian models

If this octane grade is unavailable, regular unleaded petrol with a research octane of 88 or higher may be used temporarily.

*3: Use of lower octane petrol/gasohol can cause a persistent, heavy metallic knocking noise that can lead to engine damage.

■ **Fuel tank capacity: 65 litres**

Refueling

Thai models

Immediately after refueling, especially when you have switched to another type of fuel, the engine and fuel system may go into a compensating period for fuel performance. It will be required to drive moderately at a constant speed for about 10 minutes, without rapid acceleration when traffic allows. In this period, you may notice engine knocking.

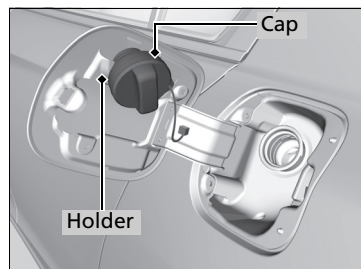
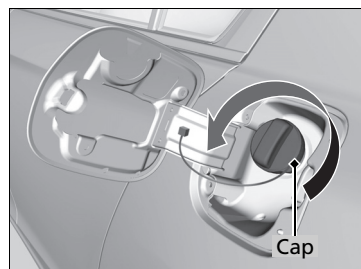
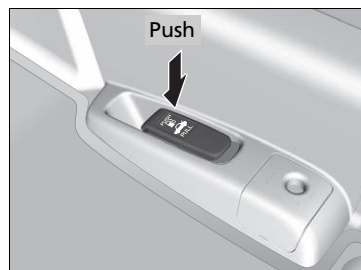
Fuel Information

NOTICE

Use of petrol that contains lead presents the following risks:

- Damage to the exhaust system including the catalytic converter
- Damage to the engine and fuel system
- Detrimental effects on the engine and other systems

How to Refuel



1. Stop your vehicle with the service station pump on the left side of the vehicle in the rear.
2. Turn off the engine.
3. Push on the fuel fill door release handle at the foot of the driver's seat.
 - The fuel fill door opens.
4. Remove the fuel fill cap slowly. If you hear a release of air, wait until this stops, then turn the knob slowly to open the fuel fill cap.
5. Place the fuel fill cap in the holder.
6. Insert the filler nozzle fully.
 - When the tank is full, the fuel nozzle will click off automatically. This leaves space in the fuel tank in case the fuel expands with a change in the temperature.
7. After filling, replace the fuel fill cap, tightening it until you hear it click at least once.
 - Shut the fuel fill door by hand.

How to Refuel

⚠ WARNING

Petrol is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

- Stop the engine, and keep heat, sparks, and flame away.
- Handle fuel only outdoors.
- Wipe up spills immediately.

The filler nozzle automatically stops to leave space in the fuel tank so that fuel does not overflow as a result of changes in air temperature.

Do not continue to add fuel after the filler nozzle has automatically stopped. Additional fuel can exceed the full tank capacity.

Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO₂ Emissions

Achieving fuel economy and reducing CO₂ emissions is dependent on several factors, including driving conditions, load weight, idling time, driving habits, and vehicle condition. Depending on these and other factors, you may not achieve the rated fuel economy of this vehicle.

Maintenance and Fuel Economy

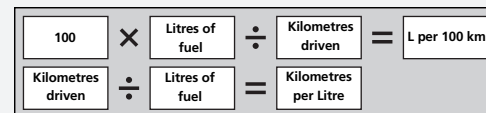
You can optimize your fuel economy with proper maintenance of your vehicle. Always maintain your vehicle according to the maintenance schedule in the Service Book that came with your vehicle. On vehicles without Service Book, follow the maintenance schedule in this owner's manual. If necessary, consult your warranty booklet.

Maintenance Schedule* P. 453

- Use engine oil with the viscosity recommended by the API Certification Seal.
- Maintain the specified tyre pressure.
- Do not load the vehicle with excess luggage.
- Keep your vehicle clean. A buildup of snow or mud on your vehicle's underside adds weight and increases wind resistance.

Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO₂ Emissions


Direct calculation is the recommended method to determine actual fuel consumed while driving.



* Not available on all models

Accessories

When installing accessories, check the following:

- Do not install accessories on the windscreen. They can obstruct your view and delay your reaction to driving conditions.
- Do not install any accessories over areas marked **SRS AIRBAG**, on the sides or backs of the front seats, on front or side pillars, or near the side windows. Accessories installed in these areas may interfere with proper operation of the vehicle's airbags or may be propelled into you or another occupant if the airbags deploy.
- Be sure electronic accessories do not overload electrical circuits or interfere with proper operation of your vehicle.
 **Fuses** P. 522
- Before installing any electronic accessory, have the installer contact a dealer for assistance. If possible, have a dealer inspect the final installation.

Modifications

Do not modify your vehicle or use non-Honda components that can affect its handling, stability, and reliability.

Overall vehicle performance can be affected. Always make sure all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and that it meets your country's and local regulations.

» Accessories and Modifications

WARNING

Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding accessories and modifications.

When properly installed, mobile phones, alarms, two-way radios, radio antennas, and low-powered audio systems should not interfere with your vehicle's computer controlled systems, such as your airbags and anti-lock brakes.

Honda Genuine accessories are recommended to ensure proper operation on your vehicle.

Maintenance

This chapter discusses basic maintenance.



Before Performing Maintenance

Inspection and Maintenance	450
Safety When Performing Maintenance.....	451
Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service	452

Maintenance Schedule*

Maintenance Record (On Vehicles without Service Book)	456
---	-----

Maintenance Under the Bonnet

Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet.....	457
Opening the Bonnet	460
Recommended Engine Oil	461
Oil Check	463

Adding Engine Oil.....	465
Engine Coolant	466
Transmission Fluid.....	468
Brake Fluid.....	469
Refilling Window Washer Fluid.....	470
Fuel Filter	470

Replacing Light Bulbs	471
Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades	482

Checking and Maintaining Tyres	
Checking Tyres	484
Wear Indicators.....	485
Tyre Service Life	485

Tyre and Wheel Replacement.....	486
Tyre Rotation	487
Snow Traction Devices	488

Battery..... 490

Remote Transmitter Care

Replacing the Button Battery	492
------------------------------------	-----

Heating and Cooling System*/Climate Control System* Maintenance.....494

Cleaning

Interior Care	496
Exterior Care.....	498

* Not available on all models

Inspection and Maintenance

For your safety, perform all listed inspections and maintenance to keep your vehicle in good condition. If you become aware of any abnormality (noise, smell, insufficient brake fluid, oil residue on the ground, etc.), have your vehicle inspected by a dealer. Refer to the maintenance schedule in this owner's manual for detailed maintenance and inspection information.

➤ **Maintenance Schedule*** P. 453

Types of Inspection and Maintenance

■ Daily inspections

Perform inspections before long distance trips, when washing the vehicle, or when refueling.

■ Periodic inspections

- Check the brake fluid level monthly.
 - **Brake Fluid** P. 469
- Check the tyre pressure monthly. Examine the tread for wear and foreign objects.
 - **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 484
- Check the operation of the exterior lights monthly.
 - **Replacing Light Bulbs** P. 471
- Check the condition of the wiper blades at least every six months.
 - **Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades** P. 482

Safety When Performing Maintenance

Some of the most important safety precautions are given here. However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can arise in performing maintenance. Only you can decide whether or not you should perform a given task.

Maintenance Safety

- To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the battery and all fuel related parts.
- Never leave rags, towels, or other flammable objects under the bonnet.
 - Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite them causing a fire.
- To clean parts, use a commercially available degreaser or parts cleaner, not petrol.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when working with the battery or compressed air.
- Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, which is poisonous and can kill you.
 - Operate the engine only when there is sufficient ventilation.

Vehicle Safety

- The vehicle must be in a stationary condition.
 - Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the parking brake is set, and the engine is off.
- Be aware that hot parts can burn you.
 - Make sure to let the engine and exhaust system cool thoroughly before touching vehicle parts.
- Be aware that moving parts can injure you.
 - Do not start the engine unless instructed, and keep your hands and limbs away from moving parts.

⚠ Safety When Performing Maintenance

⚠ WARNING

Improperly maintaining this vehicle or failing to correct a problem before driving can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the inspection and maintenance recommendations and schedules in this owner's manual/Service Book.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to properly follow maintenance instructions and precautions can cause you to be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the procedures and precautions in this owner's manual.

Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service

The use of Honda genuine parts and fluids is recommended when maintaining and servicing your vehicle. Honda genuine parts are manufactured according to the same high quality standards used in Honda vehicles.

Maintenance Schedule*

If your vehicle comes with the Service Book, the maintenance schedule for your vehicle is available in the book. For vehicles without the Service Book, refer to the following maintenance schedule.

The maintenance schedule outlines the minimum required maintenance that you should perform to ensure the troublefree operation of your vehicle. Due to regional and climatic differences, some additional servicing may be required. Please consult your warranty booklet for a more detailed description. Maintenance work should be performed by properly trained and equipped technicians. Your authorised dealer meets all of these requirements.

Except Australian, New Zealand, and South African models

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km X 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace engine oil* ¹	Normal	Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
	Severe	Every 5,000 km or 6 months									
Replace engine oil filter* ¹	Normal	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
	Severe	Every 10,000 km or 6 months									
Replace air cleaner element* ²	Every 20,000 km* ⁶										
	Every 30,000 km* ⁷										
Inspect valve clearance	Every 40,000 km										
Replace fuel filter* ³				•				•			
Replace spark plugs	Iridium type	Every 100,000 km									
		Every 60,000 km* ⁴									
Replace timing belt and inspect water pump* ⁵	Every 100,000 km or 5 years										
Inspect drive belts		•		•		•		•		•	
Inspect idle speed						•					
Replace engine coolant	At 200,000 km or 10 years, thereafter every 100,000 km or 5 years										

*1: Refer to page 455 for replacement information under severe conditions.

*2: Only severe schedule is required in some countries: refer to the local warranty booklet that came with your vehicle.

*3: Refer to page 470 for replacement information under driving condition.

*4: Thai models.

*5: 6-cylinder models.

*6: Indian models.

*7: Except Indian models.

* Not available on all models

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km X 1,000 months	20 12	40 24	60 36	80 48	100 60	120 72	140 84	160 96	180 108	200 120
Replace transmission fluid*1	Normal	At 120,000 km or 6 years, thereafter every 80,000 km or 4 years									
	Severe	At 60,000 km or 3 years, thereafter every 40,000 km or 2 years									
Inspect front and rear brakes	Every 10,000 km or 6 months										
Replace brake fluid	Every 3 years										
Check parking brake adjustment		•	•		•		•		•		•
Replace dust and pollen filter		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Rotate tyres (Check tyre inflation and condition at least once per month)	Every 10,000 km										
Visually inspect the following items:											
Tie rod ends, steering gearbox, and boots	Every 10,000 km or 6 months										
Suspension components											
Driveshaft boots											
Brake hoses and lines (including ABS)		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
All fluid levels and condition of fluid		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Exhaust system											
Fuel lines and connections											

*1: Refer to page 455 for replacement information under severe conditions.

If you drive your vehicle under severe conditions, you must have the following items served to the maintenance schedule indicated as Severe.

Items	Condition
Engine oil and filter	A, B, C, D and E
Transmission fluid	B and D

⌘ Maintenance Schedule*

The condition is considered as severe when you drive:

- A. less than 8 km, or less than 16 km in freezing temperatures per trip.
- B. in extremely hot temperature above 35°C.
- C. with extensive idling or long periods of stop-and-go.
- D. with a trailer towing*, loaded roof rack, or in mountains.
- E. on muddy, dusty or de-iced roads.

* Not available on all models

Maintenance Record (On Vehicles without Service Book)

Have your servicing dealer record all required maintenance below. Keep receipts for all work done on your vehicle.

	Km or Month	Date	Sign or Stamp
	20,000 km (or 12 Mo.)		
	40,000 km (or 24 Mo.)		
	60,000 km (or 36 Mo.)		
	80,000 km (or 48 Mo.)		
	100,000 km (or 60 Mo.)		
	120,000 km (or 72 Mo.)		
	140,000 km (or 84 Mo.)		
	160,000 km (or 96 Mo.)		
	180,000 km (or 108 Mo.)		
	200,000 km (or 120 Mo.)		

Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet

2.0 l engine models

Right-hand drive type
Brake Fluid (Black Cap)

Left-hand drive type
Brake Fluid (Black Cap)

Engine Oil Fill Cap

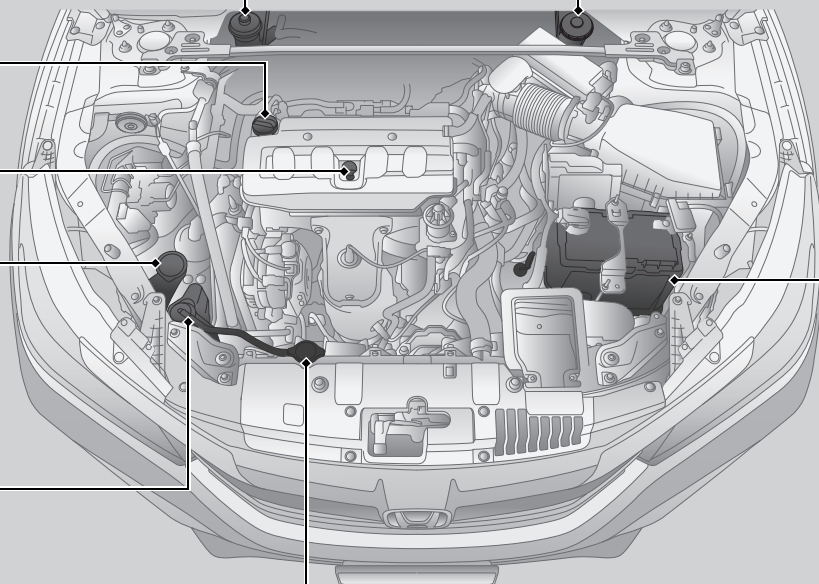
Engine Oil Dipstick
(Orange)

Washer Fluid
(Blue Cap)

Battery

Engine Coolant
Reserve Tank

Radiator Cap



2.4 ℓ engine models

Right-hand drive type
Brake Fluid (Black Cap)

Left-hand drive type
Brake Fluid (Black Cap)

Engine Oil Dipstick
(Orange)

Engine Oil Fill Cap

Washer Fluid
(Blue Cap)

Battery

Engine Coolant
Reserve Tank

Radiator Cap

6-cylinder models

Right-hand drive type
Brake Fluid (Black Cap)

Left-hand drive type
Brake Fluid (Black Cap)

Engine Oil Dipstick
(Orange)

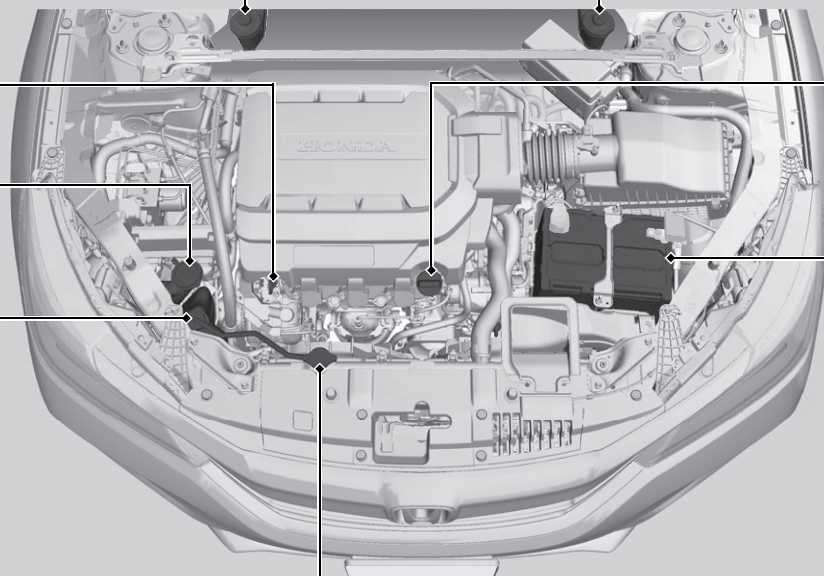
Engine Oil Fill Cap

Washer Fluid
(Blue Cap)

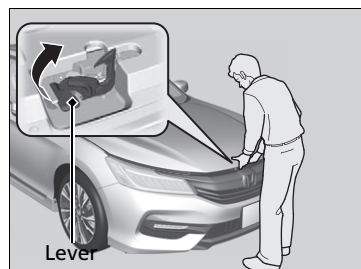
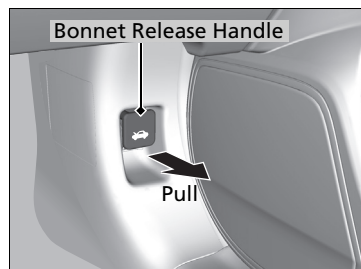
Battery

Engine Coolant
Reserve Tank

Radiator Cap



Opening the Bonnet



1. Park the vehicle on a level surface, and set the parking brake.

2. Pull the bonnet release handle under the driver side's lower outer corner of the dashboard.

► The bonnet will pop up slightly.

3. Push up the bonnet latch lever in the centre of the bonnet to release the lock mechanism, and open the bonnet.

4. Lift the bonnet up most of the way.

► The hydraulic supports will lift it up the rest of the way and hold it up.

When closing, lower it to approximately 30 cm, then press down firmly with your hands.

►► Opening the Bonnet

NOTICE

Do not open the bonnet when the wiper arms are raised.

The bonnet will strike the wipers, and may damage either the bonnet or the wipers.

When closing the bonnet, check that the bonnet is securely latched.

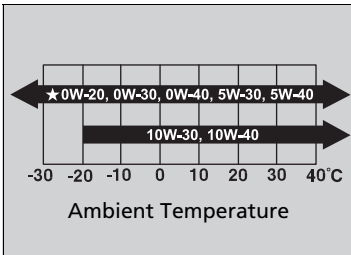
If the bonnet latch lever moves stiffly, or if you can open the bonnet without lifting the lever, the latch mechanism should be cleaned and lubricated.

Recommended Engine Oil

Oil is a major contributor to your engine's performance and longevity. If you drive the vehicle with insufficient or deteriorated oil, the engine may fail or be damaged.

African 4-cylinder models (South African not included)

- **Genuine Honda Motor Oil**
- **API service SM or higher grade fuel-efficient oil**

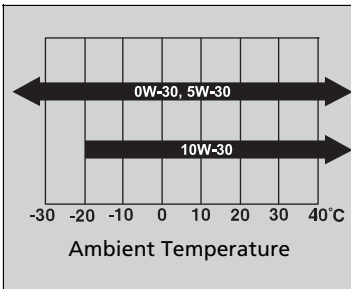


Use Genuine Honda Motor oil or another commercial engine oil of suitable SAE viscosity for the ambient temperature as shown here.

0W-20 oil is formulated to improve fuel economy.

6-cylinder models

- **Genuine Honda Motor Oil**
- **API service SM or higher grade fuel-efficient oil**



Use Genuine Honda Motor oil or another commercial engine oil of suitable SAE viscosity for the ambient temperature as shown here.

0W-30 oil is formulated to improve fuel economy.

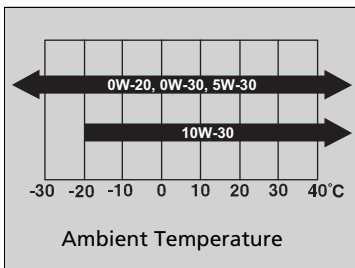
Recommended Engine Oil

Engine Oil Additives

Your vehicle does not require oil additives. In fact, they may adversely affect the engine performance and durability.

Other models

- **Genuine Honda Motor Oil**
- **API service SM or higher grade fuel-efficient oil**



Use Genuine Honda Motor oil or another commercial engine oil of suitable SAE viscosity for the ambient temperature as shown here.

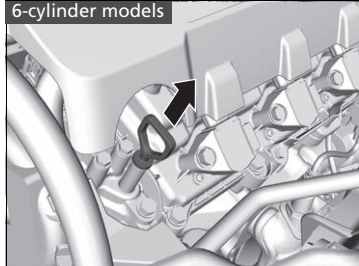
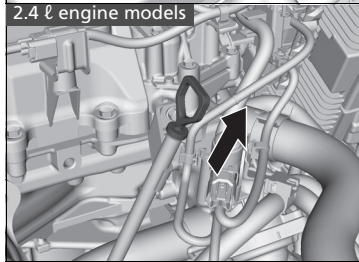
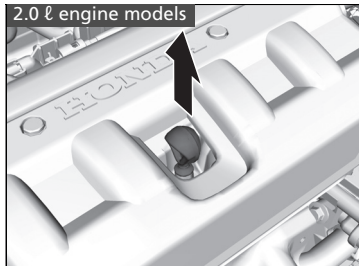
0W-20 oil is formulated to improve fuel economy.

Oil Check

We recommend that you check the engine oil level every time you refuel.

Park the vehicle on level ground.

Wait approximately three minutes after turning the engine off before you check the oil.



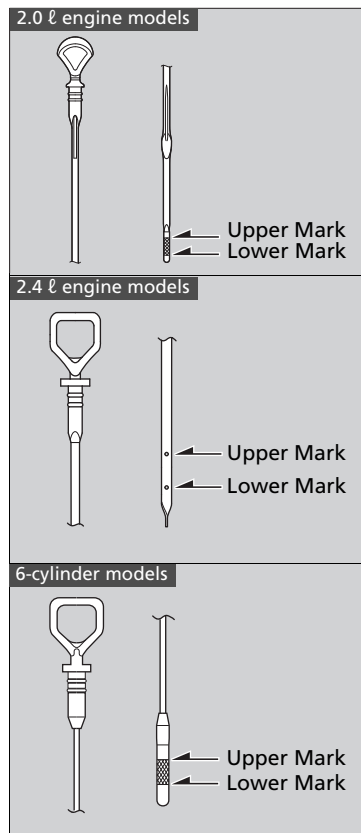
1. Remove the dipstick (orange).
2. Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth or paper towel.
3. Insert the dipstick back all the way into its hole.

Oil Check

If the oil level is near or below the lower mark, slowly add oil being careful not to overfill.

The amount of oil consumed depends on how the vehicle is driven and the climatic and road conditions encountered. The rate of oil consumption can be up to 1 litre per 1,000 km. Consumption is likely to be higher when the engine is new.

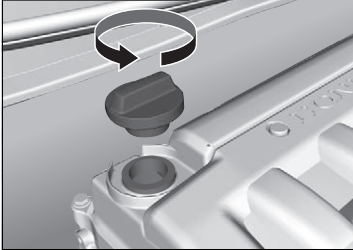
Continued



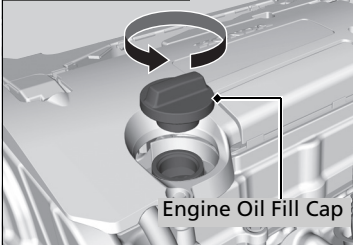
4. Remove the dipstick again, and check the level. It should be between the upper and lower marks. Add oil if necessary.

Adding Engine Oil

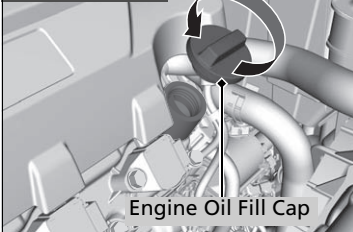
2.0 l engine models



2.4 l engine models



6-cylinder models



1. Unscrew and remove the engine oil fill cap.
2. Add oil slowly.
3. Reinstall the engine oil fill cap, and tighten it securely.
4. Wait for three minutes and recheck the engine oil dipstick.

Adding Engine Oil

NOTICE

Do not fill the engine oil above the upper limit mark. Overfilling the engine oil can result in leaks and engine damage.

If any oil spills, wipe it away immediately. Spilled oil may damage the engine compartment components.

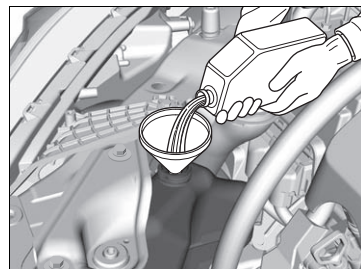
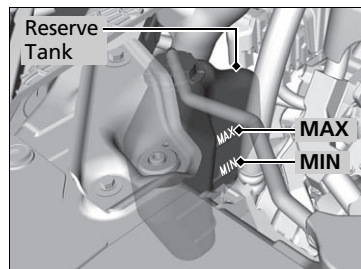
Engine Coolant

Specified coolant: Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2

This coolant is premixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Do not add any straight antifreeze or water.

We recommend you check the engine coolant level every time you refuel. Check the reserve tank first. If it is completely empty, also check the coolant level in the radiator. Add the engine coolant accordingly.

Reserve Tank



1. Check the amount of coolant in the reserve tank.

2. If the coolant level is below the **MIN** mark, add the specified coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.

3. Inspect the cooling system for leaks.

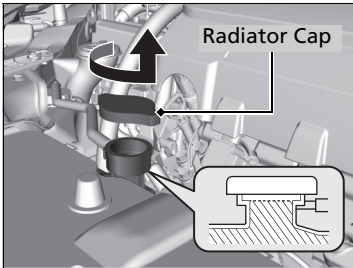
Engine Coolant

If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major brand non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended for aluminium engines.

Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the engine components.

Radiator



1. **Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.**
2. Turn the radiator cap anticlockwise to relieve any pressure in the cooling system. Do not push the cap down when turning.
3. Push down and turn the radiator cap anticlockwise to remove it.
4. The coolant level should be up to the base of the filler neck. Add coolant if it is low.
5. Put the radiator cap back on, and tighten it fully.
6. Pour coolant into the reserve tank until it reaches the **MAX** mark. Put the cap back on the reserve tank.

Radiator

⚠ WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

NOTICE

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; they can damage components in the engine compartment.

Transmission Fluid

■ Automatic Transmission Fluid

Specified fluid: Honda ATF DW-1 (automatic transmission fluid)

Have a dealer check the fluid level and replace if necessary.
Follow your vehicle's maintenance service timing of when to change automatic transmission fluid.

➤ **Maintenance Schedule*** P. 453

» Automatic Transmission Fluid

NOTICE

Do not mix Honda ATF DW-1 with other transmission fluids.

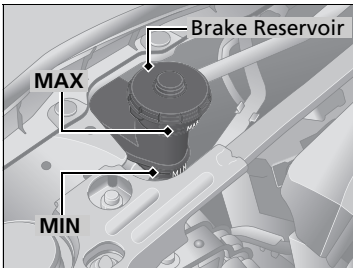
Using a transmission fluid other than Honda ATF DW-1 may adversely affect the operation and durability of your vehicle's transmission, and damage the transmission.

Any damage caused by using a transmission fluid that is not equivalent to Honda ATF DW-1 is not covered by Honda's new vehicle warranty.

Brake Fluid

Specified fluid: Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4

■ Checking the Brake Fluid



The fluid level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the side of the reservoir.

» Brake Fluid

NOTICE

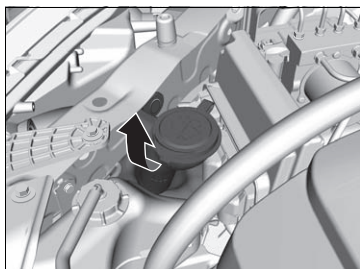
Brake fluid marked DOT 5 is not compatible with your vehicle's braking system and can cause extensive damage.

We recommend using a genuine product.

If the brake fluid level is at or below the **MIN** mark, have a dealer inspect the vehicle for leaks or worn brake pads as soon as possible.

Refilling Window Washer Fluid

Check the amount of window washer fluid by looking at the reservoir.



If the level is low, fill the washer reservoir.

►► Refilling Window Washer Fluid

NOTICE

Do not use engine antifreeze or a vinegar/water solution in the windscreen washer reservoir. Antifreeze can damage your vehicle's paint. A vinegar/water solution can damage the windscreen washer pump.

Fuel Filter

Replace fuel filter according to the time and distance recommendations in the maintenance schedule.

Except Australian and New Zealand's 4-cylinder, and South African models

It is recommended to replace the fuel filter every 40,000 km, or two years, if you suspect the fuel you are using is contaminated. In a dusty environment, the filter may become clogged sooner.

Australian and New Zealand's 4-cylinder, and South African models

It is recommended to replace the fuel filter every 45,000 km or three years, if you suspect the fuel you are using is contaminated. In a dusty environment, the filter may become clogged sooner.

All models

Have a qualified technician change the fuel filter. Fuel in the system can spray out and create a hazard if all fuel line connections are not handled correctly.

Replacing Light Bulbs

Headlight Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Models with halogen headlights

High Beam Headlight: 60 W (HB3 for halogen bulb type)

Low Beam Headlight: 55 W (H11 for halogen bulb type)

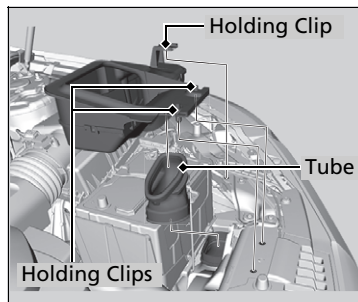
Models with LED headlights

High Beam Headlight: LED type

Low Beam Headlight: LED type

Models with halogen headlights

High Beam Headlight



Left side

6-cylinder models

1. Unlock the holding clips, then remove the upper part of the air intake duct and the air intake tube.

Headlight Bulbs

Models with halogen headlights

NOTICE

Halogen bulbs get very hot when lit. Oil, perspiration, or a scratch on the glass can cause the bulb to overheat and shatter.

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted.

Models without automatic headlight adjusting system

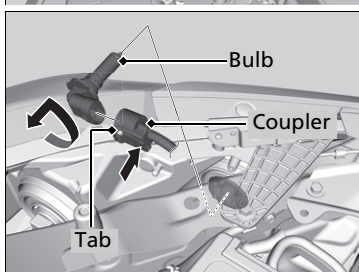
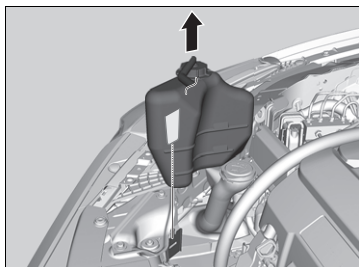
However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the boot or tow a trailer, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

When replacing a halogen bulb, handle it by its base, and protect the glass from contact with your skin or hard objects. If you touch the glass, clean it with denatured alcohol and a clean cloth.

Models with LED headlights

High beam and low beam headlights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Continued



Right side

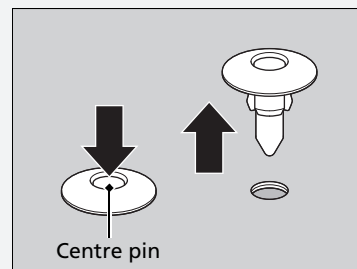
All models

1. Remove the engine coolant reservoir.
2. Push the tab to remove the coupler.
3. Rotate the old bulb to the left to remove.
4. Insert a new bulb into the headlight assembly and turn it to the right.
5. Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.

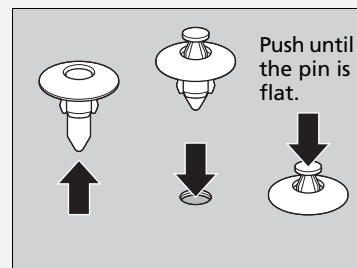
►► High Beam Headlight

Holding clip

Press down the centre pin until it clicks to unlock it.

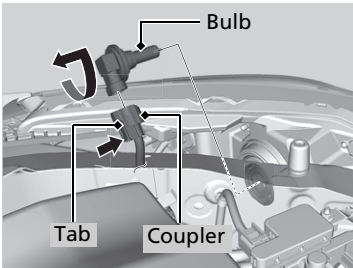


Push the centre pin back to lock the clip. Then, insert the clip into the hole and press on the centre pin until it is flat.



Models with halogen headlights

Low Beam Headlights



1. Push the tab to remove the coupler.
2. Rotate the old bulb to the left to remove.
3. Insert a new bulb into the headlight assembly and turn it to the right.
4. Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.

Front Fog Lights*

Front fog lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

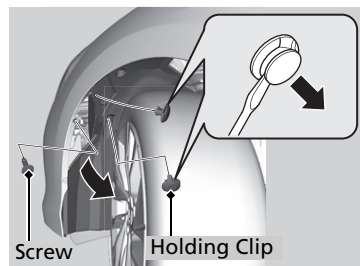
* Not available on all models

Models with halogen headlights

Front Turn Signal Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Front Turn Signal Light: 21 W (Amber)



1. Turn the steering wheel all the way to the opposite side from the light being replaced.

Left side: Turn the steering wheel to the right.

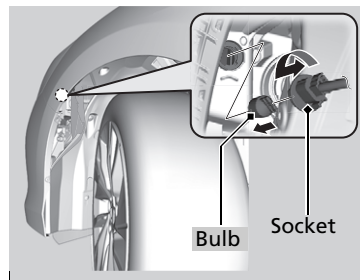
Right side: Turn the steering wheel to the left.

2. Remove the holding clip and screw, and pull the inner fender back.

3. Turn the socket to the left and remove it.

4. Pull the bulb straight out of its holder.

5. Insert a new bulb.



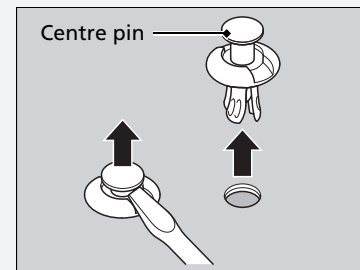
Models with LED headlights

Front Turn Signal Lights

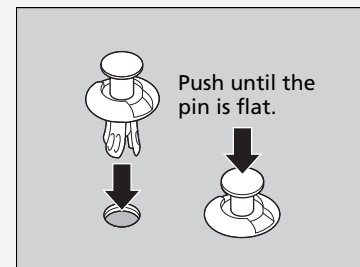
Front turn signal lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Front Turn Signal Light Bulbs

Insert a flat-tip screwdriver, lift and remove the centre pin to remove the clip.



Insert the clip with the centre pin raised, and push until it is flat.



Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights

Door mirror side turn lights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Position/Daytime Running Lights

Position/daytime running lights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Active Cornering Lights*

Active cornering lights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

* Not available on all models

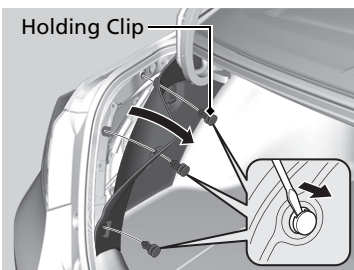
Rear Turn Signal Light Bulbs, Taillights and Brake lights

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

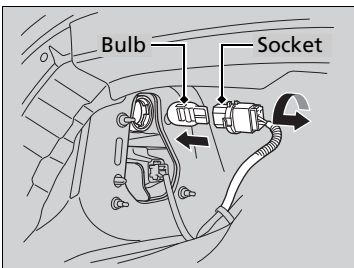
Rear Turn Signal Light: 21 W (Amber)

Taillight: LED type

Brake Light: LED type



1. Remove the holding clips using a flat-tip screwdriver, then pull the lining back.

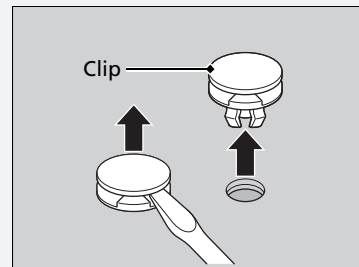


2. Turn the socket to the left and remove it.
3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

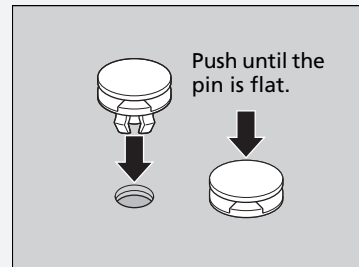
► Rear Turn Signal Light Bulbs, Taillights and Brake lights

Taillights and Brake lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

When removing the clip, insert a flat-tip screwdriver, then lift and remove the clip.



Insert the clip with the pin raised, and push until it is flat.



Back-Up Light Bulbs, Taillights and Rear Fog Light *

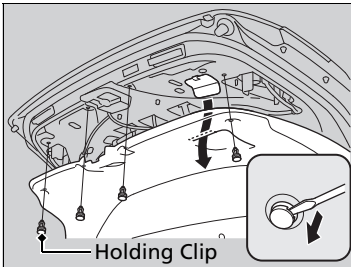
When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Back-Up Light: 16 W

Taillight: LED type

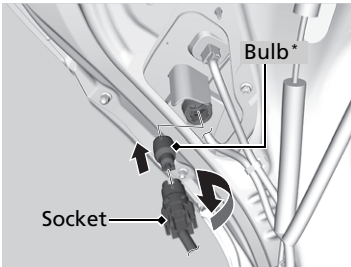
Models with rear fog light

Rear Fog Light: LED type



1. Remove the holding clips using a flat-tip screwdriver, then pull the lining back.

► **Rear Turn Signal Light Bulbs, Taillights and Brake lights** P. 476



2. Turn the socket to the left and remove it.
3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

►► Back-Up Light Bulbs, Taillights and Rear Fog Light *

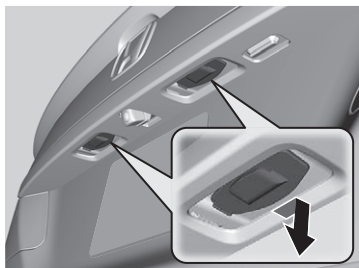
Taillights and rear fog light are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

* Not available on all models

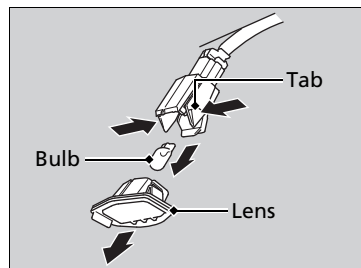
Rear Licence Plate Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Rear Licence Plate Light: 5 W



1. Remove the licence plate light assembly by pushing the left edge of the lens toward the right and pulling the assembly out.



2. Remove the lens by pushing the tabs.

3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

High-Mount Brake Light

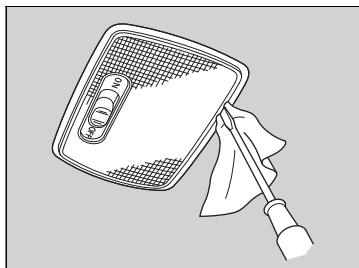
High-mount brake light is LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Other Light Bulbs

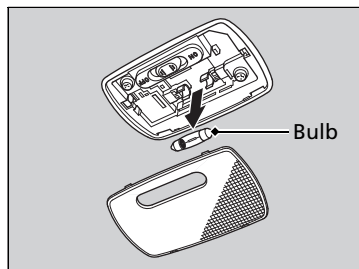
■ Ceiling Light Bulb*

When replacing, use the following bulb.

Ceiling Light: 8 W



1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

* Not available on all models

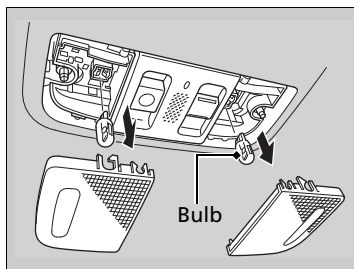
■ Map Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Map Light: 8 W



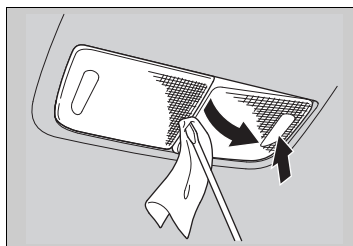
1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



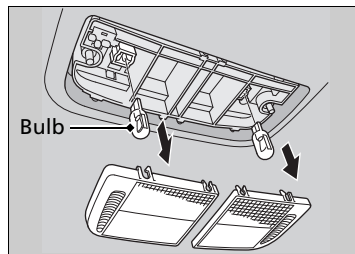
2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

Models without sunroof

Models without ambient light



1. Push on the lens of the opposite side you are replacing.
2. Pry on the edge between the lenses using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



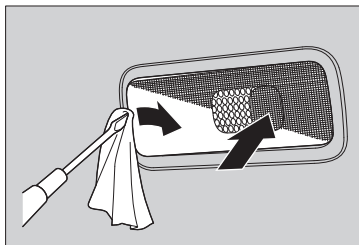
3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

Rear Map Light Bulbs*

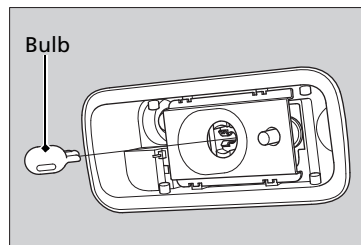
Models without sunroof

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Rear Map Lights: 5 W



1. Push on the lens of the opposite side you are replacing.
2. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

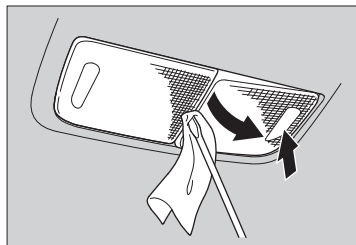


3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

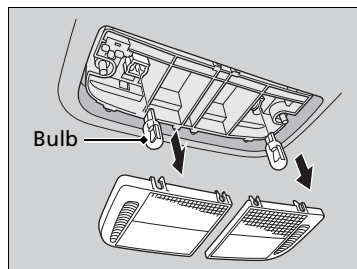
Models with sunroof

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Rear Map Lights: 8 W



1. Push on the lens of the opposite side you are replacing.
2. Pry on the edge between the lenses using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

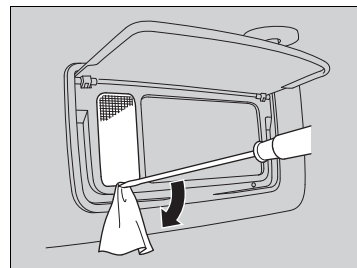


3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

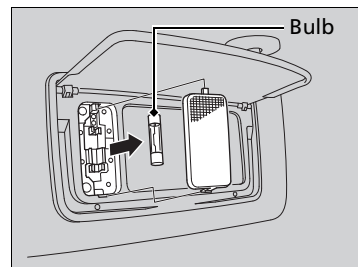
Vanity Mirror Light Bulbs*

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Vanity Mirror Light: 2 W



1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

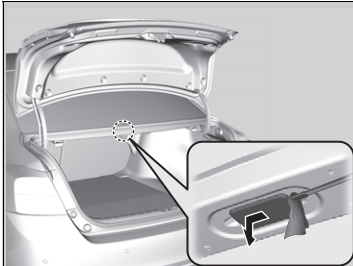


2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

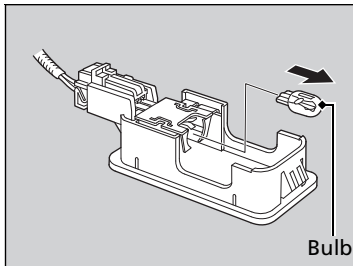
■ Boot Light Bulb

When replacing, use the following bulb.

Boot Light: 5 W



1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

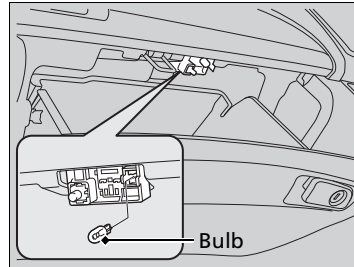


2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

■ Glove Box Light Bulb

When replacing, use the following bulb.

Glove Box Light: 3.4 W

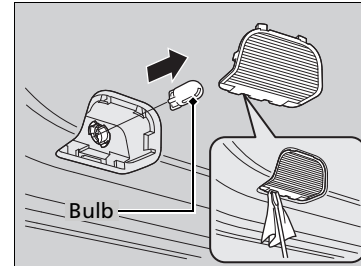


1. Open the glove box.
2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

■ Door Courtesy Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Door Courtesy Light: 2 CP

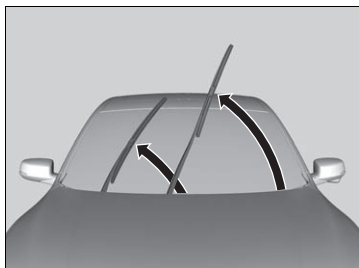


1. Open the front door.
2. Pry on the front edge of the light using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.
3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

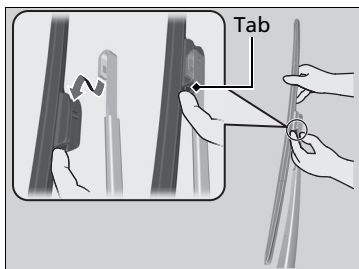
Checking Wiper Blades

If the wiper blade rubber has deteriorated, it will leave streaks and the hard surfaces of the blade may scratch the window glass.

Changing the Wiper Blade Rubber



1. Lift the driver side wiper arm first, then the passenger side.

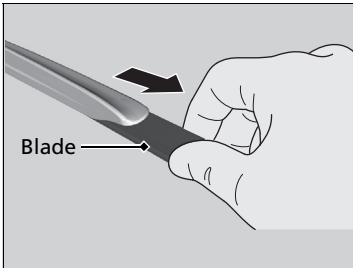


2. Press and hold the tab, then slide the blade from the wiper arm.

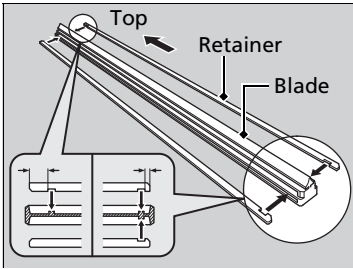
Changing the Wiper Blade Rubber

NOTICE

Avoid dropping the wiper arm; it may damage the windscreen.

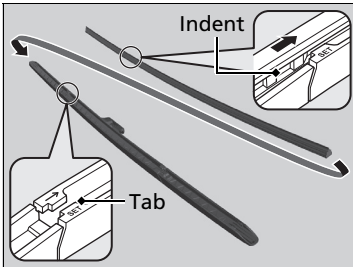


3. Slide the wiper blade out from its holder by pulling the tabbed end out.



4. Remove the retainers from the rubber blade that has been removed, and mount to a new rubber blade.

► Correctly align the rubber protrusion and the retainer grooves.



5. Slide the new wiper blade onto the holder from the bottom end.

► The tab on the holder should fit in the indent of the wiper blade.

6. Slide the wiper blade onto the wiper arm, then push down the lock tab.

7. Lower the passenger side wiper arm first, then the driver side.

Checking Tyres

To safely operate your vehicle, your tyres must be of the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and properly inflated.

■ Inflation guidelines

Properly inflated tyres provide the best combination of handling, tread life, and comfort. Refer to the driver's doorjamb label or specification's page for the specified pressure.

Underinflated tyres wear unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from overheating.

Overinflated tyres make your vehicle ride harshly, are more prone to road hazards, and wear unevenly.

Every day before you drive, look at each of the tyres. If one looks lower than the others, check the pressure with a tyre gauge.

At least once a month or before long trips, use a gauge to measure the pressure in all tyres, including the spare. Even tyres in good condition can lose 10 to 20 kPa (0.1 to 0.2 kgf/cm², 1 to 2 psi) per month.

■ Inspection guidelines

Every time you check inflation, also examine the tyres and valve stems. Look for:

- Bumps or bulges on the side or in the tread. Replace the tyre if you find any cuts, splits, or cracks in the side of the tyre. Replace it if you see fabric or cord.
- Remove any foreign objects and inspect for air leaks.
- Uneven tread wear. Have a dealer check the wheel alignment.
- Excessive tread wear.

➤ **Wear Indicators** P. 485

- Cracks or other damage around valve stem.

ⓘ Checking Tyres

⚠ WARNING

Using tyres that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding tyre inflation and maintenance.

Measure the air pressure when tyres are cold. This means the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours, or driven less than 1.6 km. If necessary, add or release air until the specified pressure is reached.

If checked when hot, tyre pressure can be as much as 30–40 kPa (0.3–0.4 kgf/cm², 4–6 psi) higher than if checked when cold.

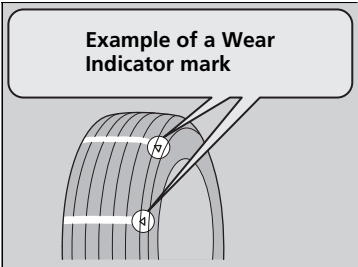
Models with deflation warning system

Whenever tyre pressure is adjusted, you must initialise the deflation warning system.

➤ **Deflation Warning System Initialisation**
P. 422

Have a dealer check the tyres if you feel a consistent vibration while driving. New tyres and any that have been removed and reinstalled should be properly balanced.

Wear Indicators



The groove where the wear indicator is located is 1.6 mm shallower than elsewhere on the tyre. If the tread has worn so that the indicator is exposed, replace the tyre. **Worn out tyres have poor traction on wet roads.**

Tyre Service Life

The life of your tyres is dependent on many factors, including driving habits, road conditions, vehicle loading, inflation pressure, maintenance history, speed, and environmental conditions (even when the tyres are not in use).

In addition to regular inspections and inflation pressure maintenance, it is recommended that you have annual inspections performed once the tyres reach five years old. All tyres, including the spare, should be removed from service after 10 years from the date of manufacture, regardless of their condition or state of wear.

Checking Tyres

High speed driving

We recommend that you do not drive faster than the posted speed limits and conditions allow. If you drive at sustained high speeds (over 160 km/h), adjust the cold tyre pressures as shown below to avoid excessive heat build up and sudden tyre failure.

Models with 215/60R16 95H tyres

Tyre Size	215/60R16 95H
Pressure	220 kPa (2.2 kgf/cm ² , 32 psi)

35SIRC model

Tyre Size	225/50R17 94V
Pressure	240 kPa (2.4 kgf/cm ² , 35 psi)

V6L, V6EXCL, 35SV, and 35EX models

Tyre Size	235/45R18 98W
Pressure	250 kPa (2.5 kgf/cm ² , 36 psi)

Tyre and Wheel Replacement

Replace your tyres with radials of the same size, load range, speed rating, and maximum cold tyre pressure rating (as shown on the tyre's sidewall). Using tyres of a different size or construction can cause the ABS and VSA and hill start assist* systems to work incorrectly.

It is best to replace all four tyres at the same time. If that isn't possible, replace the front or rear tyres in pairs.

Make sure that the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheels.

► Tyre and Wheel Replacement

WARNING

Installing improper tyres on your vehicle can affect handling and stability. This can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

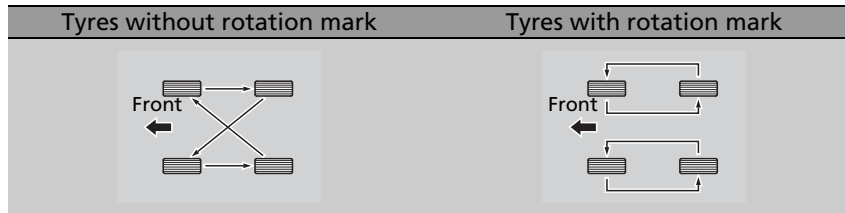
Always use the size and type of tyres recommended in the tyre information label on your vehicle.

Tyre Rotation

Rotating tyres according to the maintenance schedule helps to distribute wear more evenly and increase tyre life.

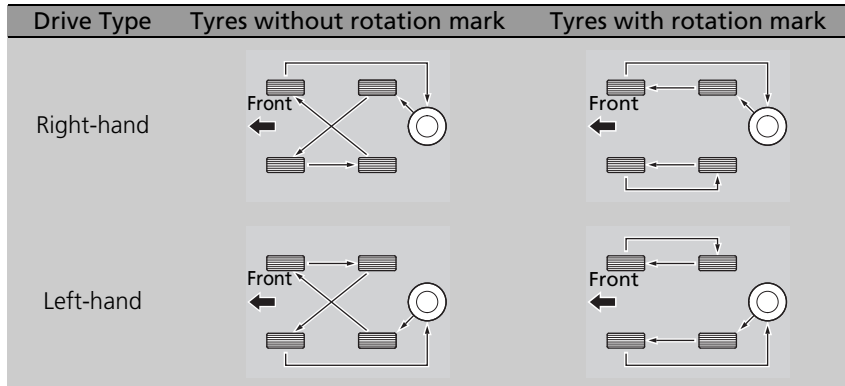
■ Your Vehicle's Tyre Rotation Pattern

Rotate the tyres as shown here.



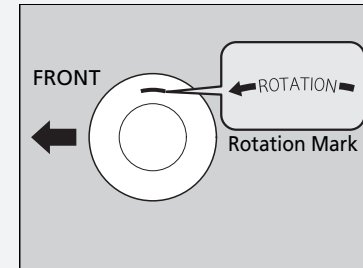
■ Models with a full-size spare tyre

When the spare tyre is also rotated, rotate the tyres as shown here.



▣ Tyre Rotation

Tyres with directional tread patterns should only be rotated front to back (not from one side to the other). Directional tyres should be mounted with the rotation mark facing forward, as shown below.



When the tyres are rotated, make sure the air pressures are checked.

■ Models with deflation warning system

Whenever tyres are rotated, you must initialise the deflation warning system.

► **Deflation Warning System Initialisation**
P. 422

Snow Traction Devices

If driving on snowy or frozen roads, mount winter tyres, or tyre chains; reduce speed; and maintain sufficient distance between vehicles when driving.

Be particularly careful when operating the steering wheel or brakes to prevent skidding.

Use tyre chains, winter tyres, or all season tyres when necessary or according to the law.

When mounting, refer to the following points.

For winter tyres:

- Select the size and load ranges that are the same as the original tyres.
- Mount the tyres to all four wheels.

► Snow Traction Devices

WARNING

Using the wrong chains, or not properly installing chains, can damage the brake lines and cause a crash in which you can be seriously injured or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding the selection and use of tyre chains.

NOTICE

Traction devices that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body, and wheels. Stop driving if they are hitting any part of the vehicle.

When tyre chains are mounted, follow the chain manufacturer's instructions regarding vehicle operational limits.

Use tyre chains only in an emergency or when they are legally required for driving through a certain area.

Use greater caution when driving with tyre chains on snow or ice. They may have less-predictable handling than good winter tyres without chains.

For tyre chains:

- Install them on the front tyres only.

Australian, New Zealand, African, and Malaysian models

355IRC model

- Because your vehicle has limited tyre clearance, we strongly recommend using the chains listed below:

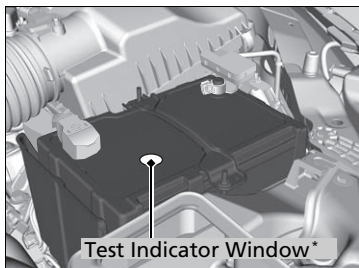
Original Tyre Size*1	Chain Type
215/60R 16	RUD-matic classic 48492
225/50R 17	RUD-matic classic 48492
235/45R 18	RUD-matic classic 48494

*1: Original tyre size is mentioned on the tyre information label on the driver's doorjamb.

All models

- Follow the chain manufacturer's instruction when installing. Mount them as tightly as you can.
- Check that the chains do not touch the brake lines or suspension.
- Drive slowly.

Checking the Battery



6-cylinder models except African right-hand drive type

Check the battery terminals for corrosion monthly.

Other models

Check the battery condition monthly. Look at the test indicator window and check the terminals for corrosion.

All models

The battery condition is being monitored by the sensor on the negative terminal. If there is a problem with the sensor, the warning message on the information display*/multi-information display* will let you know. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead:

- The audio system is disabled.
 - **Reactivating the audio system** P. 218
- The clock resets.
 - **Clock** P. 128
- The navigation system* is disabled.
 - **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

» Battery

⚠ WARNING

The battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during normal operation.

A spark or open flame can cause the battery to explode with enough force to kill or seriously hurt you.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

Wear protective clothing and a face shield, or have a skilled technician do any battery maintenance.

⚠ WARNING

The battery contains sulfuric acid (electrolyte) which is highly corrosive and poisonous.

Getting electrolyte in your eyes or on your skin can cause serious burns. Wear protective clothing and eye protection when working on or near the battery.

Swallowing electrolyte can cause fatal poisoning if immediate action is not taken.

KEEP OUT OF THE REACH OF CHILDREN

Charging the Battery

Disconnect both battery cables to prevent damaging your vehicle's electrical system. Always disconnect the negative (-) cable first, and reconnect it last.

» Battery

Models with test indicator window on the battery

The test indicator's colour information is on the battery.

The location of the test indicator window may vary depending on the model.

» Charging the Battery

Emergency Procedures

Eyes: Flush with water from a cup or other container for at least 15 minutes. (Water under pressure can damage the eye.) Call a physician immediately.

Skin: Remove contaminated clothing. Flush the skin with large quantities of water. Call a physician immediately.

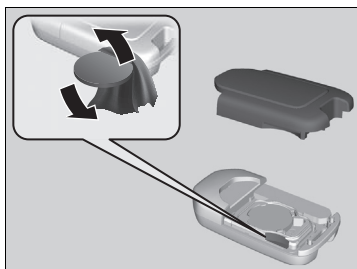
Swallowing: Drink water or milk. Call a physician immediately.

When you find corrosion, clean the battery terminals by applying a baking powder and water solution. Clean terminals with a damp towel. Cloth/towel dry the battery. Coat the terminals with grease to help prevent future corrosion.

Replacing the Button Battery

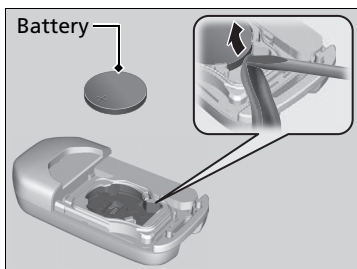
If the indicator does not come on when the button is pressed, replace the battery.

■ Retractable Key*



Battery type: CR2032

1. Remove the upper half of the cover by carefully prying on the edge with a coin.
▶ Wrap a coin with a cloth to prevent scratching the retractable key.



2. Remove the button battery with the small flat-tip screwdriver.
3. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.

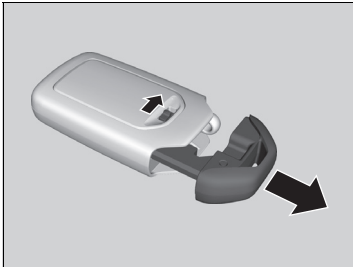
» Replacing the Button Battery

NOTICE

An improperly disposed of battery can damage the environment. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

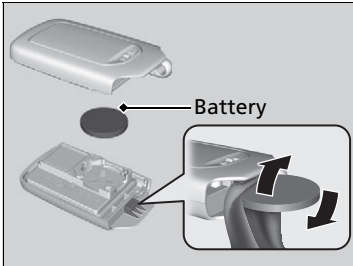
Replacement batteries are commercially available or at a dealer.

■ Keyless Remote *



Battery type: CR2032

1. Remove the built-in key.
2. Remove the upper half of the cover by carefully prying on the edge with a coin.
 - Remove carefully to avoid losing the buttons.
 - Wrap a coin with a cloth to prevent scratching the keyless remote.
3. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.



* Not available on all models

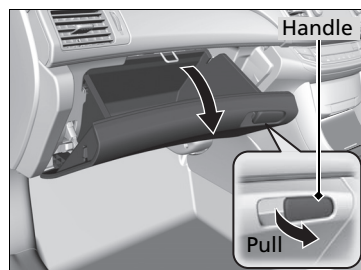
Dust and Pollen Filter

■ When to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter

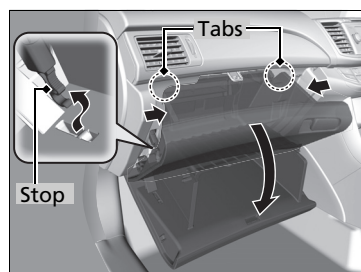
Replace the dust and pollen filter according to your vehicle's recommended maintenance schedule. It is recommended to replace the filter even sooner if the vehicle has been driven in a dusty environment.

➤ **Maintenance Schedule*** P. 453

■ How to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter



1. Open the glove box.



2. Push the stop on the passenger's side of the glove box to detach it from glove box.

3. Disengage the two tabs by pushing on each side panel.

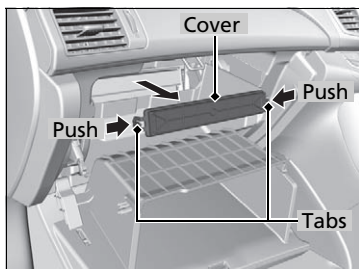
4. Pivot the glove box out of the way.

» Dust and Pollen Filter

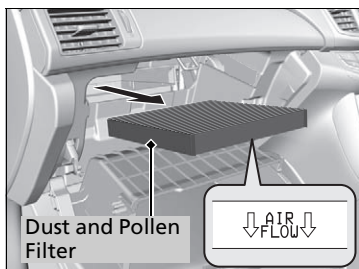
Using an air freshener may reduce the deodorizing effect of the dust and pollen filter, and may reduce its life.

If the airflow from the heating and cooling system*/climate control system* deteriorates noticeably, and the windows fog up easily, the filter may need to be replaced.

The dust and pollen filter collects pollen, dust, and other debris in the air.



5. Push in the tabs on the corners of the filter case cover, and remove it.



6. Remove the filter from the case.

7. Install a new filter in the case.

- Put the **AIR FLOW** arrow directed side down.

►► Dust and Pollen Filter

If you are not sure how to replace the dust and pollen filter, have it replaced by a dealer.

Interior Care

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove dust before using a cloth.

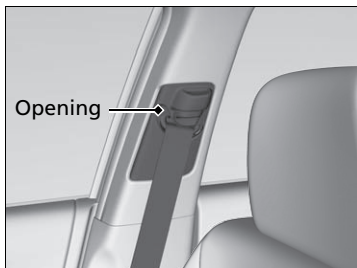
Use a damp cloth with a mixture of mild detergent and warm water to remove dirt.

Use a clean cloth to remove detergent residue.

Cleaning Seat Belts

Use a soft brush with a mixture of mild soap and warm water to clean the seat belts.

Let the belts air dry. Wipe the openings of the seat belt anchors using a clean cloth.



Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

Interior Care

Do not spill liquids inside the vehicle.

Electrical devices and systems may malfunction if liquids are splashed on them.

Do not use silicone based sprays on electrical devices such as audio devices and switches.

Doing so may cause the items to malfunction or a fire inside the vehicle.

If a silicone based spray is inadvertently used on electrical devices, consult a dealer.

Depending on their composition, chemicals and liquid aromatics may cause discolouration, wrinkles, and cracking to resin-based parts and textiles.

Do not use alkali solvents or organic solvents such as benzene or petrol.

After using chemicals, make sure to gently wipe them away using a dry cloth.

Do not place used cloths on top of resin based parts or textiles for long periods of time without washing.

Be careful not to spill a liquid type air freshener.

Cleaning the Window

Wires are mounted to the inside of the rear window. Wipe along the same direction as the wires with a soft cloth so as not to damage them.

■ Floor Mats*

The driver's floor mat hooks over the floor anchors, which keep the mat from sliding forward. When reinstalling the mat after cleaning, position it properly.

Do not put additional floor mats on top of the anchored mat.

■ Maintaining Genuine Leather*

Vacuum dirt and dust from the leather frequently. Pay close attention to the pleats and seams. Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with a 90% water and 10% neutral soap solution. Then buff it with a clean, dry cloth. Remove any dust or dirt on leather surfaces immediately.

▣ Floor Mats*

If you use any floor mats that were not originally provided with your vehicle, make sure they are designed for your specific vehicle, fit correctly, and are securely anchored by the floor anchors. Position the rear seat floor mats properly. If they are not properly positioned, the floor mats can interfere with the front seat functions.

* Not available on all models

Exterior Care

Dust off the vehicle body after you drive.

Regularly inspect your vehicle for scratches on painted surfaces. A scratch on a painted surface can result in body rust. If you find a scratch, promptly repair it.

■ Washing the Vehicle

Wash the vehicle frequently. Further, make sure to wash the vehicle in the following circumstances:

- If driving on roads with road salt.
- If driving in coastal areas.
- If tar, soot, bird droppings, insects, or tree sap are stuck to painted surfaces.

■ Using an Automated Car Wash

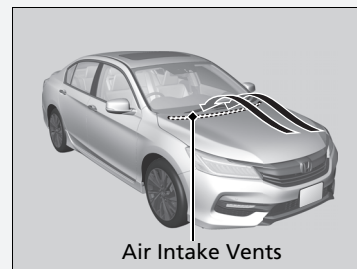
Fold in the door mirrors. Make sure to follow the instructions indicated on the automated car wash.

■ Using High Pressure Cleaners

- Keep sufficient distance between the cleaning nozzle and the vehicle body.
- Take particular care around the windows. Standing too close may cause water to enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not spray high pressure water directly into the engine compartment. Instead, use low pressure water and a mild detergent.

▣ Washing the Vehicle

Do not spray water into the air intake vents. It can cause a malfunction.



■ Applying Wax

A good coat of automotive body wax helps protect your vehicle's paint from the elements. Wax will wear off over time and expose your vehicle's paint to the elements, so reapply as necessary.

■ Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

If you get petrol, oil, engine coolant, or battery fluid on resin coated parts, they may be stained or the coating may peel. Promptly wipe it away using a soft cloth and water.

■ Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

■ Water repellent glass*

The front side windows are fitted with water repellent agent glasses that disperse water into droplets. To clean the front side windows, wash off with water, or wipe with a soft damp cloth.

Using a glass cleaner may temporarily prevent the water repellent glasses from dispersing water. Rinsing the glasses with water can make them water repellent again. If you find that the glass has stopped dispersing water, consult a dealer.

►► Applying Wax

NOTICE

Chemical solvents and strong cleaners can damage the paint, metal, and plastic on your vehicle. Wipe away spills immediately.

►► Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

Ask a dealer about the correct coating material when you want to repair the painted surface of the parts made of resin.

►► Cleaning the Window

Models with water repellent glass

To make the water-repellent effect last longer, do the following:

- Avoid opening and closing the front side windows when the windows are covered with dirt.
- Avoid using a glass cleaner with polishing compounds, wax, or detergent.
- Avoid scraping off frosts on the windows using a metallic tool.
- Dirt off the windows before using an automated car wash.

* Not available on all models

■ Maintaining Aluminium Wheels

Aluminium is susceptible to deterioration caused by salt and other road contaminants. Use a sponge and mild detergent to wipe away promptly. Be careful not to use harsh chemicals (including some commercial wheel cleaners) or a stiff brush. They can damage the clear coat of the aluminium alloy wheels that helps keep the aluminium from corroding and tarnishing.

■ Hydrophilic Mirror*

Your vehicle's door mirror surface is coated with a hydrophilic film. Follow the next steps when the mirrors become less hydrophilic.

1. Rinse the door mirrors with water and remove dirt.
2. Wipe the mirrors with a clean damp cloth.
 - If you cannot remove dirt, use the genuine window cleaner, or neutral household detergent, and rinse with enough water.
3. Expose the mirrors to the sun for five to nine hours.

■ Fogged Exterior Light Lenses

The inside lenses of exterior lights (headlights, brake lights, etc.) may fog temporarily if you have driven in the rain, or after the vehicle has been run through a car wash. Dew condensation also may build up inside the lenses when there is a significant enough difference between the ambient and inside lens temperatures (similar to vehicle windows fogging up in rainy conditions). These conditions are natural processes, not structural design problems in the exterior lights.

Lens design characteristics may result in moisture developing on the light lens frame surfaces. This also is not a malfunction.

However, if you see large amounts of water accumulation, or large water drops building up inside the lenses, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

* Not available on all models

Handling the Unexpected

This chapter explains how to handle unexpected troubles.

Tools	
Types of Tools.....	502
If a Tyre Goes Flat	
Changing a Flat Tyre	503
Engine Does Not Start	
Checking the Engine.....	510
If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak ..	511
Emergency Engine Stop	512
Jump Starting	513
Shift Lever Does Not Move	516
Overheating	
How to Handle Overheating.....	517

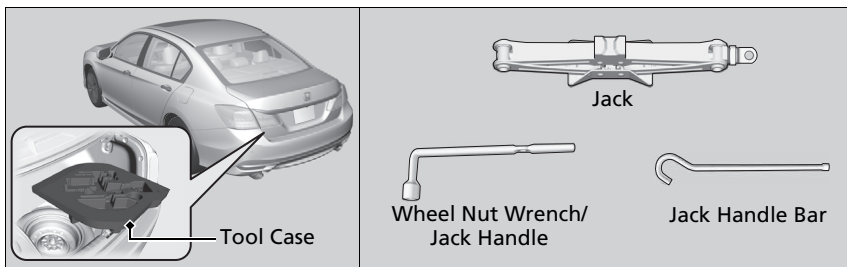
Indicator, Coming On/Blinking	
If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On	519
If the Charging System Indicator Comes On	519
If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks	520
If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On	520
If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) Indicator Comes On	521

If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks* ...	521
Fuses	
Fuse Locations	522
Inspecting and Changing Fuses.....	524
Emergency Towing	525

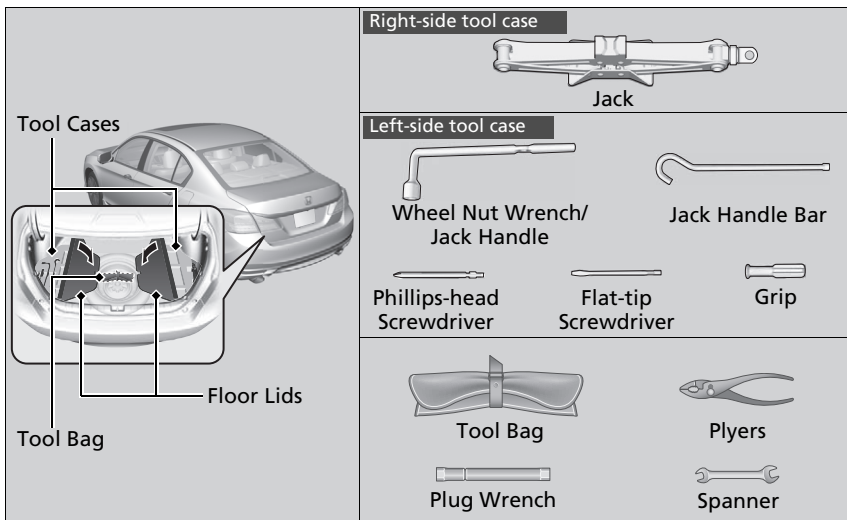
* Not available on all models

Types of Tools

Models with a compact spare tyre



Models with a full-size spare tyre



Types of Tools

The tools are stored in the boot.

Changing a Flat Tyre

If a tyre goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly, and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then, stop in a safe place. Replace the flat tyre with a compact spare tyre*/ full-size spare tyre*. Go to a dealer as soon as possible to have the full-size tyre repaired or replaced.

1. Park the vehicle on firm, level, and non-slippery surface and apply the parking brake.
2. Move the shift lever to **P**.
3. Turn on the hazard warning lights and turn the ignition switch to LOCK **0***1.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Changing a Flat Tyre

Follow compact/full-size spare* precautions:

Full-size spare tyre

Check the air pressure of the full-size spare tyre every time you check the other full-size tyres. It should be inflated to the recommended air pressure on the label attached to the driver's doorjamb.

Compact spare tyre

Periodically check the tyre pressure of the compact spare. It should be set to the specified pressure. Specified Pressure: 420 kPa (4.2 kgf/cm², 60 psi)

When driving with the compact spare tyre, keep the vehicle speed under 80 km/h. Replace with a full-size tyre as soon as possible.

The compact spare tyre and wheel in your vehicle are specifically for this model. Do not use them with another vehicle. Do not use another type of compact spare tyre or wheel with your vehicle.

Do not mount tyre chains on a compact spare tyre. If a chain-mounted front tyre goes flat, remove one of the full-size rear tyres and replace it with the compact spare tyre. Remove the flat front tyre and replace it with the full-size tyre that was removed from the rear. Mount the tyre chains on the front tyre.

A compact spare tyre gives a harsher ride and less traction on some road surfaces. Use greater caution while driving.

Do not use more than one compact spare tyre at the same time.

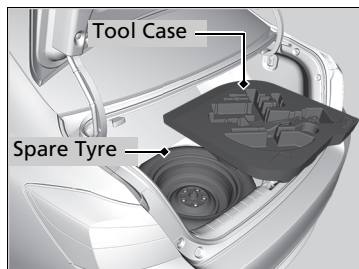
The compact spare tyre is smaller than the full-size tyre. Your vehicle's ground clearance reduces when the compact spare tyre is installed. Driving over road debris or bumps could possibly damage the underside of your vehicle.

Continued

■ Getting Ready to Replace the Flat Tyre

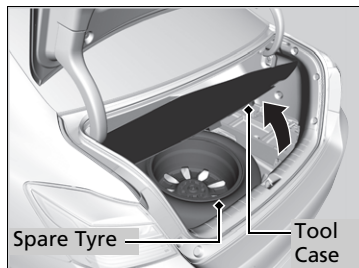


1. Open the boot floor lid.



Models with a compact spare tyre

2. Take the tool case out of the boot.
3. Take the jack and wheel nut wrench out of the tool case.
4. Unscrew the wing bolt, and remove the spacer cone. Then, remove the spare tyre.



Models with a full-size spare tyre

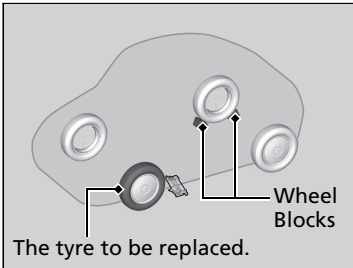
2. Take the jack and wheel nut wrench out of the tool case.
3. Unscrew the wing bolt, and remove the spacer cone. Then, remove the spare tyre.

► Changing a Flat Tyre

WARNING: The jack can only be used for helping an emergency vehicle breakdown, not for changing the regular seasonal tyre or any other normal maintenance or repair operation.

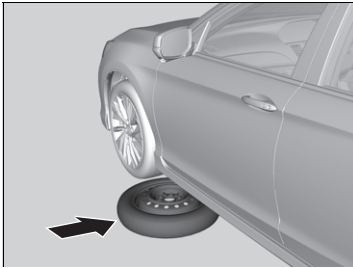
NOTICE

Do not use the jack if it doesn't work properly. Call your dealer or a professional towing service.



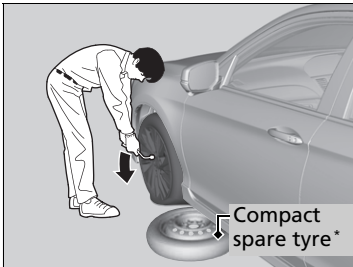
All models

5. Place a wheel block or rock in front and rear of the wheel diagonal to the flat tyre.



Models with a compact spare tyre

6. Place the spare tyre (wheel side up) under the vehicle body, near the tyre that needs to be replaced.

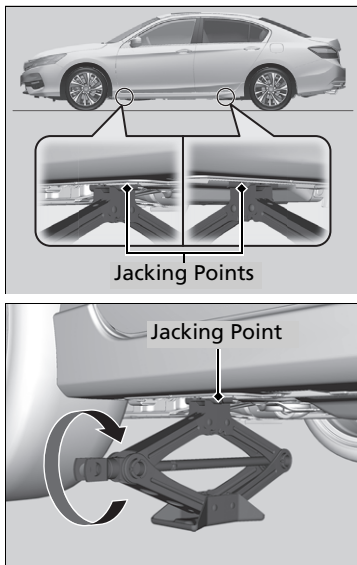


All models

7. Loosen each wheel nut about one turn using the wheel nut wrench.

* Not available on all models

How to Set Up the Jack



1. Place the jack under the jacking point closest to the tyre to be changed.

2. Turn the end bracket clockwise as shown in the image until the top of the jack contacts the jacking point.

► Make sure that the jacking point tab is resting in the jack notch.

How to Set Up the Jack

⚠ WARNING

The vehicle can easily roll off the jack, seriously injuring anyone underneath.

Follow the directions for changing a tyre exactly, and no person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

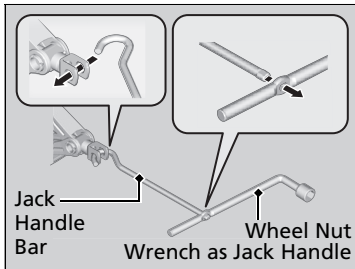
WARNING: The jack shall be placed on a flat and stable surface on the same level as the vehicle is parked.

For some countries

The jack that came with your vehicle has the following label.

1.	2.	3.

1. See Owner's Manual.
2. Never get under vehicle when supported by jack.
3. Place jack underneath reinforced area.



3. Raise the vehicle, using the jack handle bar and the jack handle, until the tyre is off the ground.

How to Set Up the Jack

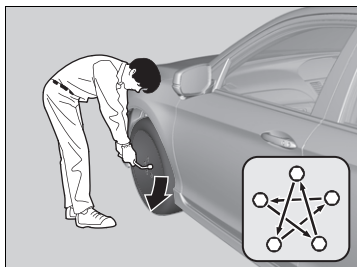
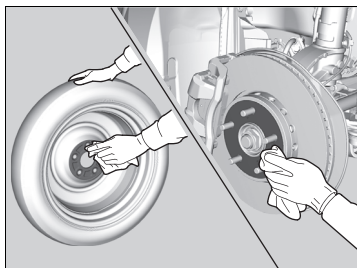
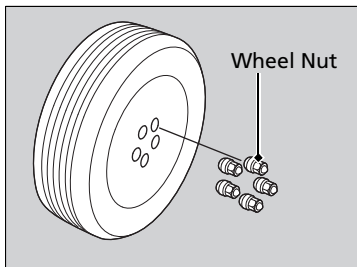
Do not use the jack with people or luggage in the vehicle.

Use the jack provided in your vehicle. Other jacks may not support the weight ("load") or may not fit the jacking point.

The following instructions must be followed to use the jack safely:

- Do not use while the engine is running.
- Use only where the ground is firm and level.
- Use only at the jacking points.
- Do not get in the vehicle while using the jack.
- Do not put anything on top of or underneath the jack.

■ Replacing the Flat Tyre



1. Remove the wheel nuts and flat tyre.

2. Wipe the mounting surfaces of the wheel with a clean cloth.

3. Mount the spare tyre.

4. Screw the wheel nuts until they touch the lips around the mounting holes, then stop rotating.

5. Lower the vehicle and remove the jack. Tighten the wheel nuts in the order indicated in the image. Go around, tightening the nuts, two to three times in this order.

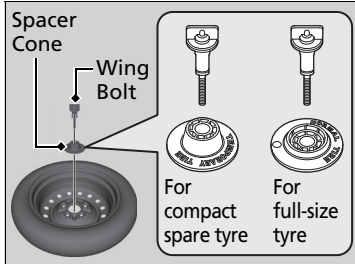
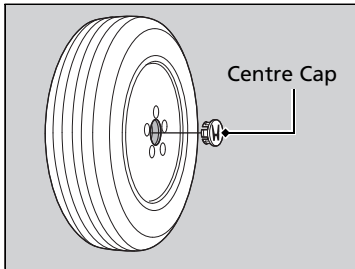
Wheel nut torque:

108 N·m (11 kgf·m, 80 lbf·ft)

►► Replacing the Flat Tyre

Do not over tighten the wheel nuts by applying extra torque using your foot or a pipe.

■ Storing the Flat Tyre



1. Remove the centre cap.

2. Place the flat tyre face down in the spare tyre well.

Models with a full-size spare tyre

3. Secure the flat tyre with the wing bolt.

Models with a compact spare tyre

3. Remove the spacer cone from the wing bolt, flip it over, and insert it back on the bolt. Secure the flat tyre with the wing bolt.

All models

4. Securely put the jack and wheel nut wrench back in the tool case.

Models with a compact spare tyre

5. Store the case in the boot.

►► Storing the Flat Tyre

⚠ WARNING

Loose items can fly around the interior in a crash and can seriously injure the occupants.

Store the wheel, jack, and tools securely before driving.

Engine Does Not Start

Checking the Engine

If the engine does not start, check the starter.

⌕Checking the Engine

If you must start the vehicle immediately, use an assisting vehicle to jump start it.

➡ Jump Starting P. 513

Starter condition	Checklist
Starter doesn't turn or turns over slowly. The battery may be dead. Check each of the items on the right and respond accordingly.	<div>Models with multi-information display</div> <div>Check for a message on the multi-information display.</div> <div><ul style="list-style-type: none">• If the To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button message appears<ul style="list-style-type: none">➡ If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak P. 511▶ Make sure the keyless remote is in its operating range.<ul style="list-style-type: none">➡ ENGINE START/STOP Button Operating Range P. 158</div> <div>Check the brightness of the interior lights. Turn on the interior lights and check the brightness.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• If the interior lights are dim or do not come on at all ➡ Battery P. 490• If the interior lights come on normally ➡ Fuses P. 522</div> <div>Review the engine start procedure. Follow its instructions, and try to start the engine again.<ul style="list-style-type: none">➡ Starting the Engine P. 374, 376</div> <div>Check the immobilizer system indicator. When the immobilizer system indicator is blinking, the engine cannot be started.<ul style="list-style-type: none">➡ Immobilizer System P. 150</div> <div>Check the fuel level. There should be enough fuel in the tank.<ul style="list-style-type: none">➡ Fuel Gauge P. 110</div> <div>Check the fuse. Check all fuses, or have your vehicle checked by a dealer.<ul style="list-style-type: none">➡ Inspecting and Changing Fuses P. 524</div> <div>If the problem continues:<ul style="list-style-type: none">➡ Emergency Towing P. 525</div>
The starter turns over normally but the engine doesn't start. There may be a problem with the fuse. Check each of the items on the right and respond accordingly.	

Models with keyless access system

If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak

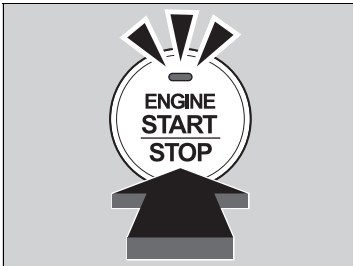
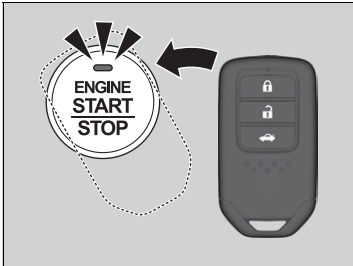
If the beeper sounds, the indicator on the **ENGINE START/STOP** button flashes, and the engine won't start.

Models with multi-information display

The **To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button** message appears on the multi-information display.

All models

Start the engine as follows.



1. Touch the centre of the **ENGINE START/STOP** button with the **H** logo on the keyless remote while the indicator on the **ENGINE START/STOP** button is flashing. The buttons on the keyless remote should be facing you.
 ► The indicator flashes for about 30 seconds.
2. Depress the brake pedal and press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button within 10 seconds after the beeper sounds and the indicator stays on.
 ► If you do not depress the pedal, the mode will change to ACCESSORY.

Models with keyless access system

Emergency Engine Stop

The **ENGINE START/STOP** button may be used to stop the engine due to an emergency situation even while driving. If you must stop the engine, do either of the following operations:

- Press and hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button for about two seconds.
- Firmly press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button twice.

The steering wheel will not lock.

The power mode is in ACCESSORY when the engine is stopped.

To change the mode to VEHICLE OFF, move the shift lever to **P** after the vehicle comes to a complete stop. Then press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button twice without depressing the brake pedal.

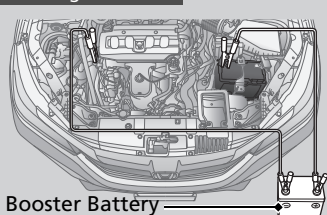
Emergency Engine Stop

Do not press the button while driving unless it is absolutely necessary for the engine to be switched off.

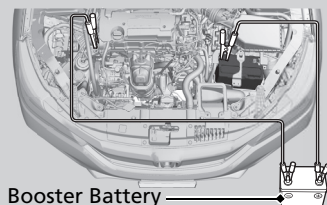
Jump Starting Procedure

Turn off the power to electric devices, such as audio and lights. Turn off the engine, then open the bonnet.

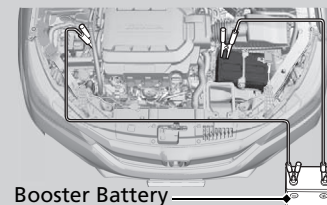
2.0 l engine models



2.4 l engine models



6-cylinder models



1. Connect the first jumper cable to your vehicle's battery \oplus terminal.
2. Connect the other end of the first jumper cable to the booster battery \oplus terminal.
 - Use a 12-volt booster battery only.
 - When using an automotive battery charger to boost your 12-volt battery, select a lower charging voltage than 15-volt. Check the charger manual for the proper setting.
3. Connect the second jumper cable to the booster battery \ominus terminal.

Jump Starting

⚠ WARNING

A battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.

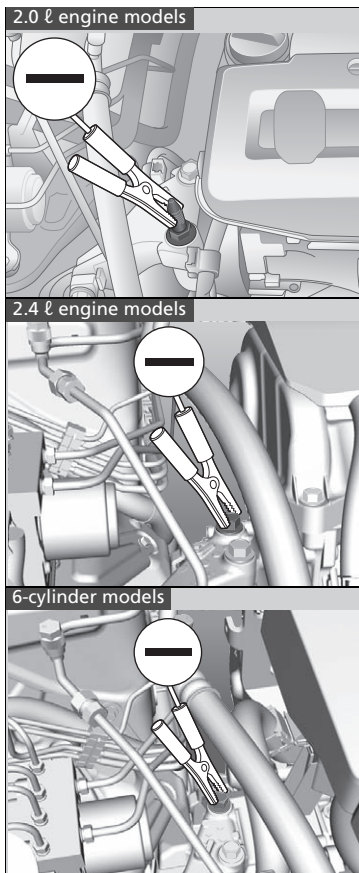
Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

NOTICE

If a battery sits in extreme cold, the electrolyte inside can freeze. Attempting to jump start with a frozen battery can cause it to rupture.

Securely attach the jumper cables clips so that they do not come off when the engine vibrates. Also be careful not to tangle the jumper cables or allow the cable ends to touch each other while attaching or detaching the jumper cables.

Continued



4. Connect the other end of the second jumper cable to the engine mounting bolt as shown. Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part.
5. If your vehicle is connected to another vehicle, start the assisting vehicle's engine and increase its rpm slightly.
6. Attempt to start your vehicle's engine. If it turns over slowly, check that the jumper cables have good metal-to-metal contact.

►► Jump Starting

Battery performance degrades in cold conditions and may prevent the engine from starting.

■ What to Do After the Engine Starts

Once your vehicle's engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the following order.

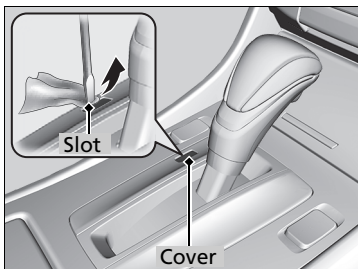
1. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's ground.
2. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery \ominus terminal.
3. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's battery \oplus terminal.
4. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery \oplus terminal.

Have your vehicle inspected by a nearby service station or a dealer.

Shift Lever Does Not Move

Follow the procedure below if you cannot move the shift lever out of the **P** position.

Releasing the Lock



1. Set the parking brake.

Models without keyless access system

2. Remove the key from the ignition switch.

Models with keyless access system

2. Remove the built-in key from the keyless remote.

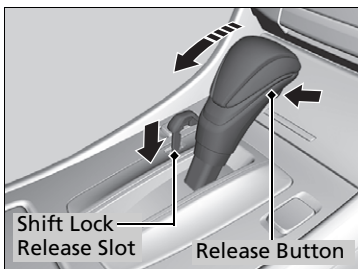
Except Thai and Indonesian models

3. Wrap a cloth around the tip of a small flat-tip screwdriver. Put it into the shift lock release slot as shown in the image, and remove the cover.

All models

4. Insert the key into the shift lock release slot.
5. While pushing the key down, press the shift lever release button and place the shift lever into **N**.

► The lock is now released. Have the shift lever checked by a dealer as soon as possible.



How to Handle Overheating

Overheating symptoms are as follows:

- The temperature gauge needle is at the **H** mark or the engine suddenly loses power.
- Steam or spray comes out of the engine compartment.

■ First thing to do

1. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.
2. Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.
 - ▶ **No steam or spray present:** Keep the engine running and open the bonnet.
 - ▶ **Steam or spray is present:** Turn off the engine and wait until it subsides. Then open the bonnet.

How to Handle Overheating

WARNING

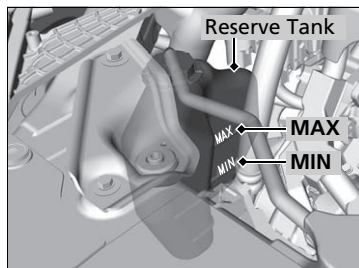
Steam and spray from an overheated engine can seriously scald you.

Do not open the bonnet if steam is coming out.

NOTICE

Continuing to drive with the temperature gauge needle at the **H** mark may damage the engine.

■ Next thing to do



1. Check that the cooling fan is operating and stop the engine once the temperature gauge needle comes down.
 - If the cooling fan is not operating, immediately stop the engine.
2. Once the engine has cooled down, inspect the coolant level and check the cooling system components for leaks.
 - If the coolant level in the reserve tank is low, add coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
 - If there is no coolant in the reserve tank, check that the radiator is cool. Cover the radiator cap with a heavy cloth and open the cap. If necessary, add coolant up to the base of the filler neck, and put the cap back on.

■ Last thing to do

Once the engine has cooled sufficiently, restart it and check the temperature gauge. If the temperature gauge needle has gone down, resume driving. If it has not gone down, contact a dealer for repairs.

►► How to Handle Overheating

⚠ WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

If the coolant is leaking, contact a dealer for repairs.

Use water as an emergency/temporary measure only. Have a dealer flush the system with proper antifreeze as soon as possible.

If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On



■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

Comes on when the engine oil pressure is low.

■ What to do as soon as the indicator comes on

1. Immediately park the vehicle on level ground in a safe place.
2. If necessary, turn the hazard warning lights on.

■ What to do after parking the vehicle

1. Stop the engine and let it sit for about three minutes.
2. Open the bonnet and check the oil level.
 - 🔧 **Oil Check** P. 463
3. Start the engine and check the low oil pressure indicator.
 - ▶ The indicator goes off: Start driving again.
 - ▶ The indicator does not go off within 10 seconds: Stop the engine and contact a dealer for repairs immediately.

If the Charging System Indicator Comes On



■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

Comes on when the battery is not being charged.

■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Turn off the heating and cooling system*/climate control system*, rear demister, and other electrical systems, and immediately contact a dealer for repairs.

🔧 If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On

NOTICE

Running the engine with low oil pressure can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately.

🔧 If the Charging System Indicator Comes On

If you need to stop temporarily, do not turn off the engine. Restarting the engine may rapidly discharge the battery.

* Not available on all models

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks



■ Reasons for the indicator lamp to come on or blink

- Comes on when there is a problem with the engine emissions control system.
- Blinks when engine misfiring is detected.

■ What to do when the indicator lamp comes on

Avoid high speeds and immediately get your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

■ What to do when the indicator lamp blinks

Park the vehicle in a safe place with no flammable items and wait at least ten minutes or more with the engine stopped until it cools.

►► If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks

NOTICE

If you drive with the malfunction indicator lamp on, the emissions control system and the engine could be damaged.

If the malfunction indicator lamp blinks again when restarting the engine, drive to the nearest dealer at 50 km/h or less. Have your vehicle inspected.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On



■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

- The brake fluid is low.
- There is a malfunction in the brake system.

■ What to do when the indicator comes on while driving

Press the brake pedal lightly to check pedal pressure.

- If normal, check the brake fluid level the next time you stop.
- If abnormal, take immediate action. If necessary, downshift the transmission to slow the vehicle using engine braking.

►► If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On

Have your vehicle repaired immediately. It is dangerous to drive with low brake fluid. If there is no resistance from the brake pedal, stop immediately in a safe place. If necessary, downshift the gears.

If the brake system indicator and **ABS** indicator come on simultaneously, the electronic brake distribution system is not working. This can result in vehicle instability under sudden braking. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer immediately.

If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) Indicator Comes On



■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

- Comes on when there is a problem with the EPS system.
- If you depress the accelerator pedal repeatedly to increase the engine speed while the engine is idling, the indicator comes on, and sometimes the steering wheel becomes harder to operate.

■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Stop the vehicle in a safe place and restart the engine.

If the indicator comes on and stays on, immediately have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks *



■ Reasons for the indicator to come on/blink

A tyre pressure of any of the tyres may be low, or the deflation warning system has not been initialised. If there is a problem with the deflation warning system, the indicator blinks for about one minute, and then stays on.

■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Drive carefully and avoid abrupt cornering and hard braking. Stop the vehicle in a safe place. Check the tyre pressure and adjust the pressure to the specified level. The specified tyre pressure is on a label on the driver side doorjamb. If you find a flat tyre, replace with the full-size spare tyre.

📖 If a Tyre Goes Flat P. 503

Initialise the deflation warning system after the tyre pressure is adjusted or the flat tyre is replaced with the full-size spare tyre.

■ What to do when the indicator blinks

Have the system inspected by a dealer as soon as possible.

⚠ If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks *

Driving on an extremely underinflated tyre can cause it to overheat. An overheated tyre can fail. Always inflate your tyres to the prescribed level.

* Not available on all models

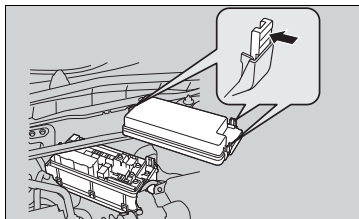
Fuse Locations

If any electrical devices are not working, turn the ignition switch to LOCK **0***¹ and check to see if any applicable fuse is blown.

Engine Compartment Fuse Box

Located near the battery. Push the tabs to open the box.

Fuse locations are shown on the fuse box cover. Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and box cover number.



Circuit protected and fuse rating

	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	Main Fuse	100 A* ² 125 A* ³ , * ⁴
	EPS	70 A
	Fuse Box Main 1	(60 A)
	Fuse Box Option 1	(40 A)
2	—	—
	—	—
	ABS/VSA FSR	40 A* ⁷ 20 A* ⁸
	ABS/VSA Motor	30 A* ⁷ 40 A* ⁸

	Circuit Protected	Amps
3	—	(30 A)
	—	(30 A)
	—	(30 A)
	—	(30 A)
4	Front Fog Lights*	(10 A)
5	Horn	10 A
6	Stop	10 A
7	FI Sub	15 A
8	DRL	(7.5 A)
9	IG Coil	15 A
10	Injector* ³	(20 A)
11	Hazard	15 A
	Fuse Box Main 2	60 A
	Fuse Box Option 2	(40 A)
	IG Main 1	30 A* ⁶ 50 A* ⁵
	IG Main 2* ⁶	30 A
12	Sub Fan Motor	20 A* ² , * ³ 30 A* ⁴
	Headlight Low Beam Main	30 A
	Headlight High Beam Main	30 A
	Wiper Motor	30 A
	Main Fan Motor	30 A
	Starter MG* ⁶	30 A
13	Rear Demister	40 A
14	Heater Motor	40 A

	Circuit Protected	Amps
15	FI Main	15 A
16	Headlight Washer*	(30 A)
17	MG Clutch	7.5 A
18	DBW	15 A
19	Small Light	20 A
20	Interior Light	7.5 A
21	Back Up	10 A
22	Audio	10 A
23	Fan Timer	7.5 A
24	Right Headlight Low Beam	10 A
25	Left Headlight Low Beam	10 A
26	ABS/VSA ECU* ⁸	7.5 A

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

*2: 2.0 l engine models

*3: 2.4 l engine models

*4: 6-cylinder models

*5: Models without keyless access system

*6: Models with keyless access system

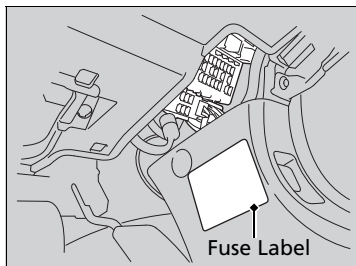
*7: Models without Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

*8: Models with Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

Interior Fuse Box

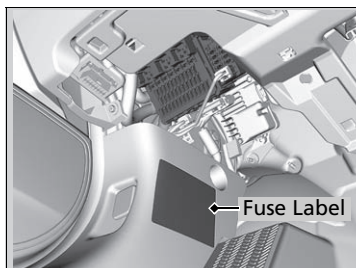
Right-hand drive type

Located near the lower side panel.



Left-hand drive type

Located under the dashboard.



Fuse locations are shown on the label on the side panel.

Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and label number.

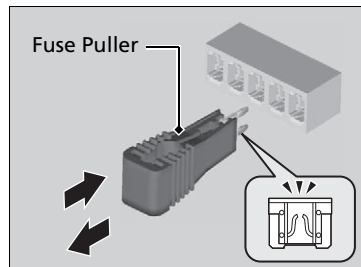
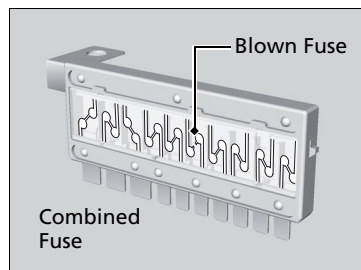
Circuit protected and fuse rating

		Circuit Protected	Amps
1		A/C	7.5 A
2		DRL	(7.5 A)
3	—	—	—
4	—	—	—
5		Meter	7.5 A
6		SRS*	7.5 A
7		Option*	(7.5 A)
8		MISS SOL	10 A
9		Fuel Pump	20 A
10		ABS/VA	7.5 A
11	—	—	—
12		Front Wiper	7.5 A
13		ACG	15 A
14		Accessory Power Socket (Console Compartment)	20 A
15		Driver's Power Seat Reclining*	(20 A)
16		Sunroof*	(20 A)
17		Front Seat Heaters*	(20 A)
18		Rear Fog Light*	(7.5 A)
19		Right Side Door Unlock	10 A
20		Left Side Door Unlock	10 A
21		Driver's Door Lock*	(10 A)
22		Right Side Door Lock	10 A
23		Driver's Door Unlock*	(10 A)
24		SRS	10 A
25		Illumination	10 A

		Circuit Protected	Amps
26		Key Lock	7.5 A
27		Small Lights	10 A
28		Lumbar Support*	(10 A)
29		Right Headlight High Beam	10 A
30		Washer	15 A
31		KEYLESS REMOTE*	(10 A)
32		Driver's Power Window	20 A
33		Front Passenger's Power Window	20 A
34		Rear Left Side Power Window	(20 A)
35		Rear Right Side Power Window	(20 A)
36		Driver's Power Seat Sliding*	(20 A)
37		ACCESSORY	7.5 A
38	—	—	—
39		Left Headlight High Beam	10 A
40		Cigarette Lighter	20 A
41		Left Side Door Lock	10 A
42		Door Lock	20 A
a		Audio*	(7.5 A)
b		ACM*	(20 A)
c		Rear Seat Heaters*	(15 A)
d		Premium Amp*	(20 A)
e	—	—	—
f		ACL*	(15 A)
g		Passenger's Power Seat Reclining*	(20 A)
h		Passenger's Power Seat Sliding*	(20 A)

* Not available on all models

Inspecting and Changing Fuses



1. Turn the ignition switch to LOCK **0***1. Turn headlights and all accessories off.
2. Remove the fuse box cover.
3. Check the large fuse in the engine compartment.
 - If the fuse is blown, use a Phillips-head screwdriver to remove the screw and replace it with a new one.
4. Inspect the small fuses in the engine compartment and the vehicle interior.
 - If there is a burned out fuse, remove it with the fuse puller and replace it with a new one.

Inspecting and Changing Fuses

NOTICE

Replacing a fuse with one that has a higher rating greatly increases the chances of damaging the electrical system.

Replace fuse with a spare fuse of the same specified amperage.

Confirm the specified amperage on the fuse label.

► **Fuse Locations** P. 522

There is a fuse puller on the back of the engine compartment fuse box cover.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.

■ Flat bed equipment

The operator loads your vehicle on the back of a truck.

This is the best way to transport your vehicle.

■ Wheel lift equipment

The tow truck uses two pivoting arms that go under the front tyres and lift them off the ground. The rear tyres remain on the ground. **This is an acceptable way to tow your vehicle.**

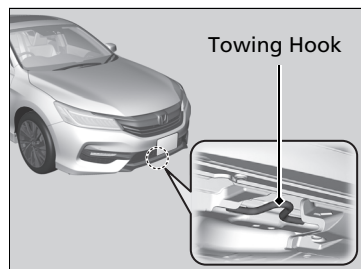
»Emergency Towing

NOTICE

Trying to lift or tow your vehicle by the bumpers will cause serious damage. The bumpers are not designed to support the vehicle's weight.

Never tow your vehicle with just a rope or chain. It is very dangerous since ropes or chains may shift from side to side or break.

■ If your vehicle must be towed with the front wheels on the ground:



1. Check the ground underneath the vehicle around where the transmission housing is for a fluid leak.
► If you find a leak, call a professional towing service and have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.
2. Hook the towing device to the towing hook.

3. Start the engine.

- If it is difficult to turn on the engine, put the ignition switch in ACCESSORY **I***1 or ON **II***1.

4. Depress the brake pedal.

5. Shift to **D** and hold for five seconds, then to **N**.

6. Release the parking brake.

▣ If your vehicle must be towed with the front wheels on the ground:

Towing a vehicle is prohibited by law in some countries.
Check and follow the legal requirements of the country you are driving before towing your vehicle.

If you cannot follow the exact procedure, do not tow your vehicle with the front wheels on the ground.

If you cannot turn on the engine, you may experience the following while your vehicle is being towed.

- Braking may become difficult since the brake system's power assist is disabled.
- Steering wheel becomes heavy as the power steering system is disabled.

With the front wheels on the ground, it is best to tow the vehicle no farther than 80 km, and keep the speed below 55 km/h.

Going down a long slope heats up the brakes. This may prevent the brakes from working properly. If your vehicle needs to be towed on an incline, call a professional towing service.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



Information

This chapter includes your vehicle's specifications, locations of identification numbers, and other information required by regulation.

Specifications	528
Identification Numbers	
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number	535
Devices that Emit Radio Waves*	536

2.0 ℓ engine models

Vehicle Specifications

Model	Honda Accord Sedan
Curb Weight	1,480 kg ^{*1} 1,488 kg ^{*2} 1,485-1,500 kg ^{*3} 1,520-1,535 kg ^{*4} 1,525-1,530 kg ^{*5} 1,530 kg ^{*6} 1,510-1,530 kg ^{*7}
Maximum permissible weight	1,905 kg ^{*1} 1,940 kg ^{*2, *3, *5} 1,950 kg ^{*4, *7} 1,980 kg ^{*6}

*1: African left-hand drive models except Nigerian

*2: Nigerian models

*3: Nepalese, Bangladeshi, Sri Lankan, and Latin American models

*4: Thai models

*5: Singaporean, Bruneian, and Fijian models

*6: African right-hand drive models

*7: Malaysian models

Engine Specifications

Type	Water cooled 4-stroke SOHC i-VTEC in line, 4-cylinder petrol engine
Bore x Stroke	81 x 96.9 mm
Displacement	1,997 cm ³
Compression ratio	10.6: 1
Spark Plugs	NGK SILZKR7C11S SILZKR7C11DS ^{*1}

*1: Thai models

Fuel

Fuel:	Unleaded petrol, Research octane number of 91 or higher
Type	Unleaded petrol/gasohol up to E85 (15% petrol and 85% ethanol), Research octane number of 91 or higher ^{*1}

Fuel Tank Capacity 65 ℓ

*1: Thai models

Battery

Capacity/Type	36AH(5)/47AH(20)
---------------	------------------

Washer Fluid

Tank Capacity	4.5 ℓ
---------------	-------

Light Bulbs

Headlights (Low Beam)	55W (H11)* LED*
Headlights (High Beam)	60W (HB3)* LED*
Position/Daytime Running Lights	LED
Front Turn Signal Lights	21W (Amber)* LED*
Front Fog Lights*	LED
Side Turn Signal Lights (on Door Mirrors)	LED
Brake Lights	LED
Taillights	LED
Rear Turn Signal Lights	21W (Amber)
Back-Up Lights	16W
Rear Fog Light*	LED
Rear Licence Plate Lights	5W
High-Mount Brake Light	LED
Interior Lights	
Map lights	8W
Rear Map Lights* ¹	5W
Rear Map Lights* ²	8W
Ceiling Light*	8W
Vanity Mirror Lights*	2W
Door Courtesy Lights	2CP
Boot Light	5W
Glove Box Light	3.4W
Foot Light*	LED

*1: Models without sunroof

*2: Models with sunroof

■ Brake Fluid

Specified	Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4
-----------	---------------------------------

■ Automatic Transmission Fluid

Specified	Honda ATF DW-1 (automatic transmission fluid)
Capacity	Change 2.5 ℓ

■ Engine Oil

Recommended	African models (South African not included)	
	Genuine Honda Motor Oil API service SM or higher grade 0W-20, 0W-30, 0W-40, 5W-30, 5W-40, 10W-30, 10W-40	
	Other models	
	Genuine Honda Motor Oil API service SM or higher grade 0W-20, 0W-30, 5W-30, 10W-30	
Capacity	Change	3.5 ℓ
	Change including filter	3.7 ℓ

■ Engine Coolant

Specified	Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type2
Ratio	50/50 with distilled water 6.1 ℓ
Capacity	(change including the remaining 0.64 ℓ in the reserve tank)

■ Tyre

Regular	Size	215/60R16 95H
		225/50R17 94V
		235/45R18 98W
Full-size Spare	Size	215/60R16 95H
		225/50R17 94V
		235/45R18 98W
Compact Spare*1	Size Pressure kPa (kgf/cm ² [psi])	T135/90D16 102M
		420 (4.2 [60])
		16 x 6 1/2J
Wheel Size	Regular	17 x 7 1/2J
		18 x 8J
		16 x 6 1/2J
	Full-size Spare	17 x 7 1/2J
		18 x 8J
	Compact Spare*1	16 x 4T

For the tyre size and pressure information, see the label on driver's doorjamb.

Spare Tyre Pressure: Same as the regular tyre. See the label on driver's doorjamb.

*1: Vehicle with compact spare tyre

■ Brake

Type	Power assisted
Front	Ventilated disc
Rear	Solid disc*1
	Drum in disc*2
Parking	Mechanical

*1: Left-hand drive models

*2: Right-hand drive models

■ Air Conditioning

Refrigerant Type	HFC-134a (R-134a)
Charge Quantity	425 - 475 g

■ Vehicle Dimensions

Length		4,870.6 mm*6
		4,890 mm*7
		4,928 mm*1, *2, *3
		4,930 mm*4, *5
		4,935 mm*8, *10
Width		1,850 mm
Height		1,465 mm*3, *4, *5, *7, *8, *10
		1,465.4 mm*1, *2, *6
		1,475.4 mm*9
Wheelbase		2,775 mm
Track	Front	1,582 mm*2
		1,584 mm*3, *4, *5, *6
		1,585 mm*7, *8, *10
		1,592 mm*1
		1,579 mm*2
	Rear	1,583 mm*3, *4
		1,585 mm*7, *10
		1,586 mm*5, *6
		1,589 mm*1
		1,595 mm*8

*1: African left-hand drive models except Nigerian

*2: Nigerian models

*3: Nepalese, Bangladeshi, Sri Lankan, and Latin American models

*4: Thai 2.0E model

*5: Thai 2.0EL model

*6: Bruneian and Fijian models

*7: Singaporean models

*8: African right-hand drive models

*9: African left-hand drive models with high clearance option

*10: Malaysian models

■ Max. Towing Weight*1

Trailer with brakes	1,500 kg
Trailer without brakes	500 kg
The maximum permissible vertical load on the coupling device	60 kg

*1: African right-hand drive models

2.4 ℓ engine models

Vehicle Specifications

Model	Honda Accord Sedan
Curb Weight	1,520-1,565 kg ^{*1}
	1,525-1,560 kg ^{*2}
	1,526-1,575 kg ^{*3}
	1,540 kg ^{*4}
	1,542 kg ^{*5}
	1,550 kg ^{*6, *7}
	1,560 kg ^{*8}
	1,563 kg ^{*9}
	1,565 kg ^{*10}
	1,575 kg ^{*11, *12}
Maximum permissible weight	1,580 kg ^{*13}
	1,565-1,570 kg ^{*14}
	1,925 kg ^{*6}
	1,940 kg ^{*5}
	1,960 kg ^{*4, *7}
	1,970 kg ^{*1, *9}
Maximum Permissible Front Axle Weight ^{*3}	1,980 kg ^{*2, *8, *10, *11, *12, *14}
	2,038 kg ^{*3, *13}
Maximum Permissible Front Axle Weight ^{*3}	Front 1,055 kg
	Rear 1,005 kg

*1: Indonesian models

*2: Pakistani VTiH and VTiLH models

*3: Australian and New Zealand models

*4: African left-hand drive models except Nigerian

*5: Cambodian, Laotian, Philippine models

*6: Vietnamese models

*7: Nigerian models

*8: Thai models

*9: Indian models

*10: Bruneian, Fijian, and Pakistani VTiLF models

*11: Bruneian VTiLFN model

*12: Singaporean model

*13: African right-hand drive models

*14: Malaysian models

Engine Specifications

Type	Water cooled 4-stroke DOHC i-VTEC in line, 4-cylinder petrol engine	
Bore x Stroke	87 x 99.1 mm	
Displacement	2,356 cm ³	
Compression ratio	10.1: 1	
Spark Plugs	NGK	ILKAR7K11S
		DILKAR7G11DS ^{*1}
	DENSO	SXE22HQR11S
		DXE22HQR-D11S ^{*1}

*1: Thai models

Fuel

Fuel:	Unleaded petrol, Research octane number of 91 or higher
Type	Unleaded petrol/gasohol up to E85 (15% petrol and 85% ethanol), Research octane number of 91 or higher ^{*1}
Fuel Tank Capacity	65 ℓ

*1: Thai models

Battery

Capacity/Type	36AH(5)/47AH(20)
---------------	------------------

Washer Fluid

Tank Capacity	4.5 ℓ
---------------	-------

Light Bulbs

Headlights (Low Beam)	55W (H11)* LED*
Headlights (High Beam)	60W (HB3)* LED*
Front Fog Lights*	LED
Position/Daytime Running Lights	LED
Front Turn Signal Lights	21W (Amber)* LED*
Active Cornering Lights*	LED
Side Turn Signal Lights (on Door Mirrors)	LED
Brake Lights	LED
Taillights	LED
Rear Turn Signal Lights	21W (Amber)
Back-Up Lights	16W
Rear Fog Light*	LED
Rear Licence Plate Lights	5W
High-Mount Brake Light	LED
Interior Lights	
Map lights	8W
Rear Map Lights* ¹	5W
Rear Map Lights* ²	8W
Ceiling Light*	8W
Vanity Mirror Lights*	2W
Door Courtesy Lights	2CP
Boot Light	5W
Glove Box Light	3.4W
Foot Light*	LED

*1: Models without sunroof

*2: Models with sunroof

■ Brake Fluid

Specified	Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4
-----------	---------------------------------

■ Automatic Transmission Fluid

Specified	Honda ATF DW-1 (automatic transmission fluid)
Capacity	Change 2.5 ℓ

■ Engine Oil

Recommended	African models (South African not included)	
	Genuine Honda Motor Oil API service SM or higher grade 0W-20, 0W-30, 0W-40, 5W-30, 5W-40, 10W-30, 10W-40	
Capacity	Other models	
	Genuine Honda Motor Oil API service SM or higher grade 0W-20, 0W-30, 5W-30, 10W-30 Change 4.0 ℓ	
	Change including filter	4.2 ℓ

■ Engine Coolant

Specified	Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type2
Ratio	50/50 with distilled water
Capacity	6.4 ℓ (change including the remaining 0.64 ℓ in the reserve tank)

■ Tyre

Regular	Size	215/60R16 95H
		225/50R17 94V 235/45R18 98W
Full-size Spare	Size	215/60R16 95H
		225/50R17 94V 235/45R18 98W
Compact Spare*1	Size Pressure kPa (kgf/cm ² [psi])	T135/90D16 102M
		420 (4.2 [60])
Wheel Size	Regular	16 x 6 1/2J
		17 x 7 1/2J
		18 x 8J
	Full-size Spare	16 x 6 1/2J
		17 x 7 1/2J
		18 x 8J
	Compact Spare*1	16 x 4T

For the tyre size and pressure information, see the label on driver's doorjamb.

Spare Tyre Pressure: Same as the regular tyre. See the label on driver's doorjamb.

*1: Vehicle with compact spare tyre

Indian model only

The tyres fitted in the vehicles meet the requirement of the BIS and they comply with the requirements under the central motor vehicles rules (CMVR), 1989.

■ Brake

Type	Power assisted
Front	Ventilated disc
Rear	Solid disc ^{*1} Drum in disc ^{*2}
Parking	Mechanical

*1: Left-hand drive models

*2: Right-hand drive models

■ Air Conditioning

Refrigerant Type	HFC-134a (R-134a)
Charge Quantity	425 - 475 g

■ Vehicle Dimensions

Length	4,870.6 mm ^{*11, *12}
	4,890 mm ^{*2, *3, *6, *13}
	4,928 mm ^{*5, *8}
	4,930 mm ^{*1, *4, *9}
	4,933 mm ^{*10}
Width	4,935 mm ^{*7, *14, *17}
	1,849 mm ^{*10}
Height	1,850 mm ^{*15}
	1,465 mm ^{*1, *2, *3, *4, *6, *7, *9, *13, *14, *17}
	1,465.4 mm ^{*5, *8, *11, *12}
	1,475 mm ^{*10}
	1,475.4 mm ^{*16}
Wheelbase	2,775 mm
Track	1,582 mm ^{*5, *8, *10}
	1,584 mm ^{*9, *11, *12}
	1,585 mm ^{*1, *3, *4, *6, *7, *13, *14, *17}
	1,595 mm ^{*2}
	1,579 mm ^{*5, *8, *10}
	1,585 mm ^{*1, *3, *4, *6, *7, *13, *17}
	1,586 mm ^{*9, *11, *12}
	1,595 mm ^{*2, *14}

*1: Indonesian models

*2: Pakistani VTIH model

*3: Pakistani VTILH model

*4: Australian and New Zealand models

*5: African left-hand drive models except Nigerian

*6: Cambodian, Laotian, Philippine models

*7: Vietnamese models

*8: Nigerian models

*9: Thai models

*10: Indian models

*11: Bruneian, Fijian, and Pakistani VTILF models

*12: Bruneian VTILFN model

*13: Singaporean model

*14: African right-hand drive models

*15: Except Indian models

*16: African left-hand drive models with high clearance option except Nigerian

*17: Malaysian models

■ Max. Towing Weight^{*1}

Trailer with brakes	1,600 kg
Trailer without brakes	500 kg
The maximum permissible vertical load on the coupling device	60 kg

*1: Australian, New Zealand, and African right-hand drive models

6-cylinder models

Vehicle Specifications

Model	Honda Accord Sedan
Curb Weight	1,645 kg ^{*2, *3} 1,653 kg ^{*4} 1,670 kg ^{*1} 1,679 kg ^{*5}
Maximum permissible weight [*]	2,050 kg ^{*4} 2,060 kg ^{*2, *3} 2,130 kg ^{*1, *5}
Maximum Permissible Axle Weight ^{*1}	1,145 kg 1,015 kg

*1: Australian and New Zealand models

*2: Nepalese, Bangladeshi, Sri Lankan, and Latin American models

*3: African left-hand drive models

*4: Cambodian, Laotian, and Philippine models

*5: African right-hand drive models

Engine Specifications

Type	Water cooled 4-stroke SOHC i-VTEC, 6-cylinder petrol engine	
Bore x Stroke	89 x 93 mm	
Displacement	3,471 cm ³	
Compression ratio	10.5: 1	
Spark Plugs	NGK	ILZKR7B11
	DENSO	SXU22HCR11

Fuel

Fuel:	Unleaded petrol, Research octane number
Type	of 91 or higher
Fuel Tank Capacity	65 ℓ

Battery

Capacity/Type	55AH(5)/72AH(20)
---------------	------------------

Washer Fluid

Tank Capacity	4.5 ℓ
---------------	-------

Light Bulbs

Headlights (Low Beam)	55W (H11) [*] LED [*]
Headlights (High Beam)	60W (HB3) [*] LED [*]
Front Fog Lights	LED
Position/Daytime Running Lights	LED
Front Turn Signal Lights	21W (Amber) [*] LED [*]
Active Cornering Lights [*]	LED
Side Turn Signal Lights (on Door Mirrors)	LED
Brake Lights	LED
Taillights	LED
Back-Up Lights	16W
Rear Fog Light [*]	LED
Rear Turn Signal Lights	21W (Amber)
High-Mount Brake Light	LED
Rear Licence Plate Lights	5W
Interior Lights	
Map Lights	8W
Rear Map Lights	8W
Vanity Mirror Lights	2W
Door Courtesy Lights	2CP
Boot Light	5W
Glove Box Light	3.4W
Foot Lights [*]	LED

* Not available on all models

■ Brake Fluid

Specified	Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4
-----------	---------------------------------

■ Automatic Transmission Fluid

Specified	Honda ATF DW-1 (automatic transmission fluid)
Capacity	Change 3.1 ℓ

■ Engine Oil

Recommended	Genuine Honda Motor Oil API service SM or higher grade 0W-30, 5W-30, 10W-30
Capacity	Change 4.0 ℓ Change including filter 4.3 ℓ

■ Engine Coolant

Specified	Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type2
Ratio	50/50 with distilled water
Capacity	6.5 ℓ (change including the remaining 0.64 ℓ in the reserve tank)

■ Tyre

Regular	Size	225/50R17 94V 235/45R18 98W
Full-size Spare	Size	225/50R17 94V 235/45R18 98W
Wheel Size	Regular	17 x 7 1/2J 18 x 8J
	Full-size Spare	17 x 7 1/2J 18 x 8J

For the tyre size and pressure information, see the label on driver's doorjamb.

Spare Tyre Pressure: Same as the regular tyre. See the label on driver's doorjamb.

■ Brake

Type	Power assisted
Front	Ventilated disc
Rear	Solid disc ^{*1} Drum in disc ^{*2}
Parking	Mechanical

*1: Left-hand drive models

*2: Right-hand drive models

■ Air Conditioning

Refrigerant Type	HFC-134a (R-134a)
Charge Quantity	425 - 475 g

■ Vehicle Dimensions

Length	4,890 mm ^{*4} 4,928 mm ^{*1, *3} 4,935 mm ^{*2} 4,940 mm ^{*6}
Width	1,850 mm
Height	1,465 mm ^{*1, *2, *4, *6} 1,465.4 mm ^{*3} 1,475.4 mm ^{*5}
Wheelbase	2,775 mm
Track	Front 1,583 mm ^{*3} 1,584 mm ^{*1} 1,585 mm ^{*2, *4, *6} Rear 1,583 mm ^{*1} 1,585 mm ^{*2, *4} 1,586 mm ^{*3} 1,595 mm ^{*6}

*1: Nepalese, Bangladeshi, Sri Lankan, and Latin American models

*2: Australian and New Zealand models

*3: African left-hand drive models

*4: Cambodian, Laotian, and Philippine models

*5: African left-hand drive models with high clearance option

*6: African right-hand drive models

■ Max. Towing Weight^{*1}

Trailer with brakes	1,600 kg
Trailer without brakes	500 kg
The maximum permissible vertical load on the coupling device	60 kg

*1: Australian, New Zealand, and African right-hand drive models

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number

Your vehicle has a 17-digit vehicle identification number (VIN) used to register your vehicle for warranty purposes, and for licensing and insuring your vehicle. The locations of your vehicle's VIN, engine number and transmission number are shown as follows.

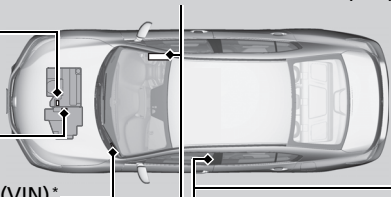
2.0 ℓ engine models

Engine Number

Automatic Transmission Number

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)*

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

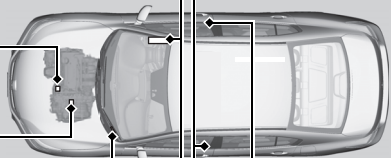


2.4 ℓ engine models

Engine Number

Automatic Transmission Number

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)*

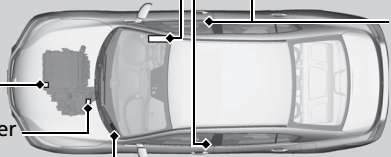


6-cylinder models

Engine Number

Automatic Transmission Number

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)*

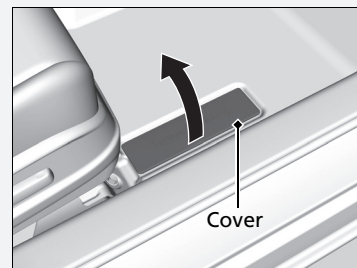


Certification Label/Vehicle Identification Number/Built Date Plate*

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)*

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number

The interior vehicle identification number (VIN) is located under the cover.



Australian and New Zealand models

The built date is the calendar month and the year in which the body shell and power train sub-assemblies are conjoined and the vehicle is driven or moved from the production line.

* Not available on all models

Devices that Emit Radio Waves*

The following products and systems on your vehicle emit radio waves when in operation.

	Remote Transmitter*	Immobilizer System	Keyless Access System*
Nigerian models	Connection and use of this communications equipment is permitted by the Nigerian Communications Commission	Connection and use of this communications equipment is permitted by the Nigerian Communications Commission	Connection and use of this communications equipment is permitted by the Nigerian Communications Commission

Vietnamese models

—

—







HONDAVN
A00092011

South African models

—

—



	Hands-Free Telephone System*	Adaptive Cruise Control*/ Collision Mitigation Braking System*
Singapore models	Complies with IDA Standards [DA01740A]	—
Thai models	This telecommunications equipment conforms to NTC technical requirements.	—
South African models	 TA-2015/933 APPROVED	
	 TA-2015/934 APPROVED	 TA-2012/678 APPROVED
	 TA-2015/935 APPROVED	
Vietnamese models	NAME:AZ GTS JSC CODE: A00012015	—

* Not available on all models

A

- ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)..... 428
- Accessories and Modifications 448
- Accessory Power Socket 199
- Active Cornering Lights..... 173
- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)..... 396
- Adding
 - Coolant 466
 - Engine Oil..... 465
 - Washer..... 470
- Additives, Engine Oil..... 461
- Adjusting
 - Armrest 192
 - Clock..... 128
 - Front Seats 184
 - Head Restraints..... 188
 - Headlights 168
 - Mirrors 181
 - Rear Seats..... 190, 191
 - Steering Wheel 180
 - Temperature..... 113, 117
- Air Conditioning System (Climate Control System) 208
 - Changing the Mode 208, 209
 - Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows 209
 - Dust and Pollen Filter 494
 - Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode 208, 209
 - Sensors..... 211
 - Synchronized Mode 210
 - Using Automatic Climate Control 208
- Air Conditioning System (Heating and Cooling System) 205
 - Cooling 207
 - Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows..... 207
 - Heating 206
- Air Pressure..... 484, 529, 531, 534
- Airbags..... 47
 - After a Collision 49
 - Airbag Care..... 56
 - Event Data Recorder..... 28
 - Front Airbags (SRS)..... 49
 - Indicator..... 55, 85
 - Sensors 47
 - Side Airbags..... 52
 - Side Curtain Airbags..... 54
- AM/FM Radio..... 229, 260
- Android Auto 293
- Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 428
 - Indicator..... 85
- Apple CarPlay 289
- Armrest 192
- Ashtray..... 202
- Audio Remote Controls 219, 221
- Audio System..... 214
 - Adjusting the Sound..... 227, 257
 - Auxiliary Input Jack..... 217
 - Error Messages..... 297
 - General Information 301
 - HDMI™ Port..... 216
 - iPod 234, 266
 - MP3/WMA/AAC 237, 263, 269
 - Reactivating 218
 - Recommended CDs 301
 - Recommended Devices 303
 - Remote Controls..... 219, 221
 - Security Code 218
 - Theft Protection 218
 - Touch Screen 243
 - USB Flash Drives..... 303
 - USB Port(s) 215
- Auto Door Locking/Unlocking 142
 - Customize 143, 315, 333
- Auto High-Beam 169
- Automatic Lighting..... 164
- Automatic Transmission 383
 - Creeping..... 383
 - Fluid 468
 - Kickdown 383
 - Operating the Shift Lever 21, 22, 385, 387
 - Sequential Shift Mode..... 388
 - Shift Lever Does Not Move..... 516
 - Shifting..... 384, 386
- Auxiliary Input Jack 217
- Average Fuel Economy..... 112, 116
- Average Speed 117

B

Battery	490
Charging System Indicator	82, 519
Jump Starting	513
Maintenance (Checking the Battery)	490
Belts (Seat)	36
Beverage Holders	197
Bluetooth® Audio	272
Booster Seats (For Children)	74
Boot	147
Lid	147
Light Bulb	481, 528, 530, 533
Main Switch	149
Pass-through Cover	201
Brake System	426
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)	428
Brake Assist System	429
Fluid	469
Foot Brake	427
Indicator	80, 81, 520
Parking Brake	426
Brake System Indicator (Amber)	81
Brake System Indicator (Red)	80
Brightness Control (Instrument Panel) ...	176
Bulb Replacement	471
Active Cornering Lights	475
Boot Light	481
Brake/Taillight and Rear Turn Signal	476
Door Courtesy Light	481
Fog Lights	473
Front Turn Signal Lights	474

Glove Box Light	481
Headlights	471
High-Mount Brake Light	478
Interior Lights	479
Position/Daytime Running Lights	475
Rear Licence Plate Lights	478
Rear Map Light	480
Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights	475
Taillight, Back-Up Light and Rear Fog Light	477
Vanity Mirror Light	480
Bulb Specifications	528, 530, 533

C

Carbon Monoxide Gas	76
Carrying Luggage	365, 367
CD Player	231, 263
Centre Pocket	196
Changing Bulbs	471
Charging System Indicator	82, 519
Child Restraint System	57
Booster Seats	74
Child Restraint System for Infants	61
Child Restraint System for Small Children... 63	
Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/ Shoulder Seat Belt	69
Larger Children	73
Rear-facing Child Restraint System	61
Selecting a Child Restraint System	64

Using a Tether	72
Child Safety	57
Childproof Door Locks	141
Childproof Door Locks	141
Cigarette Lighter	201
Cleaning the Exterior	498
Cleaning the Interior	496
Climate Control System	208
Changing the Mode	209
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows	209
Dust and Pollen Filter	494
Recirculation and Fresh Air Mode	209
Sensors	211
Synchronized Mode	210
Using Automatic Climate Control	208
Clock	128
CMBS (Collision Mitigation Braking System)	430
Coat Hook	199
Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)	430
Console Compartment	195
Controls	127
Coolant (Engine)	466
Adding to the Radiator	467
Adding to the Reserve Tank	466
Overheating	517
Creeping (Automatic Transmission)	383
Cruise Control	391
Indicator	91

Cup Holders.....	197
Customized Features	118, 308

D

Daytime Running Lights.....	172
Dead Battery.....	513
Deflation Warning System	422
Indicator.....	94, 521
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows.....	207, 209
Devices that Emit Radio Waves.....	536
Dimming	
Headlights	163
Rearview Mirror.....	182
Dipstick (Engine Oil).....	463
Directional Signals (Turn Signals)	162
Display Button	223, 241
Door Mirrors	183
Doors	130
Auto Door Locking	142
Auto Door Unlocking.....	142
Door and Boot Open Indicator.....	35, 87
Keys	130
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside.....	139
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside.....	134
Lockout Prevention System	138
Driver's Side Pocket	196

Driving	363
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC).....	396
Automatic Transmission	383
Braking	426
Cruise Control.....	391
Shifting Gear.....	384, 386
Starting the Engine.....	374, 376
Driving Position Memory System	178
Dust and Pollen Filter.....	494
DVD Player.....	274
DVD Menu.....	275
Playable Disc Region Codes	279
Playable Disc Types.....	278
Playable Discs	277
Recommended Discs	280

E

Eco Assist System	10
ECON Button	390
Elapsed Time.....	116
Electric Power Steering (EPS) System	
Indicator.....	88, 521
Emergency	525
Emergency Engine Stop	512
Emergency Stop Signal	438
Engine	
Coolant.....	466
Jump Starting.....	513
Oil.....	461
Remote Engine Start.....	378

Starting.....	374, 376
Switch Buzzer	157
Engine Coolant	466
Adding to the Radiator	467
Adding to the Reserve Tank	466
Overheating.....	517
Temperature Gauge	110
Engine Oil.....	461
Adding	465
Checking	463
Low Oil Pressure Indicator	82, 519
Recommended Engine Oil	461
Engine Start/Stop Button	158
EPS (Electric Power Steering)	
System.....	88, 521
Exhaust Gas Hazard (Carbon Monoxide)	76
Exterior Care (Cleaning)	498
Exterior Mirrors.....	183

F

Features	213
Filter	
Dust and Pollen.....	494
Flat Tyre.....	503
Floor Mats	497
Fluids	
Automatic Transmission	468
Brake	469
Engine Coolant	466

Windscreen Washer	470
Folding Down the Rear Seats	191
Foot Brake	427
Front Airbags (SRS)	49
Front Fog Light Indicator	89
Front Seats.....	184, 188
Adjusting.....	185, 188
Front Sensor Camera	394
Fuel	445
Economy.....	447
Gauge	110
Instant Fuel Economy	112, 117
Low Fuel Indicator.....	85
Range	113, 116
Recommendation.....	445
Refueling	445
Fuel Economy.....	447
Fuel Fill Cap	23, 446
Fuel Fill Door	23, 446
Fuses	522
Inspecting and Changing	524
Locations	522, 523

G

Gasoline (Fuel)	
Gauge	110
Instant Fuel Economy	112, 117
Low Fuel Indicator.....	85
Gauges.....	110

Gear Shift Lever Positions	
Automatic Transmission.....	384, 386
Glass (care)	496, 499
Glove Box	195

H

Halogen Bulbs.....	471
Handling the Unexpected	501
Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System	343
Android Auto	293
Apple CarPlay	289
Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and	
Call History	353
HFT Buttons.....	343
HFT Menus	345
HFT Status Display	344
Making a Call	357
Options During a Call	361
Phone Setup.....	349
Receiving a Call	360
Ring Tone	352
Speed Dial	354
Hazard Warning Button.....	2, 3
HDMI™ Port	216
Head Restraints.....	188
Headlights.....	163
Adjuster	168
Aiming	471
Auto High-Beam.....	169
Automatic Operation.....	164

Dimming	163
Operating.....	163
Heated Door Mirror Button.....	177
Heaters (Seat)	203
Heating and Cooling System	205
Cooling.....	207
Defrosting the Windscreen and	
Windows.....	207
Heating.....	206
HFT (Hands-Free Telephone)	343
High Beam Indicator	89
Hill Start Assist System	375, 381

I

Identification Numbers	535
Vehicle Identification	535
Ignition Switch	157
Illumination Control.....	176
Knob.....	176
Immobilizer System	150
Indicator.....	90
Indicators	80
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC).....	97
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)	
(White).....	97, 397
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS).....	85
Auto High-Beam	93
Brake System (Amber)	81
Brake System (Red).....	80
Charging System.....	82

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)	99	Turn Signal	89	Kickdown (Automatic Transmission)	383
CRUISE CONTROL	91, 392	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System	86	L	
CRUISE MAIN	91, 391, 392	VSA OFF	86	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)	411
Deflation Warning System	94	Information	527	LaneWatch	420
Door and Boot Open	35, 87	Information Display	111	Language (HFT)	344
ECON Mode	90, 390	Instant Fuel Economy	112, 117	Light Switches	163
Electric Power Steering (EPS) System	88	Instrument Panel	79	Lights	163, 471
Front Fog Light	89	Brightness Control	176	Automatic	164
High Beam	89	Integrated Sunshades	204	Bulb Replacement	471
Immobilizer System	90	Interior Lights	193	Daytime Running Lights	172
Keyless Access System	91	Interior Rearview Mirror	181, 182	Fog Lights	166
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)	411	J		High Beam Indicator	89
Light Control	92	Jack (Wheel Nut Wrench)	506	Interior	193
Lights On	89	Jump Starting	513	Lights On Indicator	89
Low Fuel	85	K		Turn Signals	162
Low Oil Pressure	82	Key Number Tag	132	Load Limit	367
Malfunction Indicator Lamp	82	Keyless Access System	134	Locking/Unlocking	130
Parking Brake and Brake System	80	Keyless Lockout Prevention	138	Auto Door Locking/Unlocking	142
Parking Sensor System	95	Keys	130	Childproof Door Locks	141
Rear Fog Light	90	Lockout Prevention	138	From Inside	139
Road Departure Mitigation (RDM)	96	Master Keys	130	From Outside	134
Rotate Wheel	95	Number Tag	132	Keys	130
Seat Belt Reminder	84	Rear Door Won't Open	141	Using a Key	138
Security System Alarm	90	Remote Transmitter	136	Lockout Prevention System	138
Shift Position	82	Types and Functions	130	Low Battery Charge	519
Shift to Park	95	Valet Key	132	Low Fuel Indicator	85
Starter System	92	Won't Turn	26	Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength	133
Supplemental Restraint System	85			Low Oil Pressure Indicator	82, 519
System Message	88			Lower Anchorages	67
Transmission	84				

Lubricant Specifications	
Chart	529, 531, 534
Luggage (Load Limit)	367
Luggage Hooks	200

M

Maintenance	449
Battery	490
Brake Fluid	469
Cleaning	496
Climate Control	494
Coolant	466
Oil	463
Precautions	450
Radiator	467
Remote Transmitter	492
Replacing Light Bulbs	471
Safety	451
Transmission Fluid	468
Tyres	484
Under the Bonnet	457
Malfunction Indicator Lamp	82, 520
Map Lights	194
Maximum Loaded Vehicle Weight	367
Maximum Permissible Weight	367
Meters, Gauges	110
Mirrors	181
Adjusting	181
Door	183
Exterior	183

Interior Rearview	181, 182
Modifications (and Accessories)	448
MP3	231, 237, 263, 269
Multi-Information Display	114
Multi-View Rear Camera	444

N

Numbers (Identification)	535
---------------------------------------	-----

O

Odometer	112, 116
Oil (Engine)	461
Adding	465
Checking	463
Low Oil Pressure Indicator	82, 519
Recommended Engine Oil	461
Viscosity	461
Opening/Closing	
Bonnet	460
Boot	147
Power Windows	153
Sunroof	156
Outside Temperature Display	113, 117
Overheating	517

P

Paddle Shifters (Sequential Shift Mode)	388
Parking Brake	426

Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator	80, 520
Parking Sensor System	440
Passing Indicators	163
Petrol	23, 445
Economy	447
Gauge	110
Information	445
Refueling	445
Power Windows	153
Precautions While Driving	382
Rain	382
Pregnant Women	44
Puncture (Tyre)	503

R

Radiator	467
Radio (AM/FM)	229, 260
Range	113, 116
Rear Demister Button	177
Rear Fog Light Indicator	90
Rear Power Sunshade	204
Rear Seats (Folding Down)	191
Rearview Mirror	181, 182
Refueling	445
Fuel Gauge	110
Low Fuel Indicator	85
Petrol	445, 528, 530, 533
Regulations	536
Remote Engine Start	378

Remote Transmitter.....	136
Replacement	
Battery.....	492
Bulbs.....	471
Fuses.....	522, 523
Tyres.....	486
Wiper Blade Rubber.....	482
Resetting a Trip Meter	112, 116
Road Departure Mitigation (RDM)	407
On and Off.....	408

S

Safe Driving.....	31
Safety Check.....	35
Safety Labels.....	77
Safety Message.....	29
Seat Belts	36
Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor.....	43
Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners.....	40
Checking.....	45
Fastening.....	41
Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/ Shoulder Seat Belt.....	69
Pregnant Women.....	44
Reminder.....	39
Warning Indicator.....	39, 84
Seat Heaters	203
Seats	184
Adjusting.....	185
Front Seats.....	184, 188

Rear Seats.....	190, 191
Seat Heaters.....	203
Security System	150
Immobilizer System Indicator.....	90
Security System Alarm Indicator.....	90
SEL/RESET Button	115
Select Lever	21, 384, 386
Operation.....	21, 385, 387
Releasing.....	516
Won't Move.....	516
Select/Reset Knob	111
Selecting a Child Restraint System	64
Selector Knob (Audio)	222
Sequential Shift Mode	388
Setting the Clock	128
Shift Lever	21, 384, 386
Shift Position Indicator	82, 385, 387
Shifting (Automatic Transmission)	384, 386
Shoulder Anchor	43
Side Airbags	52
Side Curtain Airbags	54
Spare Tyre	503, 529, 531, 534
Spark Plugs	528, 530, 533
Specifications	528
Specified Fuel	445, 528, 530, 533
Speedometer	110
SRS Airbags (Airbags)	49
Start/Stop Button	158
Starting the Engine	374, 376
Does Not Start.....	510

Engine Switch Buzzer.....	157
Jump Starting.....	513
Remote Engine Start.....	378
Steering Wheel	180
Adjusting.....	180
Stopping	439
Sunglasses Holder	200
Sunroof	156
Supplemental Restraint System (SRS)	49
Switches (Around the Steering Wheel)	2, 3, 4, 5, 157
SYNC Mode	210
System Message Indicator	88

T

Tachometer	110
Temperature	
Outside Temperature Display.....	113, 117
Temperature Sensor	113, 117, 211
Time (Setting)	128
Tools	502
Towing a Trailer	368
Equipment and Accessories.....	370
Load Limits.....	368
Towing Your Vehicle	
Emergency.....	525
Trailer Stability Assist	373
Transmission	384, 386
Automatic.....	384, 386
Fluid.....	468

Sequential Shift Mode.....	388
Shift Lever Position Indicator	82, 385, 387
Trip Meter	112, 116
Troubleshooting	501
Blown Fuse	522, 523
Brake Pedal Vibrates	26
Buzzer Sounds When Opening Door	27
Emergency Towing	525
Engine Won't Start	510
Noise When Braking	27
Overheating.....	517
Puncture/Flat Tyre	503
Rear Door Won't Open	27
Select Lever Won't Move	516
Warning Indicators.....	80
Turn Signals	162
Indicators (Instrument Panel)	89
Tyres	484
Air Pressure.....	484, 529, 531, 534
Checking and Maintaining	484
Inspection	484
Puncture (Flat Tyre)	503
Rotation.....	487
Spare Tyre.....	503, 529, 531, 534
Tyre Chains.....	488
Wear Indicators.....	485
Winter	488

U

Ultrasonic Sensors	152
Unlocking the Doors	134
Unlocking the Front Doors from the Inside	139
USB Flash Drives	303
USB Port(s)	215
Using the Keyless Access System	134

V

Valet Key	132
Vanity Mirrors	8
Vehicle Identification Numbers	535
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA)	418
Off Button	419
Off Indicator	86
System Indicator	86
Ventilation	205, 208, 209
Viscosity (Oil)	461, 529, 531, 534
VSA (Vehicle Stability Assist)	418

W

Warning and Information Messages	100, 101
Warning Indicator On/Blinking	519
Warning Labels	77
Watts	528, 530, 533
Wear Indicators (Tyre)	485
Wheel Nut Wrench (Jack Handle)	507

Window Washers	174
Adding/Refilling Fluid	470
Switch.....	174
Windows (Opening and Closing)	153
Windscreen	174
Cleaning	496, 499
Defrosting/Defogging.....	207, 209
Washer Fluid	470
Wiper Blades	482
Wipers and Washers.....	174
Winter Tyres	488
Tyre Chains	488
Wipers and Washers	174
Checking and Replacing Wiper Blades.....	482
WMA	231, 237, 263, 269
Worn Tyres	484

